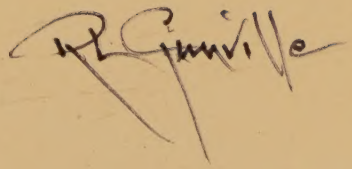
648



ART, SCIENCE, AND INDUSTRY.

Édition d'Élite

Historical Tales

The Romance of Reality

By

CHARLES MORRIS

Author of "Half-Hours with the Best American Authors," "Tales from the Dramatists," etc.

IN FIFTEEN VOLUMES

Volume XV

Reading Courses and Helps

J. B. LIPPINCOTT COMPANY

PHILADELPHIA AND LONDON

Copyright, 1908, by J. B. Lippincott Company.

To the Memory of my Father and Mother

WHO, IN MY EARLY CHILDHOOD, INSTILLED IN ME A TASTE FOR THE STUDY OF GREAT CHARACTERS AND EVENTS, WHICH HAS DONE MORE TO INFLUENCE AND MOULD MY LIFE THAN ANY OTHER FACTOR

This Volume is Affectionately Dedicated

SELF-EDUCATION THROUGH HOME STUDY*

JOHN WANAMAKER was once asked to finance an expedition to recover treasures which had lain for years in sunken frigates off the coast of the Bahamas. "Young man," he replied, "I know of a much better expedition than that right here. At your own feet lie treasures untold, and you can have them all by faithful study."

It is hardly necessary to emphasize the importance of education, for nowadays everyone agrees with Locke that "of all men we meet, nine out of ten are what they are, good or evil, useful or not, by their education."

But what is education? A few years at school and a little preparation for a chosen career? No! Man's education is never complete. Constant development is the first law of nature. Man is placed here to grow, and every cell of his mind must constantly absorb new power or he will be stunted. For, as Gladstone says, "The mind is but a barren soil—a soil which is soon exhausted, and will produce no crops unless it be continually fertilized and enriched."

* Copyright, 1908, by R. H. Whitten.

It is the duty of every man to stand on the high plane for which he was created, and to do this he must take advantage of every opportunity to grow larger and broader. He must be ever filling his storehouse with useful knowledge to broaden his intellect and increase his ability. As Ex-President Harper of the University of Chicago said: "If there is one single necessity in life more vital than another it is the necessity for pressing forward intellectually from year to year. No greater sin can be committed than that of failing to obtain the highest degree of cultivation possible. The world divides itself into two classes—those who read at home, thus continuing to rise higher and higher; and those who do not read at home, and for this reason sink lower and lower in the grade of human life."

Yes, good literature constitutes the university in which everyone who wants a full-rounded education can and must get it. All distinguished men have been given to the habit of constant reading, and it is utterly impossible to arrive at any degree of distinction without this habit. "The great instrument of mental culture," says Hugh Black, "is reading. A man who is ignorant of what others before him have thought and said and done, will turn down many a blind alley. In good literature we find the record of other people's experiences, thoughts and feelings, which widen our vision, extend our limited range of life, correct our own conclusions, and give us vast data for our

thinking. We would indeed be poorly equipped for life if all we had gained from good reading were taken away from us."

And of all reading, that along historical lines is the most important, for every person feels the need of being correctly informed regarding the past. History is being made so rapidly nowadays that it is impossible to keep pace with current events, or understand newspaper and magazine articles, or keep up one's end in ordinary conversations without a knowledge of the world's past history and the causes leading up to the present conditions.

No other kind of reading furnishes such positive benefit, for history is the basis of all knowledge. As Hamilton Wright Mabie says: "History is the background against the entire life of to-day, and nothing can be understood unless it is studied with this background in full view. The study of history is, therefore, a part of every other study—a kind of common ground on which philosophy, theology, politics, economy, art, literature and industry meet, and where alone they reveal their common origin in the needs, the capacities, and the conditions of the human soul."

And right along this same line Abraham Lincoln said: "History is the most valuable teacher of human nature, for it deals with the actual motives and actions of real men and women. All other forms of literature are of secondary importance. The fact is that nearly all the great masterpieces in other fields of literature are founded on

the great events of history. And it is impossible to understand the principal works of literature and art unless one knows the true accounts of the historic events upon which such works are based."

Historical knowledge is indispensable to anyone who would hold a place in intellectual society. It is the corner-stone of culture, and without it a person can make no pretense to education. In every community there are persons who stand head and shoulders above their associates. If they read a masterpiece of literature they understand it better than others. If they listen to a lecture they get more good out of it than others who pay just as much for their seats. If they see a painting, or a piece of statuary, or some work of art, they enjoy and appreciate it, while others pass it by with a glance. What is the secret of their superiority? There is no magic about it. These persons simply have a good general knowledge of history, for the famous events and characters of history are what have inspired our literature and art, and there is hardly a lecture worth hearing, or an able sermon delivered, that is not full of historical allusions.

A person cannot get enjoyment from his travels unless he is "up" in history, because he knows nothing of the heroes of the past—the warriors, the scholars, the teachers, the reformers, the martyrs—of the victories they have achieved and the work they have accomplished in raising the world from savagery to civilization. He knows nothing

of the various stages of the world's progress, the famous ruins, the historic buildings, the ancient landmarks, the renowned battlefields that make every country he visits an open book, every page of which is as interesting as a romance to the reader of history.

Historical knowledge is of no less importance in the practical affairs of life. It is a mere truism to say that no one may hope for success in any calling to-day without a knowledge of human nature. No one can expect to become a successful preacher, teacher, doctor, lawyer, editor or business man, who does not have a keen appreciation of the motives that govern men in the ordinary affairs of life. Knowledge in this domain is power and influence, while ignorance is weakness and inefficiency. For history is a study of humanity, not in an ideal condition, but as it has actually existed and must be dealt with, and familiarity with it gives one the power to be a leader of men rather than a mere follower.

Yes, and it is a patriotic duty which every man owes his country to be well versed in history. The state is but a collection of individuals, and the only way to better it is to better the individuals composing it. We must first know history before we can make history. A man cannot vote wisely and be a valuable citizen without a conception of what other men have stood and striven for, and what it has meant for them to win or lose.

And if this is necessary for the man of to-day,

how much more necessary it is for him to bring up his children under the noblest influences. How important that those who are to wield the power and direct the affairs of the next generation shall be acquainted with the experiences of the generations that have gone before. The boys of to-day will fill the important places of to-morrow. Every year thousands of young men reach the age when they are allowed to share in the government of our nation, and they must be trained for the responsibilities that will come to them. They may be able to tell what year Columbus landed—they may be regular calendars so far as dates are concerned —but that amounts to little. What they need is the practical side of history—the part that will do them good through life. They need an insight into the lives of those heroes and patriots of other ages whose courage, strict devotion to duty, and heroic self-sacrifice represented the highest ideals and furnish lessons which will make more patriotic citizens, and consequently a better nation.

Yes, history is truly "the chiefest study among human studies, which enriches and illumines all the rest." It introduces us to the companionship of heroes who won the world's victories, statesmen who made its laws, reformers who swept aside its evils, and martyrs who gave their blood to baptize its liberties. And to be associated with these great men and women through the pages of history is to be great ourselves.

But the mere reading along historical lines is

not enough. To get the most good out of what we read a definite plan must be followed. "You might read all the books in the British Museum, if you could live long enough," says Ruskin, "and still remain an entirely illiterate, uneducated person. But if you read ten pages of a good book in the right way you are forevermore, in some measure, an educated person."

It is not the amount of food we eat, but the amount we digest, that upbuilds our physical body; and, similarly, it is not the amount we read, but the amount we assimilate, that increases the capacity of our mental storehouse. "The most profitable reading," said Samuel Smiles, "is that which is conducted with a definite aim and object. By thoroughly mastering any given branch of knowledge we render it available for use at any moment. Hence it is not enough to merely read much, or to know where to read for information as we want it. Practical wisdom for the purposes of life must be ready for use at call. We must carry about with us a store of the current coin of knowledge ready for exchange on all occasions, else we are comparatively helpless when the opportunity for using it occurs."

Food undigested weakens the organs of the body, and, in the same way, reading without thought or purpose is worse than wasting time—worse than the ignorance which comes from reading nothing —for it causes us to form desultory habits which are fatal to continuity of thought, and even have

a detrimental effect upon our entire lives, making us unsystematic and careless.

Gladstone reminds us that the man with a method accomplishes more in a week than the hard-working sloven will accomplish in a month, and it is the duty of every person to adopt a definite course of reading that he may get the greatest benefit out of what he reads. For wisdom is not mere knowledge. It is the result of systematic reading by which the facts gained become a part of one's very being.

There is much good literature in our homes to-day which is like a storehouse without a key. It lacks something to open it with. But this Reading Course volume forms a key which opens the vast store of treasures contained in the other volumes of this series, and makes them accessible to everyone. Those who have heretofore tried to carry on a course of home reading have been obliged to do so with no guiding hand—no chart or compass—but these helps simplify and direct the work of the reader, and bring to him the systematic guidance of Prof. Morris, who has personally prepared the different Helps.

Introductory Notes. The advantage of having a general view of a subject before plunging into it is obvious to all. Each course of reading in these volumes is preceded by an Introduction, giving the reader a general idea of the history of the country treated before taking up the reading of it. The one who is not familiar with history needs no further

preparation than the Introductions will give him, to read with pleasure and perfect understanding; and the one who is well versed in history will find the Introductions pleasant reviews to what he already knows.

Outlines of Readings. These Outlines are so arranged that they will furnish reading for an entire year, although the time may be modified according to circumstances. They tell just what to read each evening, and emphasize the most important parts of each reading. Each course is divided into readings of about the same average length, but varying according to the relative amount of historic and romantic matter in each Tale—being longer, of course, where the romantic prevails.

Explanatory and Supplementary Notes. Following each Outline of Readings will be found Explanatory and Supplementary Notes into which has been put every item that would serve in any way to make the text more complete, interesting or instructive. They represent the comments and explanations that a well-equipped teacher would make in the school-room.

There is a point beyond which a story cannot be loaded without breaking down and becoming a mere list of events. It was not, therefore, possible to give in full the careers of many of the historical characters who appear in the Tales. Wherever it has been thought that the student would desire to know more about certain characters, Supplementary Notes have been devoted to them. Similarly,

any historical person, event or circumstance, referred to incidentally in the text, has been given a Note. These Notes are full of interesting and illuminating material, and will be found very entertaining reading in themselves.

The Notes are arranged first by subject and then by page, the reader, advancing from page to page, being thus able to notice readily if any comment is made upon a subject referred to on the page he is about to read. The Note will then give all the explanation necessary to make the point entirely clear or to impress the historical lesson conveyed. Thus the reader is made to feel that Prof. Morris is always with him, ready to explain and give such additional information as may be helpful to him.

Review Questions. Educators all agree that what a person reads and finds out for himself forms the best part of his education, and that the best test of the practical results of his reading is to subject himself to a "quiz" when the reading is done. So, to encourage the habit of investigation, provoke helpful thought, and enable the reader to get the most good out of his reading, a series of Review Questions accompanies each Course. These are not catch questions, but, instead, those the answers to which will impress upon the reader the most important parts in a Tale, point out its moral, and enforce its lesson.

Bibliographies of Historical Literature. The Notes on the text not only answer the ordinary

questions which may arise, but they suggest hundreds of others. They increase the reader's interest in the subject and arouse a desire for further reading. Consequently, to furnish a guide to extensive historical reading, a Historical Bibliography accompanies each Course. This gives, first, the names of every work of authority on the subject, then the author, and then a review or critical estimate of the work, showing its fitness to the purpose. These Bibliographies constitute a most valuable feature, and open up new fields of study along paths which irresistibly tempt one to follow them into regions yet unknown. They also furnish a safe and valuable guide to those who have papers, essays or speeches to prepare, showing from what sources the desired information may be secured.

Chronological Course of Reading. But suppose the reader wants to take up the different Tales in the order in which the events related actually occurred. If so, he merely needs to turn to the Chronological Course of Reading and he will find a list of all the events related, arranged in order of time, together with references to the volume and pages where they are found, thus enabling him to read the contents of the entire series in chronological order. Also, if he is reading of an event in connection with the history of some particular country, by turning to this Chronology he can tell just what occurred in other parts of the world at the same time.

General Index. A work without an index is

like a house without windows. It is not enough to have valuable information at hand. It must be instantly accessible. One must be able to get what he wants at a minute's notice—a mere date, an incident, a name, the story of some great movement, or the life of some noted character. The Index to this series is in itself a wonderful institution. Every page in the entire work has been carefully analyzed and this analysis placed under alphabetical arrangement, thus bringing every bit of information within the same convenient range as the subjects of an encyclopedia or the definitions of a dictionary. This Index adds to the work a usefulness and convenience that double its value to all classes of readers.

The one who takes up a systematic reading of this series according to the Outlines arranged, and who makes proper use of the different Helps furnished, will find the value of the work doubled. He will be charmingly entertained, and at the same time he will unconsciously fill his storehouse of knowledge with facts which will broaden his intellect and increase his ability.

CONTENTS

COURSE OF READING IN AMERICAN HISTORY: PAGE

Introduction 21
Outline of Readings 25
Explanatory and Supplementary Notes 31
Review Questions 37
Bibliography of Historical Literature 41

COURSE OF READING IN SPANISH-AMERICAN HISTORY:

Introduction 45
Outline of Readings 49
Explanatory and Supplementary Notes 53
Review Questions 59
Bibliography of Historical Literature 61

COURSE OF READING IN ENGLISH HISTORY:

Introduction 63
Outline of Readings 65
Explanatory and Supplementary Notes 69
Review Questions 73
Bibliography of Historical Literature 75

COURSE OF READING IN GERMAN HISTORY:

Introduction 79
Outline of Readings 83
Explanatory and Supplementary Notes 87
Review Questions 91
Bibliography of Historical Literature 93

COURSE OF READING IN FRENCH HISTORY:

Introduction 97
Outline of Readings 101
Explanatory and Supplementary Notes 105
Review Questions 111
Bibliography of Historical Literature 113

COURSE OF READING IN SPANISH HISTORY:

Introduction 117
Outline of Readings 121
Explanatory and Supplementary Notes 125
Review Questions 129
Bibliography of Historical Literature 131

COURSE OF READING IN RUSSIAN HISTORY:

Introduction 133
Outline of Readings 137
Explanatory and Supplementary Notes 141
Review Questions 145
Bibliography of Historical Literature 147

COURSE OF READING IN SCANDINAVIAN HISTORY:

Introduction 151
Outline of Readings 155
Explanatory and Supplementary Notes 161
Review Questions 165
Bibliography of Historical Literature 169

COURSE OF READING IN GREEK HISTORY:

Introduction 173
Outline of Readings 177
Explanatory and Supplementary Notes 181
Review Questions 185
Bibliography of Historical Literature 187

Course of Reading in Roman History:

Introduction 191
Outline of Readings 195
Explanatory and Supplementary Notes 199
Review Questions 203
Bibliography of Historical Literature 205

Course of Reading in Japanese and Chinese History:

Introduction 209
Outline of Readings 213
Explanatory and Supplementary Notes 217
Review Questions 221
Bibliography of Historical Literature 225

Course of Reading in King Arthur Legends:

Introduction 229
Outline of Readings 233
Explanatory and Supplementary Notes 241
Review Questions 247
Bibliography of Historical Literature 251

Chronological Course of Reading 253

General Index 271

COURSE OF READING IN AMERICAN HISTORY

INTRODUCTION

THERE are few of our readers who are not familiar with the general details of American history, the succession of events in its colonial and national development, its great wars, its important political movements, the progress of population, the growth of commerce, manufacture, agriculture, and the various other features in the life of its people. Yet all this forms merely the dry bones of history, the skeleton which must be amply built upon to make the full story of any nation. In these Historical Tales of America an effort has been made to add an essential element. The design has been to make the story of our country at once interesting and instructive, to surround its facts with the penumbra of romance, to make its history delightful as well as useful, and to cast the alluring glamour of romantic fiction over the facts of our nation's story. In these tales of war and peace, of daring adventure and patriotic devotion, of striking events and brilliant deeds, one sees American history from a new angle. We stand, as it were, on an overlooking

summit, and from the many events taking place below fix our attention on those most phenomenal and significant, those typical of the best spirit of our people in courage, daring, intellect, and patriotism; thus gaining an idea of the character of our people and the famous events of our history which illuminate these as the illustrations in a book illuminate the printed page.

The history of the United States—to which is often given the broad title of America, since it is the only nation on the American continent without a distinctive title of its own—is one of recent date as compared with those of the great nations of Europe and Asia. It has no broad historic background other than the nebulous one of the Indian tribes, and has been essentially an outgrowth from the history of several of the countries of Europe, especially England—Spain, France, Germany, Holland, and Scandinavia playing a minor part in its early era. Hither for centuries came the overflow of the adventurous sons of Europe, first of all being the sea-rovers of the north, who reached its shores about 1000 A. D. and made a futile effort to settle the region they named Vineland. Then for five long centuries America was lost sight of, to be rediscovered by the enterprising Columbus in 1492. But more than another century passed before an important and successful effort was made to settle the great domain now known as the United States, the active history of which is, therefore, only three hundred years old. Yet in those three centuries it

has grown to be one of the greatest nations of the earth, quite the greatest in its development of wealth and natural resources, and in the activity and ability of its people. Yet, though so youthful a member of the family of nations, its history is one of great interest and importance, and contains much to stir the blood and fire the heart of its people. In the two volumes of this series devoted to this subject, the most vivid tales of adventure and valor in the history of this great country are given, forming a mosaic of striking incidents without which no true conception of our history can be gained, and which go far to give readers a consecutive record of the whole story of the American dominion.

OUTLINE OF READINGS

FIRST READING. VOL. i. Pp. 9–33.
The world in the year 1000 A.D.—Viking discovery of Greenland—The Norsemen discover North America—Frobisher's voyage to the Arctic seas—Why the expedition failed.

SECOND READING. VOL. i. Pp. 34–52.
Champlain's expedition—The virgin wilderness—Canoing down Lake Champlain—First battles with the Iroquois—Champlain lost in the forest.

THIRD READING. VOL. i. Pp. 53–68.
Early life of William Phips—He sails to recover the Spanish treasures—A lost ship found and its wealth of silver and gold recovered—Is given a title and made high sheriff of New England—Made governor of Massachusetts.

FOURTH READING. VOL. i. Pp. 69–89.
Indian assaults on the settlements—Adventures of the regicides—How they came to Hadley—Andros at Hartford—How he lost the Charter—Captain Wadsworth and Governor Fletcher.

FIFTH READING. VOL. i. Pp. 90–110.
Benjamin Franklin's journey to Philadelphia—His adventures in that city—Washington's journey to the French forts—His adventures in the wilderness—Crossing the frozen Alleghany.

SIXTH READING. VOL. i. Pp. 111–137.
The Indian attack on Fort Edward—Putnam saves a burning magazine—His remarkable adventures—Narrow escape from the stake—Gains his freedom—The Indians attack Fort Henry—Elizabeth Zane and the keg of powder—A ride for life.

SEVENTH READING. VOL. i. Pp. 138–156.
Daniel Boone in the Kentucky wilds—The girl captives and their rescue—Boone captured and adopted

into an Indian tribe—His daring flight—Indian attack on the Boonesborough fort—Later life of the great hunter.

EIGHTH READING. VOL. i. Pp. 157–179.
Boston on the night of April 18, 1775—Paul Revere's ride to Lexington—How Concord was warned—The fights at Lexington and Concord—The terrible British retreat—The Green Mountain boys—Ethan Allen takes Fort Ticonderoga—Later story of Allen.

NINTH READING. VOL. i. Pp. 180–194.
The first submarine boat—Attack on the British ships—Mrs. Murray detains the British officers and Putnam escapes—The conference at the Loxley House—How Lydia Darrah warned the Americans.

TENTH READING. VOL. i. Pp. 195–210.
The siege of Fort Schuyler—General Herkimer to the rescue—Scouts sent to General Schuyler—Hon-Yost the simpleton alarms the Indians—The flight of the besiegers and rescue of the fort.

ELEVENTH READING. VOL. i. Pp. 211–222.
Washington and Lee—John Champe and his errand—His pursuit and escape—Effort to capture Arnold the traitor—Why it failed—Champe's later story.

TWELFTH READING. VOL. i. Pp. 223–236.
Marion and his ragged corps—Headquarters of the Swamp-Fox—Marion's visitor and his surprise—How Marion baffled his enemies—Major Lee and the wolves—Patriotism of Mrs. Motte—Song of Marion's men.

THIRTEENTH READING. VOL. i. Pp. 237–258.
A daring adventure at Tripoli—How the *Philadelphia* was lost—Decatur burns his prize and escapes—The home of Blennerhasset—Aaron Burr's treachery—The ravages of the militia on Blennerhasset's island.

FOURTEENTH READING. VOL. i. Pp. 259–274.
Morse gains the idea of electric telegraphy—His many disappointments—How Congress aided him—Cornell and the scraper—The buried wire proves a failure—Success of the overhead wire.

FIFTEENTH READING. VOL. i. Pp. 275–297.
The iron-clad *Merrimac* and the wooden war-ships—Loss of the *Cumberland* and *Congress*—A wonderful naval battle—A new idea in warfare—The capture of a railroad train—A wild flight and hot pursuit—Attempt to burn the bridge—Capture and punishment of the raiders.

SIXTEENTH READING. VOL. i. Pp. 298–313.
Libby Prison—The tunnel plot—Terrible labors—Escape of one hundred and nine prisoners—Adventures of Captains Earle and Rowan.

SEVENTEENTH READING. VOL. i. Pp. 314–326.
The *Albemarle* and her exploits—Lieutenant Cushing's plan to destroy her—The torpedo-boat attack—Sinking of the *Albemarle* and escape of Cushing.

EIGHTEENTH READING. VOL. i. Pp. 327–352.
The acquisition and value of Alaska—Gold seekers—The gold find on the Klondike—Gold at Cape Nome. Hawaii and its kings—Queen Liliuokalani's ambition—An American revolt—The Queen dethroned and a republic established—Later events—Hawaii annexed by the United States.

NINETEENTH READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 7–22.
Ponce de Leon seeks the Fountain of Youth—Discovers Florida and finds death—A period of romance—Explorers of Florida—De Soto discovers the Mississippi—The fate of De Soto and his followers.

TWENTIETH READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 23–39.
Raleigh's colonies on Roanoke Island—Fate of the colonists—John Smith explores the Chickahominy—Is captured by the Indians—In Powhatan's palace—His life saved by Pocahontas—The marriage of Pocahontas.

TWENTY-FIRST READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 40–61.
Outbreak of the Virginia Indians—Massacre of the colonists—Years of warfare—A second massacre—The outbreak of 1676—Bacon and Governor Berkeley—Bacon's rebellion—Jamestown taken and burned—Death of Bacon—Berkeley's cruel revenge.

TWENTY-SECOND READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 62–87.
La Salle's explorations—His descent of the Mississippi—The Southern tribes—A beautiful and fruitful country—Customs of the Indians of the South—Religion of the Natchez Indians—Insurrection and destruction of the Natchez.

TWENTY-THIRD READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 88–103.
Governor Spotswood's romantic expedition—The Blue Ridge mountains—Knights of the Golden Horseshoe—General Oglethorpe and the Spanish of Florida—Defeat of the Spaniards at St. Simon's Harbor—Oglethorpe's successful stratagem.

TWENTY-FOURTH READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 104–123.
Lord Fairfax's estate—Washington surveys the Shenandoah Valley—Fairfax at Greenway Court—Patrick Henry's early years—His first speech—The clergy lose their case—The famous oration against the king—The great Revolutionary speech.

TWENTY-FIFTH READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 124–144.
Governor Tryon's tyranny—The Regulators—The battle of the Alamance—Defeat and flight of the Regulators—The Mecklenburg Declaration—The old powder magazine at Williamsburg—Lord Dunmore seizes the powder—Patrick Henry and the "minute men"—The battle of Great Bridge and burning of Norfolk.

TWENTY-SIXTH READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 145–165.
The expedition of Colonel Rogers—The disaster on the Ohio—Colonel Clark captures Kaskaskia—The taking of Vincennes—Clark's famous water journey—The English fort taken—The winning of the Northwest.

TWENTY-SEVENTH READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 166–184.
Cornwallis in the Carolinas—The patriots of Tennessee—Defeat of the Tories on King's Mountain—The vigil of General Greene—A woman patriot—Tarleton's defeat at the Cowpens—Greene's masterly retreat.

TWENTY-EIGHTH READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 185–205.
Early days of cotton—Eli Whitney—The cotton-gin invented—Whitney's misfortunes—Andrew Jackson's duel—The massacre at Fort Mimms—Jackson invades the Creek country—Famine attacks the army—The Creek defeat at Tohopeka—Weathersford's surrender.

TWENTY-NINTH READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 206–224.
The haunt of the pirates—The Lafittes defeat the militia—A British bribe refused—The pirate haunt broken up—Jean Lafitte aids Jackson in the battle of New Orleans—Davy Crockett in Texas—The patriots of the Alamo—Desperate defence and massacre of the patriots.

THIRTIETH READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 225–240.
General Houston and the Texans defeat Santa Anna—Scott's army at Contreras—Captain R. E. Lee crosses the lava-beds—Lee in the battles before the city of Mexico.

THIRTY-FIRST READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 241–260.
A Christmas day in the South—The Christmas dinner and dance—The mountaineers in the Civil War—The Raccoon Roughs—The enthusiasm of the volunteers.

THIRTY-SECOND READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 261–276.
Stuart's cavalry at "The Bower"—A secret expedition—Maryland crossed and Chambersburg taken—A rapid ride southward—The expedition in peril—Escape across the Potomac.

THIRTY-THIRD READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 277–290.
Colonel Streight's expedition—General Forrest's pursuit—The crossing of Black Creek—A hot chase—The Federals surrender.

THIRTY-FOURTH READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 291–310.
The blockade-runner *Banshee*—Entering Cape Fear River—A hot chase of the *Banshee*—Fontain, the lame scout—His perilous expedition to Vicksburg—His escape with despatches.

THIRTY-FIFTH READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 311–330.
General Gordon at Antietam—A desperate bayonet charge—Gordon's wounds—Stonewall Jackson's flank march at Chancellorsville—Defeat of Hooker's right wing—The wounding and death of Jackson.

THIRTY-SIXTH READING. VOL. ii. Pp. 331–358.
General Morgan's exploits—The invasion of Ohio—A daring venture and hot pursuit—Morgan captured and escapes from prison—Home-coming of Confederates—Meetings with General Lee—Veteran survivors of the war reach home.

EXPLANATORY AND SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES—VOL. I

THE VIKINGS. Page 10.

The name given to the sea-rovers of Scandinavia who infested the coasts of France, England, Ireland and other countries from the eighth to the tenth century. The word comes from *vik*, "a bay," from the fact the viking ships put out from the bays and fiords of the North.

SAMUEL PURCHAS. Page 28.

An English compiler of travels, born in Essex in 1577. He became rector of Saint Martin's, Ludgate, in London, and published "Purchas his Pilgrimage" (1613) and "Purchas his Pilgrimes" (1625). These are collections of travellers' tales of great research and some value.

IROQUOIS. Page 43.

A powerful confederation of Indian tribes, including the Mohawks, Oneidas, Onondagas, Cayugas, and Senecas of New York, known as the "Five Nations." In 1715 they were joined by the Tuscaroras, a related tribe of North Carolina, and became known as the "Six Nations." They were very warlike and conquered many of the northern tribes. Friendly with the Dutch and afterwards with the English, they were bitterly hostile to the French and did much to check their progress in America.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN. Page 90.

Born in Boston in 1706, Franklin at the age of seventeen went to Philadelphia, where he afterwards resided. He published the *Pennsylvania Gazette* and "Poor Richard's Almanac," a compendium of common-sense sayings. He was very active as a citizen, founded several important institutions, was an able writer and a famous scientist, discovering the identity of lightning and electricity. An ardent patriot,

he became one of the foremost Americans of his age and did much to advance the cause of American liberty abroad and at home.

TICONDEROGA. Page 172.

A famous fort on the ridge separating Lakes Champlain and George in New York. Built by the French in 1755, it repulsed an attack by the English in 1758, but was abandoned in 1759. The English afterwards enlarged and strengthened it at great cost. Captured by Ethan Allen in 1775, it was recaptured by Burgoyne in 1777 and held by the British till 1780. After the war it fell into ruin.

MAJOR ANDRÉ. Page 211.

A famous British officer in the American Revolution. He came to America as a lieutenant in 1774, and rose to be adjutant-general, with the rank of major. Talented as a writer and of engaging manners, he was a general favorite. In 1780 he was employed by General Clinton to conduct the negotiations with Benedict Arnold, who had agreed to surrender West Point to the British. He was captured when returning to New York in disguise, the papers revealing Arnold's treason being found upon him. He was condemned as a spy and hung, despite earnest efforts to procure his release.

BENEDICT ARNOLD. Page 211.

Though infamous for his attempt to betray his country, Arnold was a soldier of much courage and ability. Joining the army early in 1775, he aided Ethan Allen in the capture of Ticonderoga, led an expedition against Quebec, showed much ability in the battles with Burgoyne, and in 1778 was put in command at Philadelphia. His conduct here led to a reprimand from the commander-in-chief, and Arnold, deeply incensed, made treasonable overtures to the enemy. Put, at his request, in charge of the fort at West Point, he plotted to surrender this to the British. His plot being exposed by the capture of André, he fled to New York, and during the remainder of the war fought against his country. He afterwards lived in England, despised as a traitor, and died in 1801.

TRIPOLI. Page 237.

The most easterly of the Barbary States of North Africa, it long took part in the piratical attacks on the commerce of the Mediterranean which these states pursued for centuries. The commercial nations of Europe secured their commerce by paying an annual tribute to the rulers of these states. The United States at first consented to do the same, but a larger tribute being demanded by the Bashaw of Tripoli in 1801, a fleet was sent to the Mediterranean, the war continuing until 1805, when peace without tribute was signed. The other Barbary States were also forced to give up their piratical practices.

AARON BURR. Page 251.

Born at Newark, New Jersey, in 1756, a grandson of the celebrated Jonathan Edwards, Burr served in the Revolutionary War, and later became an active politician and an orator of great powers of persuasion. He was elected United States Senator in 1791 and Vice-President of the United States in 1800. In 1804 a political quarrel with Alexander Hamilton led to a duel, in which Hamilton was killed. Burr afterwards was suspected of a conspiracy to invade Mexico and found a separate government there. He was tried on this charge but was acquitted. Many believed him guilty, however, and he failed to recover his former standing. Died in 1836.

VOL. II

KING FERDINAND. Page 11.

Ferdinand V, King of Aragon, Spain, married Isabella of Castile, and became, with her, joint ruler of that kingdom. He invaded Granada, then a Moorish kingdom, and conquered that country in 1491. It was by the aid of Queen Isabella that Columbus was enabled to set out on his famous voyage, which ended in the discovery of America.

SIR WALTER RALEIGH. Page 23.

This famous adventurer was born in England in 1552 and became a favorite at the court of Queen Eliza-

beth. After some years of service as a soldier he made unsuccessful efforts to found a colony in America, sending out expeditions from 1584 to 1587. He afterwards sailed with a fleet to the Orinoco in search of gold. His failure in this and an accusation of treason led to his long imprisonment and finally to his execution in 1618.

JOHN SMITH. Page 30.
The founder of Virginia, was previously a soldier of fortune and had many and remarkable adventures. In 1607 he joined the expedition which settled at Jamestown, Virginia. It was due to his energy and ability that this colony was saved from ruin. He returned to England in 1609, explored the coast of New England in 1614, and died in 1631.

OGLETHORPE. Page 96.
An English general, born in London, in 1689, who founded a colony in Georgia in 1733, chiefly made up of poor debtors taken from the English prisons. After holding his colony against the Spaniards, he returned to England in 1743 and died in 1785.

CORNWALLIS. Page 166.
Lord Cornwallis (earl and marquis) was born in England in 1738, joined the army in 1776, was outwitted by Washington at Trenton, and was a major-general in the battles of Brandywine and Germantown. In 1780 he commanded in the Carolinas, and subsequently invaded Virginia, where he was entrapped by Washington at Yorktown. He was much the ablest British general who took part in the Revolution. He subsequently served in India, where he died in 1805.

GENERAL GREENE. Page 176.
A prominent citizen of Rhode Island, Nathanael Greene was chosen general of militia in 1775 and took a distinguished part in the campaigns and battles of General Washington, by whom he was highly esteemed. On the failure of Gates in the South in 1780, Greene was put in command and succeeded in wresting the Carolinas from the British. He is looked upon as second in ability only to Washington. Died in Georgia in 1786.

GENERAL JACKSON. Page 193.

Andrew Jackson, born in the Carolinas in 1767, took part as a boy in the Revolution; then removed to Tennessee, where he became a leading citizen. Appointed to command against the Creek Indians in 1813, he completely defeated them and in 1814 and 1815 brilliantly defended New Orleans against a powerful British army. He subsequently defeated the Seminole Indians in Florida, and in 1824 gained the largest vote for the Presidency, though he was defeated in Congress. He was elected President in 1828 and again in 1832, and died in 1845.

THERMOPYLÆ. Page 224.

A narrow pass between the mountains and the sea in Northern Greece. It was defended by King Leonidas of Sparta in 480 B.C. with a small force against a vast Persian host. Leonidas and his men refused to retreat or yield and fought till all were killed. Since then the word Thermopylæ has been a synonym for unyielding courage. (See Historical Tales, Greece, page 144.)

SANTA ANNA. Page 225.

A Mexican President and general, born about 1798. Successful in the civil wars of his country, he was made President in 1833 and became dictator in 1835. Defeated by Houston in Texas, he was afterwards exiled, but returned and became general-in-chief in the Mexican War, being defeated by Taylor at Buena Vista and by Scott in the battles around Mexico. Exiled again in 1847, he returned in 1853 and was made dictator for life. He was a third time exiled in 1855, and died in 1876.

STONEWALL JACKSON. Page 319.

Thomas J. Jackson, the most admired of the Southern leaders in the Civil War after General Lee, gained the title of "Stonewall" from the unflinching firmness with which he held his men in the battle of Bull Run. Born in Virginia in 1824, he was a professor in the Military Institute at Lexington, Virginia, on the outbreak of the war. He took a brilliant part in all the battles in Virginia until his death on May 10, 1863.

GENERAL LEE. Page 345.

Robert Edward Lee, born in Stratford, Virginia, in 1807, was a son of General Henry Lee, of Revolutionary fame. Entering the army from West Point, he distinguished himself highly in the Mexican War. On the outbreak of the Civil War he joined the Southern cause, and on June 3, 1862, was put in command of the Virginia forces. His subsequent career is too well known to need description. After proving himself one of the most brilliant of soldiers, he was overwhelmed and forced to surrender at Appomattox in 1865. He subsequently became president of Washington College at Lexington, Virginia, and died there in 1870.

REVIEW QUESTIONS—VOL. I

1. What evidence have we of the discovery of America by the Scandinavians? Page 25.
2. What put an end to Frobisher's effort to discover the Northwest Passage? Pages 29–33.
3. Who led in the first campaign against the Northern Indians, and what was its result? Pages 35–48.
4. Why did William Phips set out in search of sunken treasure? Pages 54–55.
5. Who were the regicides? Page 73.
6. In what way did Sir Edmund Andros seek to make himself the autocrat of New England? Pages 80–84.
7. What is meant by the Charter Oak? Page 85.
8. How long did it take Franklin to travel from New York to Philadelphia, and why? Pages 90–94.
9. What led Washington to make his famous expedition into the wilderness in 1753? Pages 98–99.
10. How did the Indians usually treat their captives in Revolutionary times? Pages 122–124.
11. Why was Kentucky known as the "dark and bloody ground"? Page 138.
12. By what ceremony did the Indians adopt Daniel Boone into their tribe? Page 145.
13. What was the purpose of the famous ride of Paul Revere? Pages 158–163.
14. Of what advantage was the capture of Fort Ticonderoga by Ethan Allen? Page 177.
15. What trouble arose with Vermont in the Revolution? Page 179.
16. How were General Putnam and his men saved from capture in New York? Pages 185–188.
17. How was Fort Schuyler rescued from the British and Indians? Pages 207–210.
18. By what chance did Arnold the traitor escape capture in New York? Page 220–221.
19. What was the character of the country in which Marion had his hiding place? Page 225.

20. How did Mrs. Motte gain fame as a patriot woman? Pages 233–234.

21. What led to the naval expedition against Tripoli? Page 242.

22. Of what treasonable plot was Aaron Burr suspected? Pages 249–254.

23. When and by whom was the electric telegraph invented? Pages 259–274.

24. What was the character of war-vessels in past times and where were iron-clad war-ships first used? Page 275.

25. How did more than a hundred Federal officers escape from Libby Prison? Pages 292–298.

26. In what daring manner was the iron-clad *Albemarle* sunk? Pages 314–321.

VOL. II

27. How did Florida obtain its name? Page 7.

28. What is the legend of the Fountain of Youth? Page 8.

29. What was the purpose of De Soto's expedition? Page 14.

30. Where was De Soto buried and why? Page 22.

31. Where was the first British colony planted in America and what was its fate? Pages 23–28.

32. What is the most famous story in early American history? Page 37.

33. How did the Indians seek to drive the whites from America and with what result? Pages 40–48.

34. What led to the Bacon Rebellion? Page 50.

35. Why was Jamestown burned? Page 58.

36. By whom and when was the Mississippi River first explored? Pages 62–64.

37. How did the Southern Indians differ from those of the North? Pages 76–79.

38. What was the fate of the Natchez Indian tribe? Page 86.

39. What romantic expedition took place in Virginia in 1714? Pages 88–94.

40. Why did the Spaniards of Florida attack the British settlements in Carolina and Georgia? Pages 95–96.

41. From what did the village of White Post get its name? Page 108.

42. What was the occasion of Patrick Henry's first speech? Pages 113–117.

43. What led to his most famous oration? Page 120.

44. When and where was the first republic founded in America? Page 133.

45. Where was the first Revolutionary battle fought in the South and what disaster followed it? Pages 140–142.

46. In what way was the Northwest won for the American Union? Pages 156–165.

47. When and how did the settlers of Tennessee take part in the Revolution? Pages 168–172.

48. How did General Greene gain the effect of victory by retreat? Pages 178–184.

49. How was the cotton-gin invented and of what utility was it? Pages 186–191.

50. What event gave Andrew Jackson the great start in his career? Pages 194–204.

51. Who were the pirates of the South and where was their hiding place? Page 207.

52. Where and what was the Alamo and what event made it famous? Pages 218–224.

53. Where did the Texans win liberty? Page 226.

54. What was the most daring feat of the Mexican campaign and by whom was it accomplished? Page 236.

55. What was one of the main causes of the Civil War? Page 260.

56. What daring cavalry leader made the first invasion of a Northern State? Pages 261–265.

57. What was the purpose of Colonel Streight's expedition in 1863? Page 277.

58. What was the object of blockade-running in the Civil War? Page 291.

59. Of what utility is the bayonet in modern war? Pages 311–316.

60. What was the purpose of Stonewall Jackson's flank march at Chancellorsville? Page 319.

61. What was the result of Morgan's invasion of Ohio? Page 342.

62. How was General Lee received on his return to Richmond? Page 346.

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF HISTORICAL LITERATURE

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES FROM THE DISCOVERY OF THE AMERICAN CONTINENT TO THE CLOSE OF THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR. *Bancroft, George.*

The most valuable and important history of the United States extant for the period designated. The author devoted a lifetime to the critical study of materials gathered from all quarters.

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA TO THE END OF THE SIXTEENTH CONGRESS. *Hildreth, Richard.*

A history of great accuracy and much merit, though with serious defects. The national portion is partisan in character, strongly opposing Jefferson and his adherents.

HISTORY OF THE PEOPLE OF THE UNITED STATES. *MacMaster, John Bach.*

This work covers the period from the close of the Revolutionary War to that of the Civil War, and displays wide research and an admirable handling of material. It is very valuable from its exhaustive study of many important epochs in the history of the country and its people.

NARRATIVE AND CRITICAL HISTORY OF AMERICA. *Winsor, Justin.*

The history of the country is minutely handled in this work up to the formation of the Constitution and more briefly for the sixty years following. It is chiefly made up of monographs by various authors.

THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA, THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION, and THE CRITICAL PERIOD OF AMERICAN HISTORY. *Fiske, John.*

These works display scholarship, judgment, and accuracy, though in some instances views are taken

which are open to question. The style of the writer is charming, and his works are very popular.

BRYANT'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES. *Gay, Sydney Howard.*
There is no evidence in this work that Bryant took any part in it other than to write an introduction, but the work fills a useful place among American histories of medium fulness, and has recently been brought down to the present date by a supplementary volume.

HISTORY OF THE PACIFIC STATES OF NORTH AMERICA. *Bancroft, Hubert Hugh.*
This work, while it has been severely criticised for inaccuracy and poor judgment, covers a field very briefly touched upon in other histories and is full of information gained from a wide field of material.

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA. *Adams, Henry.*
A work confined in its scope to the administrations of Jefferson and Madison, but in every respect admirable as a history of the period treated. It displays the widest research, especially into the foreign relations of this country.

HISTORY OF THE CONSPIRACY OF PONTIAC, and a series of important volumes descriptive of the discoveries and exploits of the French in Canada. *Parkman, Francis.*
These works have the charm of romance from the stirring character of the events narrated and the attractiveness of their style. They deal with material not elsewhere handled at length, and have much value to students of United States history in its colonial period.

CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES. *Curtis, George Ticknor.*
Of the two volumes of this work, the first one is the best, covering the Revolutionary and immediately succeeding period. The death of the author left the second volume in an unfinished condition.

CONSTITUTIONAL AND POLITICAL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES. *Holst, Hermann Edward von.*
This covers the period from the formation of the Union to the Civil War, and is much the most valuable work on American history by a foreign author.

A THIRTY YEARS' VIEW; OR, A HISTORY OF THE WORKING OF THE AMERICAN GOVERNMENT FROM 1820 TO 1850. *Benton, Thomas Hart.*
This is a voluminous work and one of great value as a detailed account of the Congressional debates and the leading governmental questions of the period treated. Supplementary to it in a measure is the following:

TWENTY YEARS OF CONGRESS, 1861–1881. *Blaine, James Gillespie.*
This full and able work covers the debates of Congress during the most important period in its history—that of the Civil War and Reconstruction, and its pages are full of interesting matter. A preliminary chapter briefly details the earlier history of the American Congress.

LIFE OF GEORGE WASHINGTON. *Irving, Washington.*
This is written in the highly attractive style of its author and was regarded by him as the ablest of his works.

LIFE AND TIMES OF BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, LIFE OF THOMAS JEFFERSON, and LIFE OF ANDREW JACKSON. *Parton, James.*
Parton's works of historical biography are highly entertaining, and show wide research. While not to be trusted in all particulars, they maintain a high rank among American biographies.

LIFE OF THOMAS JEFFERSON. *Randall, Henry Stephens.*
High ability and fine scholarship are displayed in this work, which, despite its partiality to its hero and its injustice to Hamilton, is regarded as the best life of Jefferson, containing much material specially collected by the author.

HISTORY OF THE NAVY OF THE UNITED STATES. *Cooper, James Fenimore.*
A work written in the author's admirable style and highly meritorious in character. Some of his views concerning the war of 1812 have been questioned, but his treatment of the work of the navy in the Revolution cannot well be bettered.

NAVAL WAR OF 1812. *Roosevelt, Theodore.*
An impartial and reliable history, founded on good authorities and attractive and readable in style.

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES NAVY. *Maclay, Edgar Stanton.*
This is the fullest and best history of the navy of this country, covering its whole career down to the naval battles of the Spanish War.

COURSE OF READING IN SPANISH-AMERICAN HISTORY

INTRODUCTION

THE history of the Spanish States of America is in many respects a remarkable one. In it there is little of the practical, matter-of-fact conditions which pervaded the English settlements, but it is full of the elements of romance and adventure, and from this point of view it has nowhere an equal in the history of the other nations of the world. As between the English, French, and Spanish settlers of America, the English settled down in fixed locations from which they slowly spread; the French were far more adventurous, mingling with the Indians and making wide explorations; the Spaniards were the most adventurous of all, spreading with great rapidity over a vast region of territory new to the whites and demanding the greatest daring and enterprise in its discovery and subjection. The difference in the conditions of settlement had much to do with this difference in results. The Spaniards were the first comers. They found an utterly unknown continent, settled by a new and strange race, to some extent civilized,

and possessed of that fatal lure of gold which led to rarely-paralleled efforts to bring them under subjection. There was empire, there was wealth, there was the fame of discovery before these adventurers, while the spirit of romance led them forward eagerly into realms whose marvels no one knew. Therefore the early history of Spanish America is one of daring exploration, invasion, and conquest, giving rise to many striking and remarkable results. After this early era came one of settlement and exploitation, leading to the sending of many treasure-ships to the home country. This brought about another phase of their history, that of attack on their ships and settlements by freebooters, largely of English origin, whose exploits led to a second series of exciting events. Most famous among these freebooters was Sir Francis Drake, whose career of brigandage was sustained by the English Queen Elizabeth. Later in time came a third series of events in Spanish-American history, that of rebellion against the tyranny of Spain and wars for liberty, which spread from the southern border of the United States to the extremity of Chili. Here again is matter for interesting tales, arising from years of desperate struggle and final success. The final period in this extended series of events is that of the founding of free republics over all this wide domain, in the Portuguese state of Brazil as well as those of Spanish origin, the futile effort of France to found an empire in Mexico, and the final events in the long story by which Cuba and

Porto Rico were freed from Spanish rule and Spain left without a foot of ground in the New World, over the greater part of which it had once reigned supreme. Nowhere in history is there a more interesting succession of tales of history to be found than in this vast region of Central and Southern America, and the field of pure romance was never more fully sown with truthful incidents than in the story of Spanish America.

OUTLINE OF READINGS

FIRST READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 7–22.
The island of San Salvador and its inhabitants—Columbus in the Bahamas—The charms of Cuba—Hispaniola—Return of Columbus—The Caribs attack the Spanish forts—Ojeda captures Caonabo, the cacique—Later story of Ojeda.

SECOND READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 23–32.
Early life of Cortez—In Hispaniola—Imprisoned by Velasquez and escapes—Discovery of Yucatan—Cortez chosen to command an expedition—Suspicion of Velasquez and flight of Cortez.

THIRD READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 33–43.
Balboa as a stowaway—His career in Darien—Sets out to cross the isthmus—Discovers the Pacific and names it the South Sea—The governor's treachery and fate of the explorer.

FOURTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 44–57.
The Prince of Tezcuco—His life as a fugitive—Defeats his enemy and gains the throne—The beauty of his palace—A noble monarch.

FIFTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 58–70.
Cortez invades and conquers Mexico—Rise of the Aztecs and retreat of the Spaniards—A night of terror and slaughter—The peril of the Spaniards—Escape of Cortez and his men.

SIXTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 71–96.
Pizarro in Peru—The treacherous attack on the Inca—Atahualpa a captive—His wonderful ransom—The execution of the Inca—The expedition of Gonzalo Pizarro—Crossing the Andes—Down the Napo River—The traitor Orellana descends the Amazon to the Atlantic—Return of the adventurers to Quito.

SEVENTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 97–108.
Journey of Fray Marcos—The fate of the vainglorious Estavanico—Coronado's expedition—The fabled Seven Cities of Cibola—Coronado's march to Quivira and return.

EIGHTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 109–126.
Sebastian Cabot on the Rio de la Plata—Miranda and the Indian chief—Hurtado and Miranda in captivity—The result of savage jealousy—The Indians of Chili—The Araucanians attack the Spaniards—An Indian boy hero—The exploits of Lantaro—The death of the boy chief.

NINTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 127–138.
Drake and the "Golden Hind"—Rounding the Horn—Capture of a treasure-ship at Valparaiso—Pursuit and capture of a rich galleon—Drake escapes the Spaniards—Adventures in California—Circumnavigation of the earth.

TENTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 139–150.
The fabled riches of Guiana—Berreo's exploration—Raleigh's maritime ventures—Sails for the Orinoco—The river reached and ascended—Beauty of the Orinoco country—Raleigh's second expedition and his fate.

ELEVENTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 151–172.
The freebooters of the Spanish Main—Morgan and his fleet—The city of Panama—The crossing of the isthmus—The Spaniards and the bulls—Morgan takes the city—The booty of the freebooters—Their return and Morgan's treachery—Duclerc's attack on Rio de Janeiro—Admiral Trouin takes the city—The invaders bought off.

TWELFTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 173–185.
The last of the freebooters—Their scouts in Nicaragua—The main body follows—Capture of the Spanish works—The Magdalena reached—Novel way of descending the river—The freebooters reach the West Indies.

THIRTEENTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 186–204.
The cruel treatment of the Indians—Oppressive laws —Insurrection of the last of the Incas—The Spaniards put him to death with torture—The revenge of the Indians—Columbus in Jamaica—Cromwell sends a fleet that captures this island—The negro Maroons keep their liberty—Cudjoe, the Maroon leader—The final Maroon outbreak.

FOURTEENTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 205–216.
The blacks of Hispaniola—The insurrection of 1791—Toussaint, the negro leader—Appointed commander-in-chief by the French—Napoleon sends an army to put down the negroes—Toussaint captured and sent to France—Dies in prison—The negroes revolt and win their freedom.

FIFTEENTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 217–235.
Bolivar the Liberator—The Andes crossed—The battle of Boyacá—Bolivar's triumph—Hidalgo, the Mexican patriot—His capture of Guanajuato—Valladolid taken—Capture and execution of Hidalgo—Yturbide wins independence for Mexico.

SIXTEENTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 236–256.
Paez, the llanero chief—He is imprisoned and leads a revolt of the prisoners—Crosses the Andes with Bolivar—In the battle of Carabobo—San Martin, the Chilian patriot—The Andes crossed and the Spaniards beaten—The victory of the Maypo and freedom of Chili.

SEVENTEENTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 257–279.
Prince John of Portugal flees to Brazil—Governs as John VI—Returns to Portugal—Prince Pedro made emperor—Pedro II dethroned in 1889 and a republic founded—A naval rebellion quelled—Francia, the dictator of Paraguay—His arbitrary rule—His cruelties—Lopez his successor.

EIGHTEENTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 280–287.
Marti, the Cuban smuggler—His compact with the governor—Pilots the ships to the pirate haunts—Marti's market and concession of the fisheries.

NINETEENTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 288–298.
Kearney's expedition—The Santa Fé trail—Invasion of New Mexico—Santa Fé taken—Kearney marches to California.

TWENTIETH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 299–308.
General Scott at Vera Cruz—Marches inland—In the Valley of Mexico—His victories—Assault on and capture of Chapultepec—The city of Mexico taken.

TWENTY-FIRST READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 309–315.
Walker, the filibuster, in Lower California—His failure—Invades Nicaragua—Makes himself head of the republic—Revolt of the people—Returns to United States—Invades Honduras and is taken and executed.

TWENTY-SECOND READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 316–324.
The French invade Mexico—Maximilian made emperor—The French warned to withdraw by the United States—Maximilian remains—War with Juarez—Maximilian captured and shot.

TWENTY-THIRD READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 325–335.
Cuba and its natural conditions—Revolt against the Spaniards—Maceo, the daring leader—His disdain of the trochas—In Pinar del Rio province—Maceo shot in an ambuscade.

TWENTY-FOURTH READING. VOL. iii. Pp. 336–346.
The *Merrimac* project—Hobson and his plan—The mines exploded and the ship sunk—Peril of Hobson and his men—Surrender to Admiral Cervera—The exchange of the captives.

EXPLANATORY AND SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

COLUMBUS. Page 7.

A native of Genoa, Italy, who believed in the roundness of the earth, and conceived the idea that Asia could be reached by sailing westward across the ocean. After several efforts to obtain support in his project, he found a patron in Queen Isabella of Castile, Spain, and in 1492 set sail in three small vessels with which he reached the Bahamas and West Indies islands. He made several other voyages, but was badly treated and died in neglect. He is looked upon as the greatest of discoverers.

MARCO POLO. Page 12.

A famous traveller born in Venice about 1252. Soon afterwards his father and uncle made a long journey through Asia for the sale of precious stones, reaching China. They returned in 1269, and set out again in 1272, young Marco accompanying them. The youth learned several languages of Asia, and entered the service of Kublai Khan of China, who employed him on important missions. He returned with much wealth in 1295, was taken prisoner in a war with Genoa and suffered a long captivity, during which a narrative of his adventures and discoveries was composed. His book made a great sensation. Long believed a tissue of fictions or exaggerations, it is now valued as a truthful account.

KHAN. Page 12.

A title of the sovereigns and nobles of Mongolia or Tartary. After the Mongol conquest of China and Southern Asia its monarchs bore the title of Grand Khan.

CACIQUE. Page 18.

A chief or ruler of some South American Indian tribes; especially of the Carib tribe.

MAGELLAN. Page 40.

The first navigator to reach Asia by sailing westward. Of Portuguese birth, he set out in 1519 with the hope of achieving this feat, discovered and passed through the Straits of Magellan, and reached the Ladrone and Philippine islands in 1521. He was killed in a battle with the Philippine natives, but one of his ships reached Spain *via* the Cape of Good Hope, thus completing the circumnavigation of the globe.

AZTECS. Page 44.

The semi-civilized race of Indians which Cortez found as the dominant people of Mexico. The Toltecs, a mild and peaceful people, are credited with the establishment of civilization in Mexico and the building of its great works of architecture. They were succeeded by the Aztecs, a warlike and ferocious people, who founded the city of Mexico about 1325 and had conquered all the surrounding peoples, from ocean to ocean, by the time of the Spanish conquest.

CORTEZ. Page 70.

The early history of this great conqueror until his famous retreat from the Aztec capital is given in the two tales devoted to him. He returned with a strong force in 1520, launched vessels on the lake surrounding the city and completely subdued it, making himself master of the Aztec realm, which he governed for a number of years. He returned to Spain in 1540 and died in 1547.

PIZARRO. Page 71.

The conqueror of Peru was the illegitimate son of a Spanish colonel, and was employed as a swineherd in his youth, never learning to read and write. Emigrating to the New World, he took part in the expeditions of Ojeda and Balboa, and hearing of a land of gold to the south, set sail from Panama, with a hundred men, in 1522. This and a later expedition were unsuccessful, but in 1531 he returned and this time his daring spirit and treacherous seizure of the Inca led to success, Cuzco, the capital, being taken and the conquest completed in 1533. He was assassinated by his enemies in 1541.

PERU AND THE INCA. Page 72.

For four centuries before the Spanish conquest Peru was a great civilized empire of South America, extending over great part of the region west of the Andes. It was governed by a conquering race, who kept the people in subjection, their chief or ruler bearing the title of Inca. The empire grew to extend through nearly forty degrees of longitude, with an area of between one and two million square miles. Several nations now occupy the area of ancient Peru.

SEBASTIAN CABOT. Page 109.

The son of John Cabot, who discovered North America in 1497. He made several voyages with his father, and afterwards entered the service of Spain, commanding an expedition to the La Plata in 1526. About 1548 he returned to England and engaged in trade with Russia.

SIR FRANCIS DRAKE. Page 127.

A celebrated English navigator who for many years sailed on plundering expeditions to the Spanish Main, the name given the regions held by Spain on the main-land of America. After his last great exploit in America he was sent to attack the Spanish fleet in the port of Cadiz and destroyed or captured one hundred ships. He was vice-admiral in the fight with the Spanish Armada in 1588. He died during an unsuccessful expedition to the West Indies in 1595.

BRAZIL. Page 163.

This country, though first discovered by Spaniards, and its interior first traversed by Orellana in his celebrated voyage down the Amazon, became a Portuguese possession through two causes. In 1500, the year of Pinzon's visit, a Portuguese expedition under Cabral touched upon the coast and took formal possession; and in the celebrated division of the new discovered realms between Spain and Portugal by Pope Alexander VI, the coast of Brazil fell within the area assigned to Portugal.

BOLIVAR. Page 217.

Simon Bolivar, a native of Caracas, Venezuela, and an ardent patriot, became a colonel in Miranda's army of liberation in 1811. He commanded an army himself in 1813, and for many years persistently fought the Spanish forces, liberating New Granada and Venezuela and in 1822 aiding to free Peru. He was successively dictator and president of these countries, and in 1825 was declared perpetual protector of Bolivia, a new state named after him. In 1826 he was made president for life of Peru, and about the same time was again elected president of Colombia. He died in 1830, revered under the title of Liberator.

KEARNEY. Page 288.

Stephen W. Kearney, a general in the United States army, was born in Newark, New Jersey, in 1794, and distinguished himself as a lieutenant in the army at Queenstown in the war of 1812. Made brigadier-general during his expedition to New Mexico, his gallantry at the battle of San Pasqual brought him the brevet rank of major-general. For a time he served as governor of California.

MONTEZUMA. Page 294.

The name of two Aztec emperors of Mexico. Montezuma II was on the throne at the time of the invasion by Cortez, was taken prisoner by him, and was slain by his own subjects while trying to appease an insurrection.

SCOTT. Page 299.

Winfield Scott, born in Virginia in 1786, became a soldier in 1807 and took a prominent and successful part in the war of 1812, winning in several battles. In 1841 he was made commander-in-chief of the United States army, and in 1847 took chief command in Mexico, making a brilliant strategic campaign from Vera Cruz to the Mexican capital. He was nominated for President by the Whig party in 1852, and in 1855 was given the special rank of lieutenant-general. He retired in November, 1861, age unfitting him for command in the Civil War.

DIAZ. Page 322.

Porfirio Diaz, born in Oaxaca, Mexico, in 1830, entered the army during the war of 1847, was brigadier-general at the victory over the French at Puebla in 1862, was taken prisoner and sent to France in 1865, but soon escaped, and in 1867 captured Puebla and the city of Mexico. He headed a rebellion in 1871–72, and was elected President of Mexico in 1876. This post he still holds, having been reëlected for every term but that of 1880–84, the law of Mexico at that time forbidding a reëlection.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Where did Columbus first land in the New World? Page 9.
2. What Indian tribe destroyed the fort and garrison left by Columbus? Page 18.
3. What led to the expedition against Mexico? Page 28.
4. How did Cortez become the leader of this expedition? Pages 29–32.
5. What led Balboa to undertake his famous expedition? Page 36.
6. What name did Balboa give the ocean discovered by him? Page 40.
7. What is meant by the *Noche Triste*, or "Sorrowful night"? Page 58.
8. In what way did Cortez win the battle of Otumba? Page 69.
9. By what bold and treacherous act did Pizarro win Peru? Pages 77–78.
10. How was the gold and silver obtained for the Inca's ransom? Pages 80–82.
11. On what plea was the Inca put to death? Page 84.
12. Why did Gonzalo Pizarro undertake his dangerous expedition across the Andes? Page 86.
13. Why did Orellana attempt his long voyage down the Amazon? Page 92.
14. Where were the Seven Cities of Cibola supposed to be situated? Page 98.
15. How far north did Coronado go? Page 107.
16. What famous discoverer first explored the great rivers of Buenos Ayres? Page 109.
17. What nation of Indians of the ancient Peruvian region alone preserved its independence from the Spaniards? Page 116.
18. How must we regard the exploits of Sir Francis Drake, and how did the English regard him? Page 138.
19. What was the purpose of Raleigh's expeditions to Guiana and to what did they lead? Pages 141–150.
20. What was the great exploit of Morgan, the freebooter? Pages 159–160.
21. What was the result of the French attacks on Rio de Janeiro? Pages 168–172.
22. How did the last band of freebooters escape from the Pacific? Pages 174–184.

23. How did the Spanish conquerors treat the Indians of South America? Pages 186–188.

24. How did the Portuguese of Brazil treat them? Page 194.

25. How did the Maroons, or negro fugitives, of Jamaica, long preserve their freedom? Page 198.

26. What led to the insurrection of the negroes of Hayti and the founding of an independent black republic? Pages 206–216.

27. Who was known as the "Liberator" of Spanish America and to what did he owe the title? Pages 217–225.

28. What South American republic was named in his honor? Page 225.

29. What was meant by the "Grito de Dolores"? Page 228.

30. By whom was the independence of Mexico finally secured and what kind of government did he establish? Page 235.

31. Who was the famous leader of the patriot horsemen of Venezuela? Page 236.

32. By whom was the independence of Chili secured? Page 247.

33. What led to the separation of Brazil from Portugal? Page 258.

34. When and how was Brazil made a republic? Pages 263–264.

35. What was the character of Francia, the dictator of Paraguay? Pages 271–278.

36. How did Marti, the Cuban smuggler, succeed in obtaining a monopoly of the fish industry in Havana? Page 286.

37. What was the occasion of Kearny's expedition into New Mexico? Page 288.

38. Which is the second oldest city in the United States? Page 296.

39. On what two occasions was the city of Mexico conquered? Page 299.

40. Who may be called the minor Cortez of the nineteenth century? Page 313.

41. What was the project of Louis Napoleon in 1861–64, and what was its result? Page 317.

42. Who was the leading spirit of the colored race in the Cuban insurrection? Page 327.

43. What was the purpose of the sinking of the *Merrimac* in 1898, and why did it fail? Page 336.

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF HISTORICAL LITERATURE

SPANISH CONQUEST IN AMERICA. *Helps, Sir Arthur.*
This work embraces a series of essays on the Spanish discoverers and invaders, which are so connected as to form a complete history of the period treated. The author's interest in the subject of slavery instigated the production of this work, which deals largely with the causes and results of the events described.

SPANISH AND PORTUGUESE AMERICA DURING THE COLONIAL PERIOD. *Watson, Robert Grant.*
This is the best history of the colonial era in South America by an English author. It is the result of considerable research and the selection of authorities is very satisfactory.

HISTOIRE DE L'AMERIQUE SUD DEPUIS LA CONQUÉTE JUSQU'A NOS JOURS. *Déberlé, Alfred Joseph.*
The merit of this work is high, it being regarded among the best concise accounts of the South American colonies and republics.

HAYTI; OR, THE BLACK REPUBLIC. *St. John, Sir Spencer.*
The author writes from a long personal knowledge of the Haytians, and pictures their growing decadence with a truth which is not relished in the island. His work is of much interest and value.

A HISTORY OF THE CONQUEST OF MEXICO and A HISTORY OF THE CONQUEST OF PERU. *Prescott, William Hickling.*
Vastly entertaining works, from the stirring and romantic character of the events treated. They may be regarded as masterpieces of historical narrative, while the extraordinary character of the careers of Cortez and Pizarro stands without a parallel in history. The author's study of the available historical material was careful and minute, and his works are of standard value as histories of a remarkable period.

THE WAR WITH MEXICO. *Ripley, Roswell S.*
Ripley took part in the war and has given us a full account of its events, reliable so far as it could be made at the time of its occurrence and without the opportunity to consult Mexican sources of information.

HISTORY OF PERU and THE WAR BETWEEN CHILI AND PERU, 1879–1882. *Markham, Clements Robert.*
The first named work is an authentic and attractive account of the history of Peru, ancient and modern, its record of the national era of Peru being derived from abundant access to Peruvian documents. The story of the war is chiefly based on Chilian publications, and puts the Chilians in a very bad light.

HISTORY OF CHILI. *Hancock, Anson Uriel.*
In this we have a condensed history of the most active and progressive of the South American republics, one based on the best native histories, and the most available to be had in English.

HISTORY OF BRAZIL. *Southey, Robert.*
This work ends with the coming of the royal family from Portugal in 1808, but the following twenty years was treated by John Armitage. The work is of merit as a history and of much literary value.

BRAZIL AND THE BRAZILIANS. *Kidder, Daniel Parish.*
This is a revised and enlarged edition of the author's "Sketches of Brazil." It gives a readable and useful account of the country and its people.

HISTORY OF THE PIRATES. *Archenholz, Johann Wilhelm von.*
This work, written nearly a century ago, is very meritorious from the author's use of trustworthy authorities, and aside from this is highly entertaining from its style.

POPULAR HISTORY OF THE MEXICAN PEOPLE. *Bancroft, Hubert Howe.*
A history of much excellence. The author's "Native Races of the Pacific States" also deals with Mexican history.

GENERAL HISTORY OF THE WEST INDIES. *Oviedo y Valdés, Gonzalo Fernandez de.*
The author, born in 1478, resided in the West Indies after 1513, and his work, though containing many errors, has been of great value to subsequent historians.

COURSE OF READING IN ENGLISH HISTORY

INTRODUCTION

THE history of England is one that appeals to all American readers, as that of the Fatherland of our nation, the realm from which our forefathers came and to which we owe the free institutions which we enjoy, since these were the immediate outcome of those long enjoyed by the English people. And the history of England is much more than a bare recital of the reigns and deeds of various kings and queens, of attempts at tyranny, and of the outbreaks of the people in their love of liberty. Around all this gathers a multitude of interesting events and striking incidents—tales of castle and field, of love and war, of fact and tradition. The story of no nation is more replete with interesting materials of this kind than that of England, and many of these tales are full of inspiring details and thrilling risks and ventures. Well known among them are the stories of Alfred, the greatest Saxon King; of Wallace, the hero of Scotland; of Robin Hood, the ruler of the wildwood; of Bruce, the great Scotch patriot; of Cromwell, the deliverer of

England from tyranny, and of many others whose life stories are full of romance and thrilling incident. It is with the stories of these that this work deals. In them will be found much of the glamour which tradition and romance throw around history, and none can read it without gaining an insight into the details of the life of our ancestors such as is not to be found in ordinary history, with its multitude of dry details. There are many ways in which the life of man and the progress of nations can be set forth, and this is one of the best, from its selection of examples of inspiring heroism, daring deeds, faithful patriotism, bold adventure, and all that goes to make a nation great and good. In matter of this kind the story of England is rich, as must be acknowledged by all who peruse this volume.

OUTLINE OF READINGS

FIRST READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 9–18.
Gregory and the captives—Augustine the missionary —The conversion of King Ethelbert—Edwin of Northumbria becomes a Christian—Work of the Irish missionaries.

SECOND READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 19–48.
Alfred the book-lover—The Danes invade England—Alfred's narrow escape—The king in the swineherd's cottage—He visits the Danish camp in disguise—The defeat of the Danes and surrender of Guthrum—The Danish chiefs are baptized and become vassals of Alfred—Athelwold deceives King Edgar, who kills him and weds Elfrida—The crime of Elfrida.

THIRD READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 49–61.
King Harold and his rebel brother—Death of Tostig and defeat of the Northmen—William of Normandy invades England—The battle of Hastings and death of Harold—Editha finds the dead body of the King.

FOURTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 62–76.
How Hereward won his ancestral home from the Normans—The Camp of Refuge in the fen country—The harrying of Peterborough Abbey—The campaign in the fens—The treachery of Abbot Thurston and loss of Ely—Hereward takes to the greenwood—The fate of a hero.

FIFTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 77–92.
The New Forest—William Rufus goes hunting—His dead body found—Slain by a stray arrow—Henry I succeeds to the throne—The White Ship and Prince William—The ship wrecked and the prince drowned—King Henry heart-broken.

SIXTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 93–106.
The claims of Maud and Stephen—Stephen seizes the crown—Maud and her foreign army—The war for the throne—Stephen a prisoner—Maud's folly and the revolt of London—The flight of the queen—Stephen again on the throne.

SEVENTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 107–120.
The pirate ship and the crusaders—Richard Cœur de Lion and the Lord of Yara—Richard arrested by Leopold of Austria—The legend of Blondel the harper—The captive ransomed—Richard builds Saucy Castle—His death.

EIGHTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 121–135.
Robin Hood in Sherwood Forest—Robin the people's hero—Little John's vigil—A knight-errant and a greenwood feast—How Robin helps the knight—Sir Richard and the abbot—Robin takes toll from the abbot and feasts the knight again.

NINTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 136–148.
William Wallace and the soldiers of Ayr—Wallace an outlaw—The "Barns of Ayr"—The revenge of Wallace—Defeat of an English army—The battle of Falkirk—Wallace betrayed and beheaded.

TENTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 149–161.
The siege of Stirling Castle—Edward II to its rescue—Bruce at Bannockburn—Randolph and Douglas—Bruce and De Bohun—The defeat of the English—The flight of Edward and the freeing of Scotland.

ELEVENTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 162–184.
Edward III and the siege of Calais—King Philip baffled and the town surrenders—The queen obtains mercy for the hostages—The Black Prince at Poitiers—Great peril of the English—Defeat of the French—King John a captive.

TWELFTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 185–195.
The Black Death—John Ball, the "mad priest"—Wat Tyler and the tax collector—March of the men of Kent on London—Wat Tyler's discipline—The killing of Wat—The King breaks his promise.

THIRTEENTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 196–212.
The wars of the Roses—Lambert Simnel claims the throne—A new claimant—The White Rose of England—Perkin Warbeck, the pretender, in Scotland—A fruitless invasion—His Cornish army—His flight and capture—Sent to the Tower—Is hanged at Tyburn.

FOURTEENTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 213–227.
A temporary palace—Henry VIII and Francis I meet—The field of the Cloth of Gold—A splendid spectacle—Meeting of the kings—The tournament—The close of the show.

FIFTEENTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 228–240.
Arabella Stuart and her suitors—The secret marriage of Arabella and Seymour—Their imprisonment—Their escape—Arabella overtaken and dies in prison.

SIXTEENTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 241–261.
Two young travellers—They reach Paris—Their journey to Spain—Their adventures in Madrid—Prince Charles and the Infanta—The return of the wanderers—Charles loses his betrothed and marries a princess of France.

SEVENTEENTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 262–275.
Colonel Morrice and the taking of Pontefract Castle—How Rainsborough was captured and slain—The Puritans besiege the castle—The escape of the proscribed men—The castle surrendered.

EIGHTEENTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 276–296.
The flight from the field of Worcester—Charles II a fugitive—Hidden in the forest—In the royal oak—The prince and the smith—The shrewd cook—Other adventures of the fugitive—Takes ship and reaches France.

NINETEENTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 297–304.
The Parliament refuses to dissolve—Cromwell and his musketeers—The power of the army against that of the law-makers—Cromwell becomes a despot.

TWENTIETH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 305–314.
The siege of Londonderry—Starvation in the city—The coming of the fleet and breaking of the boom—Food reaches the garrison—The raising of the siege.

TWENTY-FIRST READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 315–338.
A hunt in the Highlands—The plot to take Edinburgh fails—The Earl of Mar's army—Flora McDonald and Betty Bruce—A perilous journey—Prince Charles a fugitive—How Flora rescued him—His later adventures and escape.

TWENTY-SECOND READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 339–348.
The fleets off Cape Trafalgar—Napoleon's project of invasion—Nelson to the rescue—A hot fight—Nelson is wounded—Victory for the English—The great admiral dies.

TWENTY-THIRD READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 349–357.
A worn-out traveller—The last survivor of an army—The British at Cabul—A forced retreat—The Afghan attack—A dreadful massacre—A campaign of retribution.

TWENTY-FOURTH READING. VOL. iv. Pp. 358–371.
Fiftieth anniversary of a queen's accession—Other royal jubilees—Victoria's prosperous reign—The great jubilee celebration—Splendid pageantry and manifestations of popular devotion—Events in London's most brilliant affair.

EXPLANATORY AND SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

THE FORUM. Page 9.

The public square of ancient Rome, in which political affairs were discussed, courts held and money transactions carried on.

THE COLISEUM. Page 10.

The great amphitheatre of ancient Rome in which animal combats and gladiatorial fights took place. Built by the emperors Vespasian and Titus, it had seats for 87,000 spectators. Much of it still remains.

ODIN AND THOR. Page 12.

Odin was the greatest of the gods in the Norse mythology, corresponding to the Zeus of the Greeks and the Jupiter of the Romans. Thor was the god of thunder and the great fighter among the deities.

NORMANDY. Page 49.

A province of France lying on the English Channel between Brittany and French Flanders. In 912 A.D. it was granted by King Charles of France to Rolf or Rollo of Norway, as a bulwark of defence against the vikings or sea-rovers of the North. Duke William, a descendant of Rollo, conquered England in 1066.

RICHARD CŒUR DE LION. Page 107.

Richard I of England, son of Henry II, succeeded his father in 1189. Strong, brave and warlike, he won the surname of Cœur de Lion by his impetuous courage. His chief fame was gained from his exploits as a Crusader, in which he took Acre and defeated Saladin in a great battle. He is one of the prominent characters in Scott's novel "Ivanhoe."

ROBIN HOOD. Page 121.

The most famous of the English outlaws, supposed to have lived in the reign of Richard Cœur de Lion. His story is legendary, and forms the subject of many popular ballads, in which he is credited with sharing the spoils of the rich among the poor. Scott gives a vivid picture of the life of him and his band in "Ivanhoe."

ROBERT BRUCE. Page 149.
A Scotch noble and competitor for the throne. He aided Wallace in resisting the English and after many reverses he defeated the English and captured a number of fortresses. After the battle of Bannockburn the war continued for fourteen years, when the independence of Scotland was acknowledged.

CALAIS. Page 162.
A port of France, on the Strait of Dover. Captured by Edward III of England in 1347, it was long the last relic of England's great holdings in France. It was finally captured by the Duke of Guise in 1558, and restored to France.

THE BLACK PRINCE. Page 174.
The son of Edward III and a valiant knight and soldier, who aided his father in winning the great victory at Crecy and himself won that at Poitiers. After ravaging France for years, he returned to England and died in 1376. (See Historical Tales, France, pages 103–115.)

THE BLACK DEATH. Page 185.
A frightful epidemic, which desolated the world from China to Ireland from 1348 to 1369. It is believed to have been a severe visitation of the oriental plague. Many millions died, England losing from a third to a half of its population.

WARS OF THE ROSES. Page 196.
The warlike struggle in England between the adherents of the House of York and the House of Lancaster, the former wearing a white rose, the latter a red rose, as their emblem. There was a bloody struggle of more than eighty years' duration, ending in the victory of the Lancastrians over Richard III on the field of Bosworth and the accession of Henry VII.

CARDINAL WOLSEY. Page 215.
A powerful churchman of the reign of Henry VIII. He became the prime favorite and chief minister of this monarch, but lost his favor from his failure to gain the Pope's consent to the divorce of Queen Catherine. His lands and goods were pronounced forfeited and he was arrested on a charge of treason, but died before the trial.

THE RUBICON. Page 248.

A stream of central Italy which formed the boundary of Julius Cæsar's province. By crossing it in 49 B.C. he virtually declared war against Pompey. To "cross the Rubicon" now signifies to enter upon an enterprise from which there is no withdrawal.

CROMWELL. Page 262.

In the civil war between Charles I of England and the forces of the Parliament, Oliver Cromwell rose by courage and ability to the leadership of the Parliamentary army. The execution of Charles I was due to him. Charles II was defeated at Worcester and Cromwell became virtual dictator. He proved as great a statesman as soldier, and one of the ablest men of affairs England ever produced.

WORCESTER. Page 276.

In 1649, after the execution of Charles I, his son Charles was proclaimed king by the Parliament of Scotland. He landed in Scotland in 1650, was crowned as Charles II, and led a Scottish army into England, where he was completely defeated at Worcester by Cromwell in 1651. In 1660, after Cromwell's death, he was made king.

PRINCES JAMES AND CHARLES. Pages 317, 330.

James Francis Edward, called the First Pretender, son of the fugitive James II of England, landed in Scotland in 1715, but quickly returned to France, finding his adherents already defeated and his cause hopeless. His son, Charles Edward Stuart, the Second Pretender, landed in Scotland in 1745, led an army into England, and was totally defeated at Culloden, Scotland, in 1746. His escape to France was attended with as many romantic incidents as that of Charles II.

HIGHLAND CLANS. Page 330.

In Scotland a clan was a tribe or collection of families united under a chieftain, whose rule was hereditary. All members bore the same surname, supposed to descend from a common ancestor. Some clans were divided into branches, each bearing a distinct surname.

CABUL. Page 349.

The capital of Afghanistan, which country was invaded by a British army in 1839. After what seemed a complete conquest, British agents were established in Cabul, guarded by a body of troops. The Afghans rose against these in 1841, with the result described.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. When and by whom was Christianity introduced into England? Pages 12–18.
2. Who was the first learned King of England and how did he earn the title of "The Great"? Pages 19–34.
3. When and by whom was the Saxon kingdom of England brought to an end? Pages 49, 59.
4. What noble Saxon rebel long held the field against the Normans? Page 62.
5. What is meant by the "New Forest" and what English king met his death there? Pages 77–85.
6. How did Prince William, son of Henry I, meet his death? Page 90.
7. What led to a civil war in England in the twelfth century? Pages 94–95.
8. By whom was Richard Cœur de Lion seized and imprisoned and why? Pages 112–113.
9. Why did Philip of France wish to keep Richard in prison? Page 116.
10. What led Robin Hood and his band of outlaws to take to the forests and to a life of plunder? Page 122.
11. What led William Wallace of Scotland to rebel against the English? Pages 136–137.
12. By what stratagem did Robert Bruce win the battle of Bannockburn? Page 158.
13. How did King Philip of France seek to save Calais from the English? Pages 165–166.
14. How did the English queen save the hostages from Calais? Pages 172–173.
15. What three famous victories were won in France in the medieval age and at which did the English first use cannon? Page 184.
16. When did the Black Death appear in England, and what was its effect? Page 185.
17. What was the cause of the Wat Tyler rebellion in England? Page 186.
18. What was the final effect of the peasant outbreak? Page 195.
19. What impostor became known as the White Rose of England? Pages 198–202.

20. What was meant by the Field of the Cloth of Gold? Page 227.

21. What two French kings were taken prisoner and held in captivity? Pages 182, 227.

22. Why was Lady Arabella Stuart forbidden to marry and persecuted by Queen Elizabeth and James I? Page 228.

23. What was the cause of the most romantic adventure ever undertaken by an English prince? Page 245.

24. Where and when was fought the final battle in the English civil war? Page 276.

25. Why did Cromwell dismiss the English Parliament? Page 302.

26. By whom was a complete despotism established in England? Page 304.

27. What led to the siege of Londonderry by the Irish? Pages 305–306.

28. What plot was laid in the Highlands in 1715 and under what guise? Page 317.

29. What was the cause and the result of the battle of Culloden? Pages 329, 330.

30. What led to the celebrated battle of Trafalgar and what was its result? Pages 339, 348.

31. What was the cause of the massacre of an army from which only one man escaped? Pages 356–357.

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF HISTORICAL LITERATURE

A History of England from the Invasion of Julius Cæsar to the Revolution of 1688. *Hume, David.*
This work has long held a foremost place among general histories of England, and while not regarded to-day as an authority, on account of the author's prejudices, is looked upon as a standard example of historical composition, it being the first attempt at a comprehensive treatment of all the important facts, placing social and literary activities on the same level as war and government.

A History of the English People. *Green, John Richard.*
This is the earliest attempt to make the people the prominent feature in a historical work, much of its space being devoted to accounts of their social condition at various periods. The work is strong and interesting in style and covers the whole period of English history to the close of the Napoleonic wars.

The Popular History of England. *Knight, Charles.*
Next to Green's, this history is best adapted to the general reader. It is especially full in its treatment of nineteenth century topics.

A History of England. *Bright, James Franck.*
A clear, accurate, carefully and strongly written work, covering the whole period from the withdrawal of the Romans to the death of Queen Victoria. It is on the level of the modern historical requirements in method and critical judgment.

History of the Anglo-Saxons, The Early and Middle Ages, and History of England from the Norman Conquest to the Death of Elizabeth. *Turner, Sharon.*
These are valuable and highly esteemed works.

THE HISTORY OF THE NORMAN CONQUEST OF ENGLAND. *Freeman, Edward Augustus.*
This is a work of striking value, unsurpassed by any other work in English history, and is by many regarded as the greatest of English historical works. It is as excellent for its style as its contents.

A HISTORY OF ENGLAND FROM THE FALL OF WOLSEY TO THE DEATH OF ELIZABETH. *Froude, James Anthony.*
This work, written with the brilliancy which has made the author a favorite, quickly became popular. Yet the influence of its attractive style is negatived by the prejudices of the author, which have prevented him from being just and impartial.

A HISTORY OF ENGLAND FROM THE ACCESSION OF JAMES I TO THE OUTBREAK OF THE GREAT CIVIL WAR, 1603–1642. *Gardiner, Samuel Rawson.*
Gardiner's qualities as a writer give great weight and value to his history, which displays at once a broad grasp of facts and a judicious method of handling them. He is free from any prejudice, and has availed himself of the latest critical research, and his work is one of leading worth.

A HISTORY OF ENGLAND FROM THE ACCESSION OF JAMES II. *Macaulay, Thomas Babington.*
This stands first among English histories as a masterpiece of literature and a work of enduring popularity. Though somewhat vitiated by prejudice, its splendid delineation of character and the vast array of facts it includes promise to make it long an English classic.

A HISTORY OF ENGLAND IN THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY. *Lecky, William E. H.*
This is a work which deals widely with the characteristics that go to the making of a nation, those of political movements, manners and customs, etc., and deals with them all in a masterly manner.

HISTORY OF THE FOUR GEORGES and HISTORY OF OUR OWN TIMES. *M'Carthy, Justin.*
Two works of enduring value. The author has a very entertaining style, in some respects resembling

that of Macaulay, and his works are full of dramatic and picturesque features. They are at the same time accurate and trustworthy.

HISTORY OF ENGLAND. *Ranke, Leopold von.*
One of the greatest of modern historians, Ranke's "History of England" is classed as one of his ablest works. Especially powerful is his analysis of the effect of foreign policy on England during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries.

SOCIAL ENGLAND, A RECORD OF THE PROGRESS OF THE PEOPLE. *Traill, Henry Duff (editor).*
A work written by various authors and of much value and interest as a picture of English life at successive periods.

HISTORY OF ENGLAND, ETC. *Stanhope, Earl (Lord Mahon).*
There are two histories from his pen, which take up English history where Macaulay ends and carry it forward to the end of the American Revolution. It is the best history of England for the period treated, though lacking the literary skill to which Macaulay owes his popularity.

HISTORY OF ENGLAND FROM THE CONCLUSION OF THE GREAT WAR IN 1815. *Walpole, Sir Spencer.*
This deals with the story of politics and reform and the policies of the two great parties under several ministers and is a work containing much of interest and value.

A CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND FROM THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VII TO THE DEATH OF GEORGE III. *Hallam, Henry.*
Hallam's work is full of evidences of painstaking research and is marked for its complete impartiality. But later investigation has thrown new light on many of the subjects treated, as is evident in the work next named.

THE CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND IN ITS ORIGIN AND DEVELOPMENT. *Stubbs, William.*
This work ends with the death of Richard III, where that of Hallam begins. It is a production of remarkable ability, and in the words of Freeman is, "The greatest monument yet reared by English historical scholarship." It has become the standard work in England on the subject treated.

THE CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND SINCE THE ACCESSION OF GEORGE III. *May, Thomas Erskine.*
This work continues the subject treated by Stubbs and Hallam, and for the period covered is the most important of works on English constitutional history. Dealing with the period of greatest progress, it gives an excellent view of English political development.

COURSE OF READING IN GERMAN HISTORY

INTRODUCTION

In Germany we meet with a nation of extraordinary character. In their early days each of the modern nations of Europe—England, France, Italy, etc.—was divided up into a number of small kingships or principalities, more or less independent of each other. Political science in that age was in its formative period and the power of no ruler could extend far without peril of breaking. As men grew more civilized the scope of governmental control extended and the small kingdoms of England, France, and other countries became consolidated into single great kingdoms. This took place many centuries in the past for all the nations of Europe except the German, in which it was remarkably delayed. The process of welding together which we observe elsewhere did not take place among the German people, and we find that country broken up into a strange multitude of minor divisions, governed by kings, princes, counts, dukes, and other petty rulers, the sizes of the several divisions varying as much as do those of the American

states. Not until 1871, when the present German Empire was formed, was this mediæval state of affairs finally overcome, and most of the old kingships retain their integrity to-day, modern Germany being more of the type of a federal union, like the United States, than a fully consolidated kingdom, like the nations surrounding it.

It is true that, in reading the history of Germany, we find frequent mention of the Emperor, but the imperial potentate of those days was a dignitary of minor authority over the kingdoms and principalities. He was monarch of the Holy Roman Empire, a political fiction founded when Charlemagne was crowned Emperor of the West, and his dominion was held to include Italy as well as Germany. In fact, his power was often greater in Italy than in Germany, and we find one of the emperors, Frederick II, establishing his capital in Naples, and ruling from that city his composite kingdom. But the fiction of the Holy Roman Empire did not consolidate the kingdoms of Germany, each of which maintained its independence and separate government and yielded little to the authority of the Emperor. This ancient Empire was brought to an end by Napoleon, who also took the first step towards combining the German states, a work which was completed by Bismarck in 1871.

In this country of small principalities civilization made slow progress and there was frequent clashing between the minor states. Its history is full of interesting incidents, and yields much of

legend and anecdote, of which full use has been made in our tales of Germany. It is also of interest as being the country in which revolt against the Church of Rome was most vigorous and successful, and in which the separation into the two great religious divisions of Romanists and Protestants took place. This revolution was not accomplished without hard-fought wars, which preceded the political wars of more recent times. All this gave rise to many interesting historical incidents, of which a very entertaining and instructive series may be found in the volume of German Historical Tales.

OUTLINE OF READINGS

FIRST READING. VOL. v. Pp. 7–18.
Roman invasion of Germany—Hermann the patriot—The defeat of the Romans—The grief of Augustus—A new war—Capture of Thusnelda—Hermann and Germanicus—The rescue of Germany.

SECOND READING. VOL. v. Pp. 19–36.
The Lombards and the Vandals—Alboin and Rosamond—The Lombard invasion of Italy—Alboin's insult to his queen—Rosamond's revenge—The queen's fate—Romilda's treachery—Escape of her sons—Grimoald's adventure—An agent of mischief—Grimoald becomes king—Defeats his enemies.

THIRD READING. VOL. v. Pp. 37–46.
The insurrection of Wittekind—The Saxons baptized—Wittekind and Charlemagne—Theodoric's army defeated—Charlemagne's revenge—The revolt quelled—Wittekind becomes a Christian.

FOURTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 47–57.
The sea-rovers of Scandinavia—Invasion of France and Italy—The stratagem of Hasting—Hasting is baptized—The Norsemen in England and Germany—Rollo and the siege of Paris—A great defeat of the Norsemen.

FIFTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 58–68.
Bishop Hatto and Louis the Child—Hatto and Adalbert—Legend of the Mouse Tower—The Magyar invasion—The election of an emperor—Conrad II in Italy—The claim of Duke Ernst—Ernst in prison—The robber chiefs—The legends about Duke Ernst.

SIXTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 69–76.
Otho and Lothaire—Otho invades France—Otho in Italy—Defeated by the Arabs and Greeks—His adventure and escape—Legends of Otho's career.

SEVENTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 77–91.
The guardians of a boy monarch—Young Henry's adventures—The sternness of Bishop Hanno—Henry's character corrupted—How Queen Bertha won his love—Contest with Pope Gregory—Excommunication of the emperor—Henry's humiliation and penitence—Later story of the Pope and the Emperor.

EIGHTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 92–104.
The Guelphs and Ghibellines—How Weinsberg softened the Emperor's wrath—Bishop Henry and King William—The archbishop and the king—Frederick von Stauffen's courtship—Adalbert the bandit—Tycho's stratagem—The wine-casks and their contents.

NINTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 105–117.
The oppression of the Milanese—Frederick Barbarossa besieges and punishes Milan—Revolt and second siege—Milan destroyed—The Emperor's flight—Milan rebuilt—Frederick's defeat at Lignano—Frederick as a Crusader—Legends about Frederick.

TENTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 118–128.
Frederick II and Pope Gregory IX—Frederick's pledge to make a crusade—How he kept it—The farce of delivering Jerusalem to him—His conflict with the Pope—Frederick's reforms and foresight—The splendor of his court.

ELEVENTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 129–147.
Disasters of the Ghibellines—Manfred and Charles of Anjou—Cruel fate of Manfred's children—Conradin invades Italy—His defeat and execution—The "Sicilian Vespers"—Anarchy in mediæval Germany—The work of the Vehm—How it administered justice—Great power of the secret courts—Their gradual decline.

TWELFTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 148–161.
Arnold, the Swiss patriot—A peasant conspiracy—William Tell and Gessler's hat—Tell shoots the apple from his son's head—Tell's arrow reaches the tyrant's heart—Success of the rebels—Death of the emperor.

THIRTEENTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 162–175.
Disasters of the fourteenth century—The Black Death—Its frightful ravages in Europe and Asia—Jewish massacres—The Flagellants—Duke Leopold's army—Attack in a mountain pass—Victory of the Swiss—The freedom of Switzerland.

FOURTEENTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 176–197.
Emperor Wenceslas and his acts of cruelty—Sigismund imprisoned—His new acts of folly—Huss and Ziska—The murder of the councillors—The revolt of the people—The Austrians invade Switzerland—The armies meet—Arnold Winkelried's self-sacrifice—The Austrians defeated—The freedom of the Swiss.

FIFTEENTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 198–209.
A religious war—Ziska's victory—The harsh rules of the Taborites—A war of extermination—Ziska is blinded—The blind warrior victorious—He occupies Prague—His death—Bohemia invaded and desolated—Triumph of the Hussites—The Catholic religion reinstated.

SIXTEENTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 210–216.
The Turks capture Constantinople—They besiege Belgrade—Hunyady and his army—The Turks assailed—Enthusiasm of the peasants—The signal defeat of the besiegers—The Hungarians invade Bohemia and are defeated.

SEVENTEENTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 217–228.
A fugitive monk—Captured and taken to Wartburg—Life in the castle—Luther's career—The indulgences—His protest—Before the pope's legate—Burns the pope's bull—The Diet of Worms—The emperor's safe-conduct—Later life of Luther.

EIGHTEENTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 229–237.
Solyman's march of invasion—Vienna its goal—The Turks checked at Guntz—Eight hundred men stop an army—A fierce assault and stern defence—A month's check and Austria saved—Vienna garrisoned and Solyman retreats—The defence of Szigeth.

NINETEENTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 238–251.
The Anabaptists—Revolt of the peasants—Ravages of the rebels—Goetz, the rebel leader—The victory of Truchsess and his bloody reprisal—Münzer and the Anabaptists—His defeat and execution—The Münster revolt—Fierce defence of the rebels—The end of the outbreak.

TWENTIETH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 252–276.
Wallenstein and his wealth—The revolt and conquest of Bohemia—Mansfeld against Wallenstein—The Danes routed—The siege of Stralsund—Wallenstein defies the emperor—The Magdeburg horror—Gustavus Adolphus defeats Tilly at Leipsic and Wallenstein at Lützen—Death of Gustavus—Murder of Wallenstein.

TWENTY-FIRST READING. VOL. v. Pp. 277–287.
The Turks threaten Vienna—Siege of the city—The distress of the besieged—Sobieski to the rescue—The Turks defeated—Their severe losses—Eugene's victory at Zenta.

TWENTY-SECOND READING. VOL. v. Pp. 288–314.
Frederick William of Prussia—His harsh treatment of his son—His corps of giants—His son's proposed flight—The fury of the father—The portfolio of letters—Young Frederick imprisoned and his friend executed—Frederick succeeds his father—Voltaire visits him—Ill blood and Voltaire leaves—His revenge on Frederick.

TWENTY-THIRD READING. VOL. v. Pp. 315–327.
Frederick the Great and his enemies—The battle of Rossbach—His victory—Frederick's great victory at Leuthen—The night march at Liegnitz—The surprise and defeat of the Austrians—Frederick's success.

TWENTY-FOURTH READING. VOL. v. Pp. 328–349.
The Tyrolese defeat the Bavarians—Hofer the patriot—Speckbacher takes Hall and Innsbruck—An invasion in force—A desperate defence—The Tyrol again free—Hofer finally captured and executed—Speckbacher's escape—The first and second empires of the West—Napoleon's overthrow at Leipsic—The war of 1870—A new German empire founded.

EXPLANATORY AND SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

AUGUSTUS. Page 7.

The first and most famous of the emperors of Rome. A nephew of the great Julius Cæsar, who overthrew the Roman republic, Octavius—the later Augustus—joined with Mark Antony and Lepidus to control the state. Antony's infatuation for Cleopatra, Queen of Egypt, led to war with Octavius, the result being Antony's defeat and death and the raising of Octavius to the imperial power, under the title of Augustus Cæsar. Tiberius, named in the text, was his stepson and the second emperor.

THE VANDALS. Page 19.

A tribe of ancient Germans, who passed through Gaul into Spain, crossed the Strait of Gibraltar, and devastated northern Africa. Making their headquarters in ancient Carthage, they became pirates on the Mediterranean, captured and plundered Rome, and were afterwards subdued by the armies of the Eastern Empire.

THE AVARS. Page 28.

A tribe of Tartar origin which occupied Dacia about 555, thence made conquering excursions into Germany and Italy and gained a wide dominion. They were subdued by Charlemagne and nearly exterminated by the Moravians, and disappear from history after 827.

SEA-ROVERS. Page 47.

The Vikings or Sea Kings of Scandinavia who for several centuries devastated the coasts of Southern Europe and made conquering incursions into the interior. (See VIKINGS, notes on American Tales.)

EMPEROR OF GERMANY. Page 64.

(See Tale, the Old Empire and the New. Page 343.)

HUGH CAPET. Page 71.
Son of Hugh the Great, Count of Paris. On the death of Louis V, the last of the Carlovingian kings, in 987, this noble was elected King of France by the barons of the realm. He chose Paris as his capital. His dynasty continued until the Revolution of 1789.

GUELPHS AND GHIBELLINES. Pages 92, 129.
The names of two great political parties which fought for supremacy in Italy and Germany from the eleventh to the fourteenth century. Their names came from two German families, Welf and Waiblingen, the spelling being changed in Italy, which was the chief seat of their struggle. The Ghibellines were the supporters of the imperial authority, the Guelphs the opponents of the emperors and supporters of the popes and the free cities and kingdoms.

THE SARACENS. Page 118.
A name employed by mediæval writers to designate the Mohammedans of Syria; also applied to the Arabs generally and the Arab-Berber conquerors of Sicily and Spain.

THE TEMPLARS. Page 121.
A famous military order of the mediæval age, which owed its origin to the Crusades. The Knights Templars were organized in 1119 to guard pilgrims to Palestine from attacks by the Saracens. After the Crusades they became a powerful organization. The Order was suppressed in France by Philip the Fair, who seized many of its members on the charge of heresy and burned a large number at the stake. It was also suppressed in England, but with less cruelty.

THE MINNESINGERS. Page 129.
The career of the Troubadours of France gave rise to a similar body of poets in Germany, who took the name of Minnesingers, from *minne*, signifying "love." They were more refined and delicate in their songs, and showed a greater reverence for women, than the troubadours. Their period was chiefly between the years 1170 and 1250.

WILLIAM TELL. Page 148.

According to modern critics there is much of the mythical in the story of this Swiss hero. His famous exploit of shooting the apple from his son's head had been told of a Danish champion of earlier date, and of others elsewhere. Tradition relates that Tell was drowned about 1250, while trying to save a child.

JOHN HUSS. Page 182.

A celebrated preacher of Prague, Bohemia, who incurred the censure of the Catholic clergy by his advocacy of the doctrines of the English reformer Wickliffe. He was excommunicated for his teachings in 1413, and in 1414 appeared before the Council of Constance under a safe-conduct from the Emperor Sigismund. As he adhered to his opinions, the treacherous Emperor ignored his safe-conduct and had him burned as a heretic.

SOLYMAN. Page 229.

Solyman II, Sultan of Turkey, succeeding to the sultanate in 1520. He was an active and successful general, besieged and captured Belgrade and Rhodes and conquered Croatia and great part of Hungary. He also made extensive conquests in Persia and Arabia and died while besieging Szigeth in Hungary. He was one of the ablest rulers of his time, as eminent in the arts of peace as of war, constructing magnificent edifices, encouraging learning, and possessing fine literary attainments.

TILLY. Page 255.

Johann Tzerklas, Count Tilly, born in Brabant in 1559, served in the Netherlands in the armies of Philip II. After the breaking out of the Thirty Years' War he was made commander-in-chief of the army of the Catholic League, in 1630 succeeded Wallenstein as commander-in-chief of the imperial forces, and was successful in all engagements until his defeat at Leipsic.

GUSTAVUS ADOLPHUS. Page 265.

Born at Stockholm in 1594, the grandson of the famous Gustavus Vasa, Gustavus Adolphus won the fame of being the greatest soldier of his time. His

first successful wars were fought against Poland and Russia, and in the Thirty Years' War he saved Protestant Germany from subjection by the armies of the Emperor Ferdinand. (See Scandinavian Tales, page 312, for his exploits at the battle of Leipsic.)

SOBIESKI. Page 282.
A celebrated Polish warrior, who at an early age defeated invasions of the Cossacks, Tartars and Russians, and in 1674 was elected king of Poland as John II. The Turks invaded Poland and were driven out by him, and in 1683, as described, he drove their army from Vienna, thus checking their last great movement of invasion.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. What led to the revolt of the Germans under Hermann against the Romans? Page 8.
2. What was the result? Pages 12–18.
3. When was the kingdom of Lombardy founded in northern Italy? Page 22.
4. When did the Avars invade Italy? Pages 28, 35.
5. Who was the great champion of the Saxons in the wars with Charlemagne? Pages 37–38.
6. Who were the most famous of the sea-rovers of Scandinavia? Pages 47, 53, 55.
7. What fierce tribe of barbarians invaded and terrified Germany in the tenth century? Page 62.
8. What German emperor first besieged Paris and by whom was it defended? Pages 70–71.
9. What was the most remarkable event in the history of the Emperors of Germany? Pages 84–91.
10. Why did Frederick Barbarossa destroy the city of Milan and with what effect? Pages 105–117.
11. What was the character of the crusade of Frederick II and how did he obtain possession of Jerusalem? Pages 118–119.
12. For what purpose was the tribunal of the Holy Vehm instituted? Pages 138–139.
13. What is the modern opinion of the story of William Tell? Page 158.
14. What gave rise to the sect of the Flagellants and what is meant by this term? Pages 162–167.
15. What did the Swiss gain by their signal victory at Morgarten? Pages 170–174.
16. What act of faithlessness and treachery was committed by Emperor Sigismund? Page 182.
17. When did the Austrians make a second attempt to subdue Switzerland and how was it defeated? Pages 189–196.
18. What was the result of Sigismund's treachery to John Huss? Page 198.
19. How was Belgrade saved in its first siege by the Turks? Pages 210–216.
20. What was the incitement to Luther's revolt against the Church of Rome? Page 220.

21. How was Solyman the Magnificent checked in his invasion of Austria? Pages 229–235.

22. Who were the Anabaptists? Page 238.

23. Who was Wallenstein? Pages 252–253.

24. What was the fate of the two great leaders in the Thirty Years' War? Pages 271–276.

25. By whom was Vienna saved from capture by the Turks? Page 282.

26. In what way was Frederick the Great treated in youth by his father? Pages 289–290.

27. What led to hostile relations between Frederick the Great and his guest Voltaire? Pages 308–314.

28. What is meant by the Seven Years' War? Page 315.

29. What led to the revolt of the Tyrol? Page 329.

30. How were the leaders of the Tyrolese treated for their patriotism? Pages 339–341.

31. What was the character of the old German Empire and when and by whom was the new one constituted? Pages 343, 349.

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF HISTORICAL LITERATURE

THE HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE. *Bryce, James.*
There is no more popular and meritorious work on German history than this production of an English author, there being no counterpart to it in its luminous portrayal of the relations between Germany and Rome during the mediæval period.

THE HISTORY OF GERMANY FROM THE EARLIEST PERIOD TO THE PRESENT TIME. *Menzel, Wolfgang.*
This, a translation of a German work, brings down the history to the year 1848, and has been widely popular in Germany. Its account of political conditions in Germany during the past two centuries is especially satisfactory.

A HISTORY OF GERMANY. *Kohlrausch, Frederick.*
The original work, of which this is a translation, has been highly regarded in Germany, it being the most important of the several valuable historical and chronological works of the author.

A HISTORY OF GERMANY. *Taylor, Bayard.*
Written in the clear and attractive style of this author, and ranking among the best of the brief histories. It is founded, like the parallel work by Charlton T. Lewis, mainly on Dr. David Müller's "History of Germany from the Earliest Times."

HISTORY OF THE THIRTY YEARS' WAR. *Gindely, Anton.*
A work planned on a very extensive scale, and based on the examination of a multitude of documents of the period. It is the standard work on this war, of which we possess an excellent brief description in Samuel G. Gardiner's "Thirty Years' War," which pays special attention to the crucial points of the war and to the results of the struggle.

HISTORY OF THE REIGN OF THE EMPEROR CHARLES V. *Robertson, William.*
Of the various works of this famous author, which include admirable histories of Scotland and America, this is regarded as his best production. It is looked upon as a classic and has received high praise from Voltaire and Gibbon.

HISTORY OF GERMANY IN THE MIDDLE AGES. *Henderson, Ernest F.*
The author was engaged for years in gathering materials for this work, and has availed himself of the latest results of investigation of the period treated to produce a work of permanent value.

HISTORY OF FRIEDRICH II, CALLED FREDERICK THE GREAT. *Carlyle, Thomas.*
The erratic Carlyle has in this produced the best history of Frederick extant, and one of the most remarkable of historical works. Exhaustive research and study of materials preceded the writing of the work.

HISTORY OF PRUSSIA TO THE ACCESSION OF FREDERICK THE GREAT, and HISTORY OF PRUSSIA UNDER FREDERICK THE GREAT. *Tuttle, Herbert.*
Two related works by an American author written in a very readable style and among the best of histories of the period. The author did not live to finish his work.

GERMAN HISTORY DURING THE REFORMATION, NINE BOOKS OF PRUSSIAN HISTORY, and HISTORY OF WALLENSTEIN. *Ranke, Leopold von.*
The works of this very able writer, who ranks as one of the most eminent of German historians, have been translated into English. His "History of Prussia During the Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries" is a work of great value.

THE FOUNDING OF THE GERMAN EMPIRE. *Sybel, Heinrich von.*
This author was a pupil of Ranke, and in this, his best work, we possess a most excellent account of the recent German imperial revolution.

THE FRANCO-PRUSSIAN WAR. *Hozier, H. M.*
The "Seven Years' War" of this author gave him a good standing as a historian, and his later effort, covering the brief period of the recent war, is very readable and may be relied upon for accuracy.

GERMANY. *Staël, Madame de.*
A work highly praised by Goethe and Mackintosh and considered by some as the greatest work of this famous authoress. It is not a political history of the country, but a luminous account of its institutions and of its philosophy and literature, the purpose being to portray the characteristics of the Germans and show the causes of their social and political conditions.

GERMANY, PAST AND PRESENT. *Baring-Gould, Sabine.*
This, like the above, is not a history, but an exposition of the political and social conditions existing in modern Germany. There is no other work dealing so luminously with the origin and character of German institutions.

STORY OF HUNGARY. *Vambéry, Arminius.*
This work is from the pen of the celebrated traveler and writer on Central Asian topics. Written in English, to supply English-speaking readers with a popular history of Hungary, it is of much value, giving a satisfactory account of Hungary from its origin.

COURSE OF READING IN FRENCH HISTORY

INTRODUCTION

FRANCE is in various respects the most interesting of the nations of modern Europe. Like Italy, its history continues without a break from the days of ancient Rome, and it had risen into some degree of civilization while England and Germany were still plunged in barbarism. Its history goes back to the signal defeat of the Huns at Orleans, in the closing era of the Roman Empire, and continues through the irruption of the Franks to the crowning of Charlemagne as the first emperor of a new European empire. Here Christianity won its first great barbarian convert, in the baptism of Clovis in 496, and it long remained the chief bulwark of the Church of Rome. It is of interest also that France was the seat of the first active advent of literature after the decline of that of the ancient world. It is to the Troubadours and Trouveres of France that we owe that stir in European thought which rapidly spread through the neighboring countries and filled men's minds with new ideas and new impulses. In its subsequent

history France has played one of the most brilliant parts among the nations of Europe. None of those nations has produced more striking characters or known a more varied series of events. The two greatest military leaders of the modern period lent the glamour of their glory to French history. Charlemagne, in its early days, spread his dominion over half the continent and built up an empire of splendid scope. Napoleon, in our own era, did the same, and for years wielded the greatest power of any man in modern times.

There is more than this in French history. It is full of the elements of romance and living interest. Here the feudal system first grew up; here the institution of Chivalry was founded and made its most brilliant display; here the knight errant found his fairest field; here in the famous Richelieu arose the most able of statesmen and in Louis XIV the most magnificent of modern monarchs. Here despotism grew up on the ruins of feudalism; here arose one of the bitterest of struggles between the Roman Church and the dissenting sects; and here, in the closing days of the eighteenth century, broke out the most remarkable revolution the world has ever known, a revolt which levelled at a blow the strong walls of despotic rule and established a republic on their ruins. To this famous uprising of the French people we owe the struggle for liberty among the peoples of Europe which has gone on for more than a century and is to-day full of promising indications. Such has, in brief, been the

history of France. It is one yielding many tales of courage and wit, of brilliant exploits and striking events. One's mind is fed at the very storehouse of romantic history as he reads of such characters as Charlemagne, Peter the Hermit, Joan of Arc, Henry of Navarre, and a host of other striking characters, reaching down through history to our own times, and making the story of France coruscate with splendid episodes.

OUTLINE OF READINGS

FIRST READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 7–17.
The city of Orleans—Attila and the Huns—The siege of Orleans—The bishop and the sentinel—The army of relief—The great battle of Châlons—The retreat of Attila.

SECOND READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 18–28.
Clotilde the beautiful—The messenger of Clovis—The theft of the ring — The flight and pursuit of Clotilde—Her marriage to Clovis—The conversion of the king—The revenge of Clotilde.

THIRD READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 29–39.
Two rival queens—The wiles of Fredegonde the wicked—Murder of the king—Marriage of Princess Rigouthe—Brunehild's contests with Fredegonde—Death of Fredegonde—the cruel punishment of Brunehild.

FOURTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 40–57.
The Vale of Roncesvalles—Charlemagne invades Spain—The legend of Roland's horn—The Song of Roland—Charlemagne and the Avars—The remarkable defences of Hungary—The war with the Avars—The conquest of their kingdom.

FIFTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 58–68.
The kingdom of Charlemagne—Charlemagne at Rome—A great cathedral—The Pope crowns Charlemagne emperor—The legend of Ogier the Dane.

SIXTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 69–80.
The mission of Peter the Hermit—The council at Clermont—The taking of the Cross—Peter's mob of followers—The First Crusade—The Turks defeated and Jerusalem taken.

SEVENTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 81–102.
The towns of early France—The Commune of Laos—The acts of Bishop Gaudri—The town loses its

charter—Rising of the people and murder of the bishop—The king's revenge—France in the Hundred Years' War—The peasants of Longueil—Big Ferré and the English—The death of the champion.

EIGHTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 103–115.
A famous knight—Du Guesclin a captive—The Prince of Wales and the knight—Du Guesclin's ransom—His later career—Death in victory.

NINTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 116–132.
The maid Joan and her voices—The peril of France—The maid's mission—Joan and the king—The march to Orleans—The siege raised—Joan's later career—The fate of Joan of Arc.

TENTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 133–146.
Jacques de Lelaing—The tournament at Nancy—Jacques and the Sicilian—A knight-errant's career—The combat with Don Guzman—The tournament at Brussels—End of the knight's career.

ELEVENTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 147–157.
Charles the Bold and Louis the Shrewd—The folly of King Louis—Charles and his prisoner—The king's treachery—The capture and pillage of Liege—Escape of Louis from his enemy.

TWELFTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 158–165.
Charles the Bold and the Swiss—The Great Mogul diamond—A new attack on the Swiss—Charles again defeated—How Charles fought and fell at Nancy.

THIRTEENTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 166–187.
The good knight Bayard—The healing of his wound—He refuses the lady's ducats—Gives a dower to her daughters—The Duke of Bourbon—Bayard's death at Milan—Francis I at Pavia—Capture of the king—Death of Bourbon and capture of Rome.

FOURTEENTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 188–196.
The marriage of Henry of Navarre—Plot to kill Coligny and the Huguenots—Death of the admiral—The fatal night of St. Bartholomew—The king's remorse.

FIFTEENTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 197–217.
Henry of Navarre proclaimed king of France—Mayenne's siege of Dieppe—His defeat by the king—The famed field of Ivry—The white plume—Henry wins the realm—His premonition of death—His murder by Ravaillac.

SIXTEENTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 218–232.
Louis XIII and Richelieu—Conspiracy against the minister—The conspirators baffled—The plot to murder Richelieu—The treachery of Cinq-Mars—His arrest and execution.

SEVENTEENTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 233–250.
Mazarin and the Parliament—The tumult in Paris—Anne of Austria and De Retz—The insurrection—The release of Broussel—Flight of the queen and the court—Condé defeats the Fronde—The return of Mazarin.

EIGHTEENTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 251–263.
The fête at the Château de Chantilly—Despair of Vatel the cook—The fish fail and he kills himself—The arrival of the fish—A mysterious prisoner—The iron mask—Dies in the Bastille—His identity never discovered.

NINETEENTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 264–270.
Voltaire's return to Paris—The homage of the people—Voltaire and Franklin—The scene at the Academy of Sciences—Voltaire dies in triumph.

TWENTIETH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 271–286.
Arrest of Cardinal de Rohan—The diamond necklace—The plot of De La Motte—The trick discovered—Punishment of the conspirators—The attack on the Bastille—The prison taken and its governor killed—Not a revolt but a revolution.

TWENTY-FIRST READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 287–297.
The Sainte Ampoule—The city of the coronation—The ceremony—The cheating of Citizen Rhull—The crowning of Louis XVIII—Recovery of the lost oil—Charles V anointed—The people of Chêne.

TWENTY-SECOND READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 298–305.
A journey to the frontier—Who the travellers were —The fugitives recognized—The return to Paris—To the guillotine.

TWENTY-THIRD READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 306–315.
The men who dominated the Terror—Death of Marat and Danton—Robespierre directs the revolution—Revolt in the Convention—Robespierre accused—The tyrant overthrown—Shot and guillotined—The Terror ends.

TWENTY-FOURTH READING. VOL. vi. Pp. 316–352.
Napoleon's Grand Army reaches Moscow—The people vanish—The Emperor in the Kremlin—The city on fire—The fatal end—Napoleon in Elba—The return to France—Fall of the Emperor—Critical periods in French history—Suicidal act of Napoleon II—The overthrow of France—Two sieges of Paris—The uprising of the Commune—The work of the Council —The Army of Versailles—The troops in Paris—The burning of the buildings—The massacre of the hostages—The revenge of the troops.

EXPLANATORY AND SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

THE HUNS. Page 8.

It is not positively known where the Huns came from, but it is thought that their ancestors were the Huing-nu, a people of Turkish stock, who formed a powerful state in Mongolia in the second century B.C. After a warlike career they lost their power and some of them appear to have migrated to eastern Russia. From this region at a later date came the Huns, who for nearly a century held Europe in mortal terror. Hungary, though it seems to bear their name, was not settled by them.

CLOVIS. Page 18.

King of the Franks, born about 466 A.D. Gaul had been invaded by the German tribe of the Franks before him, but he completed the conquest and established the nation which has grown into modern France.

CHARLEMAGNE. Page 40.

King of the Franks. The preceding Merovingian dynasty in France had been overthrown by his father Pepin, son of Charles Martel, mayor of the palace. The kingdom inherited by Charlemagne (Charles the Great) included France and a large part of Germany. He extended it largely by conquering Lombardy, Saxony and other regions and founded the greatest empire known in Europe for centuries. The Pope crowned him Emperor of the West, as the successor of the later Roman emperors. His dynasty became known as the Carlovingian.

PALADINS. Page 68.

The name given to the knightly companions of Charlemagne, in the romantic tales of the later period. The word is derived from the Counts Palatine, or of the Palace, the highest dignitaries of the Byzantine court. It became used generally for a lord or chieftain.

THE HUNDRED YEARS' WAR. Page 94.
A destructive contest, which began with the invasion of France by Edward III in 1398. It really continued for 125 years, though the actual fighting occupied only a small part of this period. France was terribly desolated, but at the end England had lost all her territory in France except Calais, and the French kings were more powerful than they had been since the days of Charlemagne.

JOAN OF ARC. Page 116.
This name is misleading, as giving the impression that the "Maid of Orleans," as she became known in France, came from a place called Arc. In reality it was her family name, her father being a peasant named Jacques Darc. It is disputed whether she should be called Jeanne Darc or Jeanne D'Arc, the latter giving the impression of one of noble birth.

KNIGHT ERRANT. Page 133.
A wandering knight whose life was spent in wandering around in search of adventures. The knights errant were rather characters of fiction than of real life.

LOUIS XI. Page 147.
A king of France famous for his crafty policy, by which he gained more than he could have done by war. He greatly increased the royal power at the expense of the nobles, and after the death of Charles the Bold seized his large domains. For intellect and ability few kings of France equalled him, and none for duplicity.

CHEVALIER BAYARD. Page 166.
A knight famous not only for valor and skill, but still more for probity. He played a leading part in the wars of his time and became renowned as "the knight without fear and without reproach."

DUKE OF BOURBON. Page 176.
A famous French general, who gained the high office of Constable of France by his ability. His loyalty to Francis I was weakened by various injuries done him and he left France to enter the service of

Charles V of Germany, the enemy of Francis. He was accounted the ablest French general of his time.

FRANCIS I. Page 176.

An able king of France who engaged in wars in Italy and was taken prisoner at Pavia. He wrote home to his mother: "All is lost except honor." Charles V kept him prisoner at Madrid and exacted severe terms before releasing him. These terms he refused to fulfil. He had a great reputation for gallantry, generosity, and royal accomplishments. For his famous meeting with Henry VIII of England, see English Tales, page 213.

THE HUGUENOTS. Page 188.

The name given the Protestants of France. They grew to be a powerful party, and in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries the country was distracted by wars between the two religious parties. Their military power ended with the capture of their stronghold, La Rochelle, by Richelieu. The Edict of Nantes, giving the right of worship, signed by Henry IV, was revoked by Louis XIV, and severe persecution followed, thousands of the Huguenots leaving France.

HENRY OF NAVARRE. Page 197.

Often called in France Henry the Great, for his ability. A descendant of Louis XI, he succeeded his mother on the throne of Navarre, and on the murder of Henry III of France became next in succession to the throne of that kingdom. A Protestant by birth, the Catholic League opposed him bitterly, and after the defeat of the League at Ivry he was obliged to become a Roman Catholic to conciliate the opposing party. By his generosity and ability and the skill of his great minister Sully he gained great popularity in France. Ravaillac, who killed him, was a half-crazed fanatic.

RICHELIEU. Page 218.

The great prime minister of Louis XIII began his career as a member of the priesthood, rising to the rank of Cardinal. Admitted to the royal council, he rose to be the virtual head of the state, suppressing

his enemies, humbling the nobles, and greatly increasing the power of the king. By his skilful foreign policy he added greatly to the standing and influence of France, and no statesman in the world's history surpasses him in reputation.

PRINCE DE CONDÉ. Page 243.
A member of a famous family of France, who was called "The great Condé" from his ability as a general. During the war of the Fronde he commanded the royalists at first, but being arrested by Cardinal Mazarin, he conducted a war of revenge against them. Sentenced to death, he escaped and entered the service of Spain, but in his later life fought ably for France in Holland, defeating the Prince of Orange.

VOLTAIRE. Page 264.
The most famous of French writers. Though he won great fame as a poet, dramatist and prose writer, his vanity, his satirical writings and the infidelity of his religious opinions, led to a degree of persecution, and in 1750 he left France to visit Frederick the Great at Berlin. Here, too, he gave offence and was treated with indignity by Frederick. He finally settled at Ferney, in Switzerland, remaining in peace and comfort there from 1755 to 1778, when he returned to France in his eighty-fifth year, to die from the excitement of his triumphant welcome. (See Historical Tales, Germany, page 305.)

CAGLIOSTRO. Page 277.
A celebrated charlatan and impostor, whose real name was Giuseppe Balsamo, but who assumed the name and title of Count Cagliostro and travelled in many countries, professing alchemy, medicine, and sorcery, and obtaining money by various forms of imposture. After the affair of the diamond necklace he went to Rome, where he was arrested and sentenced to perpetual imprisonment for his profession of freemasonry. He died in prison.

THE BASTILLE. Page 281.
A state prison of France, similar to the Tower of London, begun in the reign of Charles V, 1370. In the later years of the monarchy it became dreaded

and hated, many persons of all ranks being imprisoned there without any form of law or justice. When the revolution began, the first act of the people was the seizure and demolition of this detested stronghold of tyranny.

NAPOLEON. Page 316.

It is scarcely necessary to speak of the well-known career of Napoleon Bonaparte, and must suffice to say that his extraordinary course of victory led him in the end to a fatal confidence in his military skill. The invasion of Russia was the first step towards his downfall. All Europe rose against him after his retreat, France was invaded, and he was forced to abdicate and was exiled to Elba. His return proved a hopeless effort to reinstate himself, and his career ended in the rocky isle of St. Helena.

LOUIS NAPOLEON. Page 337.

The son of Louis Bonaparte and Hortense de Beauharnais, and nephew of the great Napoleon. He sought twice to foment an insurrection, being arrested and imprisoned the second time, but escaping from prison in 1826, after six years' detention. The revolution of 1848 gave him an opportunity to enter France, and he offered himself as a candidate for the presidency of the republic and was elected by an immense majority, the magic of the name Napoleon still being strong in France. Three years afterwards he overthrew the legislature and made himself emperor, the people again supporting him by a great majority of votes. His imperial career came to an end at Sedan, and he died in exile in 1873.

VON MOLTKE. Page 339.

A Prussian general of remarkable knowledge of the art of war. Made lieutenant-general in 1859, he was chief of the royal staff in 1866 and directed the campaign by which the Austrian army was decisively beaten at Sadowa. He directed in person the operations of the army in the war of 1870 and ordered the movements which led to its phenomenal success. He was made a count in 1870, Chief Marshal of the German Empire in 1871, and died in 1890.

MARSHAL BAZAINE. Page 340.

A French general who commanded a brigade in the Crimean war and was made general of division in 1855. In 1863 he was put in command of the French army in Mexico and was made a marshal in 1864. In 1869 he became commander-in-chief of the Imperial Guard. His surrender of his army and the fortress of Metz in 1870 led to his being court-martialed and sentenced to death. This sentence was commuted to life imprisonment, but he escaped from prison after a few months. He died in Madrid in 1888.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. What two great sieges and rescues gave renown to the city of Orleans? Pages 10, 123.
2. How were the Franks converted to Christianity? Pages 26–27.
3. Who was Roland the Paladin and what made him famous? Page 40.
4. With what nations of barbarians did Charlemagne have to fight? Pages 47–48.
5. Why was Charlemagne crowned emperor by the pope? Pages 58–59.
6. What led Peter the Hermit to preach a Crusade through Europe? Pages 69–70.
7. What was the outcome of the First Crusade? Pages 78–79.
8. What led the towns of France to demand charters and who spoke for their rights? Pages 81–82.
9. How were the people of France treated during the Hundred Years' War? Page 94.
10. How did Bertrand du Guesclin obtain liberty from the Black Prince? Page 112.
11. How did Joan of Arc, a low-born peasant girl, raise the siege of Orleans and open the way to the crowning of the king at Rheims? Pages 122–131.
12. What is meant by a knight errant? Page 133.
13. Why did people call Louis XI "the universal spider"? Page 147.
14. By what means did the Swiss defeat the powerful army of Charles the Bold of Burgundy? Pages 158–159.
15. What gave the Chevalier de Bayard his great renown? Page 166.
16. By what great soldier was the city of Rome taken in 1527 and what was his fate and that of the city? Pages 185–186.
17. What terrible event followed the marriage of King Henry of Navarre? Pages 188–194.
18. What were the fates of Henry III and Henry IV of France? Pages 197, 214.
19. In what great battle did Henry IV overcome his enemies and what else did he have to do to secure the throne? Pages 202–209.

20. What was the fate of those who conspired against Cardinal Richelieu? Pages 218–232.
21. What led the Parliament of Paris to assert its rights and powers against Mazarin and the queen? Pages 233–234.
22. What was the mystery of the "Man with the Iron Mask"? Pages 257–263.
23. What two great and famous men met in Paris in 1778? Page 267.
24. What led to the mystery of the diamond necklace? Page 271.
25. What made the people of France hate, attack, and demolish the Bastille? Page 281.
26. What was meant by the Sainte Ampoule? Page 287.
27. What caused the flight of Louis XVI and Marie Antoinette from Paris? Page 298.
28. What brought the Reign of Terror in France to an end? Pages 306–315.
29. What was the purpose of Napoleon in lingering in Moscow? Page 326.
30. What two returns were made by Napoleon to France? Pages 327, 335.
31. What two critical periods marked the modern history of France? Page 337.
32. What striking political events took place in the year 1870–71? Pages 337–338.
33. What was the true cause of the Franco-Prussian war of 1870? Pages 338–339.
34. To what did the Prussians owe their phenomenal success? Page 339.
35. How did the war end? Pages 340–341, 352.
36. What was the cause of the communal insurrection in Paris? Page 342.
37. What led to the fall of the Commune? Page 347.
38. What excesses did it commit in its final days? Pages 348–349.
39. What revenge was taken by the army and the authorities? Page 351.

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF HISTORICAL LITERATURE

POPULAR HISTORY OF FRANCE FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES. *Guizot, François P. G.*
As a popular history of France this admirable work has no equal. Careful study and lucid presentation are shown, minor affairs being made to circle around the careers of great men and the development of great events. "History of Civilization in France from the Fall of the Roman Empire" is a work of the highest usefulness by the same author, it giving an especially clear and meritorious account of the conditions of France during the reign of Charlemagne and the prevalence of feudalism.

HISTOIRE DE FRANCE. *Martin, Bon Louis Henri.*
Comprised in two historical works, one of seventeen volumes of the times preceding 1789, and one of eight volumes for the subsequent period. It is an impartial and very accurate work, the fruit of deep research, and stands first among the general histories of France, the first prize of the French Academy being accorded to it in 1856. The author deals fearlessly with recent political events and his work has exerted a powerful influence upon national feeling.

HISTOIRE DE FRANCE. *Michelet, Jules.*
While this author had great erudition and the capacity for earnest research, his work is not impartial, his strong prejudices and ardent patriotism coloring his opinions. It is, however, eminently readable, the author having an unusual gift of picturesque representation.

THE HISTORY OF FRANCE. *Crowe, Eyre Evans.*
This covers the field from the beginning of France to the overthrow of the second republic by Louis Napoleon. The author made a wide consultation of documents and possesses a good literary style, his work being thus at once authentic and attractive.

THE STORY OF FRANCE. *Watson, Thomas E.*
This work, the product of an American, the Populist candidate for Vice-President in 1896, is marked by fine literary skill, its epigrammatic style making it highly readable. It deals briefly with the early history of France, but is full in its closing portion, which covers the reign of Louis XVI.

MÉMOIRES. *Comines, Philippe de.*
This mediæval work, covering the reigns of Louis XI and Charles VIII, is the first of modern histories to display sagacious reasoning on the characters of men and the causes of events. The author is often called "The father of modern history."

CHRONICLES OF ENGLAND, FRANCE AND SPAIN. *Froissart, Sir John.*
Here we do not have a philosophical historian, but a garrulous and delightful old story-teller, who paints for us in vivid colors the knightly life of the fourteenth century. The deeds of the heroes of chivalry are here graphically and picturesquely delineated by one "to the manner born."

ANCIENT GAUL. *Godwin, Parke.*
The fullest work in English on the history of Gaul and one written with much literary skill. His accounts of the social and political condition of the Gauls is especially notable.

CIVIL WARS AND MONARCHY IN FRANCE. *Ranke, Leopold von.*
A valuable work from the pen of this eminent writer, detailing the events of the period from the accession of Francis I to the death of Louis XV. The influence and significance of events and the influence of foreign policy are special features of this able work.

MEMOIRS. *Sully, Duc de.*
Sully was Prime Minister under Henry IV, and the remarkable events of the reign of this great king are fully described, this work being a trustworthy record of the great happenings of the time.

HISTORY OF THE FRENCH REVOLUTION. *Carlyle, Thomas.*
The idiosyncrasies of this famous author are especially evident in this remarkable work, which is a succession of word pictures given in his inimitable vein. Read in connection with some work which gives a general view of the period, it will aid greatly to gain a conception of the spirit of the time.

HISTORY OF THE FRENCH REVOLUTION. *Thiers, Louis Adolphe.*
The most popular history in France, and translated into nearly all modern languages, its literary style making it a general favorite. Following it came the "History of the Consulate and Empire," a work in twenty volumes, which stands in the highest rank among the historical works of France as a picture of Napoleon's career.

HISTORY OF THE FRENCH REVOLUTION. *Sybel, Heinrich von.*
The author had access to much newly revealed material and was able to clear up important questions as to the relation of other Powers to France during the Revolution. It may be regarded, therefore, as the most accurate of all the histories dealing with the Revolutionary period.

HISTORY OF NAPOLEON I. *Lanfrey, Pierre.*
A work of great value and discernment in which advantage has been taken of the correspondence of the emperor, as given to the world by Napoleon III. Lanfrey is severe, but not unjustly so, and his work has had a great influence upon public opinion concerning Napoleon.

CONTEMPORARY FRANCE. *Hanotaux, Gabriel.*
This deals with events from the restoration of the republic in 1871 to the end of the century, and is of high interest alike from its style and its material.

THE ANCIENT RÉGIME, THE REVOLUTION, and THE MODERN RÉGIME, entitled as a whole THE ORIGINS OF CONTEMPORARY FRANCE. *Taine, Hippolyte Adolphe.*
These works display the well-known literary skill of

their author, and are unequalled in their display of the social condition of the nation during and before the Revolution. The study as a whole ranks among the most remarkable of historical works.

THE FORMATION AND PROGRESS OF THE THIRD ESTATE (TIERS ETAT) IN FRANCE. *Thierry, Augustin.* Portrays the rise of the people of France to political power and the subjugation of local institutions under Louis XIV. It is a valuable account of the growth of popular rights.

COURSE OF READING IN SPANISH HISTORY

INTRODUCTION

THE history of Spain is replete with interest for several reasons. Unimportant as Spain is to-day among the nations of Europe, the time was when it occupied the leading place among them all and its monarch practically controlled the destinies of Europe and largely of the civilized world. This was during the reign of Charles I, who as Charles V became the head of the Holy Roman Empire. He reigned over all Spain, Germany, Netherlands and nearly the whole of settled America, and exercised a powerful influence over the remainder of Europe, while the gold of the New World was poured in profusely to enrich his throne. Never did monarch rule over a wider domain and the Spain of his day loomed very large on the horizon of history.

In its earlier days Spain was in great measure a land of romance, its history being one in which fabulous legends largely took the place of sober fact, and in which for centuries the realm lay under the control of a foreign race, the all-conquering Saracens. There is nothing in history fuller of romantic interest than the story of the

Arabian dominion in Spain and the long and bitter struggle waged by the Christians against the Mohammedan invaders. First we see the Saracen flood from Africa overflowing the land, driving back the older Gothic inhabitants into the narrow mountainous region of the northwest, where a shadow of independence was maintained while the Arabs gradually built up, in the remainder of the land, their remarkable kingdom with its populous cities, its noble and splendid examples of architecture, its active schools, and its civilization surpassing that then existing in any other region of Europe.

In the succeeding centuries we perceive the handful of independent Christians in the northwest gradually making their way against the Mohammedans, extending their dominion, fighting for life and empire, and step by step driving back the foreign foe until they were cooped up in the single province of Granada. Then came the final scene in this drama of conquest, when the armies of Ferdinand and Isabella captured the last Moorish stronghold and brought the whole of Spain under Christian rule. The close of this remarkable era in the history of Spain fitted in strikingly with the beginning of another, of still more remarkable character, for the year of the conquest of Granada was that of the discovery of America by Columbus in command of a Spanish expedition, and of the beginning of that extraordinary era of expansion which left Spain the master of the greater part of

the vast American continent. Then came the reign of Charles I, with his mighty dominion and power, that of Philip II, with the terrible struggle in the Netherlands, in which was exhausted much of the treasure brought from America, and the period of decline under the successors of these powerful monarchs. The result of all this has been the loss of Spain's prominence in Europe and of all her great foreign domain, until she has sunk from the leading to a very minor place in European politics. Yet her former history is rife with interest, and is unsurpassed for events of romantic incident and examples of ardent courage and national devotion.

OUTLINE OF READINGS

FIRST READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 7–16.

Wamba, the Goth—How he gained the name of "Good"—Wamba is made a monk—The wise Greek princess—The building of the aqueduct to Cadiz—The talisman—The water-bringer wins.

SECOND READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 17–29.

The palace and its talisman—Don Roderic's fatal curiosity—The realm of enchantment invaded—What Roderic found—The hand of destiny—The Mohammedans—Count Julian the traitor—The Moorish invasion—The battle of the Guadalete and the conquest of Spain.

THIRD READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 30–39.

The Table of Solomon—Tarik wins the table—Musa takes it from him—Musa and Tarik before the caliph—The question of the table's lost foot—Tarik produces it—The terrible punishment of Musa.

FOURTH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 40–53.

The Moorish princess—Roderic loves and weds her—How she became Abdul's bride—The cruel fate of the emir Abdul—Pelistes the Goth—The Moors take Cordova—The battle of Moor and Christian—Pelistes and the traitor Julian.

FIFTH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 54–67.

Abdul and Theodomir—The defenders of Orihuela—The terms of surrender—Theodomir's shrewd stratagem—Abdul's generosity—Pelayo and the Christian fugitives—The fortified mountain—The valley of Covadonga—The fight in the mountain pass—The Moslems defeated and new Spain begins.

SIXTH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 68–74.

The escape of Prince Abdurrahman—His life in Barca—His journey to Spain—Captures Cordova and defeats Yusef—Founds an independent kingdom in Spain.

SEVENTH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 75–95.
King Alfonso's cruelty—Bernardo and Roland—The Prince and the King—The Poem of the Cid—The young knight Ruy Diaz—His fights with the Moors—His famous exploits—His later history—Spain's great hero of romance.

EIGHTH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 96–114.
The Crusade against the Almohades—Two great armies—The Navas de Tolosa—Defeat of the Moors—The spoils of the victors—The city of Granada—The capture of Alhama, the Key of Granada—Bitter struggle of the Moors.

NINTH READING. VOL. vii. 115–131.
A Moorish foray—The march of De Vargas—The fight with the foragers—An exchange of compliments—Boabdil's rebellion—Taken prisoner by the Spaniards—Fighting in Granada—A hot-tempered envoy—The division of the kingdom of Granada.

TENTH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 132–150.
A daring raid—The Moorish pursuit—Del Pulgar's exploit—Del Pulgar in Granada—The duel of Tarfe and Garcilasso—King Ferdinand's siege of Granada—The Moors capitulate—The keys delivered—Boabdil's last look on his city—The Arab civilization in Spain.

ELEVENTH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 151–155.
Columbus returns to Palos—His reception by Ferdinand and Isabella—The great distinction given him—His second expedition sails.

TWELFTH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 156–171.
The Free Companies—Peter the Cruel—The White Company at Avignon—The invasion of Aragon—Peter dethroned—King Henry and the Black Prince—The Spanish defeated—The contest for the throne—The fight between Henry and Peter and death of the tyrant.

THIRTEENTH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 172–182.
Gonsalvo de Cordova in Italy—The tournament at Trani—An equal contest—Chevalier Bayard's triumph—The siege of Barleta—A Spanish success—Defeat and death of the Duke of Nemours—Final victory of the Great Captain.

FOURTEENTH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 183–201.
The capture of Francis I—Francis a captive in Madrid—Interview of the kings—The terms accepted and the captive freed—Francis absolved from his oath—Charles in France—Cardinal Ximenes invades Africa—Capture and ravage of Oran—The invasion of Charles V and its failure.

FIFTEENTH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 202–212.
Retirement of Charles V from the throne—His journey to Yuste—Over a mountain pass—Charles at table—His life at Yuste—How he employed himself—The final fate of Yuste.

SIXTEENTH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 213–223.
A headstrong prince—A serious accident—The boy's wild doings—Tries to stab the Duke of Alva—His demand for funds—Carlos under guard—His mad acts and his death.

SEVENTEENTH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 224–245.
The great naval battle in the Bay of Lepanto—Victory for the Christians—The losses of the Turks—King Philip's proposed invasion of England—The Armada sails—Attacked by the English fleet—Its utter defeat.

EIGHTEENTH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 246–265.
The cause of Spain's decline—The expulsion of the Jews—Ill-faith with the Moors—Insurrection of the Moriscos—Their expulsion—Events of the Morisco insurrection—A fugitive Moorish prince—The Spaniards merciless—The plain of Granada again a battlefield—Death of Aben-Aboo, the last of the Moorish royal line.

NINETEENTH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 266–274.
The buccaneers of the West Indies—Henry Morgan's career—Capture of Porto Bello—The assault on Panama—Terrible ravages of the buccaneers.

TWENTIETH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 275–291.
Alberoni the interpreter—Selection of a wife for Philip V—Princess Orsini exiled from Spain—Alberoni as prime-minister—His failure and fall—Story of Gibraltar—Captured by the British—Spain's efforts to retake it.

TWENTY-FIRST READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 292–301.
Godoy, Prince of the Peace—Napoleon's soldiers capture Spanish citadels—Godoy proposes a flight of the king—The excitement of the people—Godoy's house taken and its contents destroyed—His capture and later life.

TWENTY-SECOND READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 302–312.
The city of Saragossa—Rising of the Spanish people—The French siege of Saragossa—The Maid of Saragossa—A gallant defence—Capitulation of the garrison.

TWENTY-THIRD READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 313–321.
The claim of Don Carlos—Uncle Tomas, the Carlist chief—Progress of the Carlists—Siege of Bilboa—Death of Uncle Tomas and ruin of the Carlist cause.

TWENTY-FOURTH READING. VOL. vii. Pp. 322–331.
The three centuries of Spanish decline—The revolt in Cuba—War with the United States—Dewey's victory in Manila Bay—Destruction of the Spanish cruisers at Santiago—End of the colonial empire of Spain.

EXPLANATORY AND SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

THE GOTHS. Page 7.

An important branch of the Teutonic people residing when first known on the coasts and islands of the Baltic Sea. In the second century A.D. and later they migrated southward, one body, the Ostrogoths (East Goths), to the Black Sea and the Danube; another, the Visigoths (West Goths), crossing the Danube and reaching Greece, whence, under Alaric, they overran Italy and conquered Rome. They subsequently made their way to Gaul and Spain, in which country they founded a Gothic kingdom.

MOHAMMED. Page 23.

A celebrated religious teacher, the founder of the Mohammedan system of belief. Born at Mecca, Arabia, about 570 A.D., he taught a new religious faith, whose apostles, after his death, set out on a conquering career for the dissemination of their doctrine. Much of Southern Asia and all of Northern Africa were conquered and a vast empire was founded, which in the end included Spain and the Eastern or Greek Empire.

SOLOMON. Page 31.

A famous Jewish king who won the reputation of extraordinary wisdom. His fame spread through the neighboring regions and he was credited by the Arabs and others with mighty skill in magic, enabling him to control the powers of the air and earth. In this guise he appears as a character in the "Arabian Nights' Entertainments."

CALIPH. Page 32.

The title given the ruler of the Mohammedan empire. At first the power of the caliph was spiritual, as the successor of Mohammed, but it grew to be supreme in temporal affairs. This title has been replaced in modern times by those of Sultan, Shah, Emir, etc.

THE MOORS. Page 41.

The people of the northern coast of Africa. Con-

quered by the Mohammedans in 709, the army by which Spain was subdued largely consisted of Moors with Arab leaders. Hence the caliphate founded in Spain is usually spoken of as the Moorish.

Moslems. Page 47.
Moslem has the same significance as Mussulman, or Mohammedan. It is often used as an adjective with this meaning.

Ommeyades and Abbassides. Page 68.
The Ommeyades were the first dynasty of Arabian caliphs, so named from one of their ancestors. This dynasty was overthrown by another called the Abbassides, from their ancestor Abbas, uncle of the prophet Mohammed. Abdurrahman, who escaped from his enemies and founded a separate caliphate in Spain, was a descendant of the Ommeyades.

Campeador. Page 81.
A word signifying champion. It was given the Cid for a victory in his youth over a Navarrese champion in single combat.

Ferdinand and Isabella. Page 108.
Spain in the fifteenth century was divided into the four kingdoms of Castile, Aragon, Navarre, and Granada, the latter being the sole remaining possession of the Moors. Ferdinand, the heir of Aragon, married Isabella, the heir of Castile, in 1469. They soon after succeeded to their respective thrones and began that career of invasion which in time added Granada to their dominions. In 1513 Ferdinand conquered Navarre and thus brought all Spain under his rule, Isabella having died in 1504. The most famous event of their reign is their aid to Columbus and the discovery of the American continent.

Ponce de Leon. Page 110.
This is not the famous seeker of the Fountain of Youth in Florida, but an able Spanish warrior of the same name and period.

Garcilasso de la Vega. Page 140.
A Spanish soldier, who took part in the war with Granada, went to Mexico with Alvarado and aided

Cortes in the conquest of that country and of Guatemala. He served with distinction under Pizarro in Peru and became governor of Cuzco. His son, of the same name, whose mother was an Indian princess of the Inca race, wrote an admirable history of Peru and an account of the expedition of De Soto.

GONSALVO DE CORDOVA. Page 172.

One of the ablest of Spanish commanders, who distinguished himself in the war against Granada, and won the title of "The Great Captain" by his signal defeat of the French in Italy. Prescott says that his name is "as familiar to his countrymen as that of the Cid."

CHARLES V. Page 183.

Charles I of Spain, the grandson of Ferdinand and Isabella, acceded to the throne on the death of Ferdinand in 1516. His grandfather on the maternal side was the Emperor Maximilian; he inherited the Netherlands from his father, the Archduke of Austria, and in 1519 he was elected Emperor of Germany under the title of Charles V. As such he was master of a vast empire, including the American possessions of Spain. Yet in the end, worn out by his incessant military enterprises, he voluntarily resigned from the throne and retired to spend the remainder of his life in peace and quiet in the monastery of Saint Yuste. His motive for this was the severe attacks of gout.

CARDINAL XIMENES. Page 192.

A celebrated Spanish statesman and patron of literature, a man in many respects of admirable character. His successful campaign in Africa gave him a high standing in the state and on the death of Ferdinand in 1516 he was appointed regent of Spain during the absence of King Charles I. His rule was despotic and seemed intended to exalt the power of the king.

DON JOHN OF AUSTRIA. Page 224.

A son of the Emperor Charles V and brother of Philip II of Spain, and a military and naval commander of the greatest ability. His chief exploits were the subjection of the Moriscos of Spain, his naval victory at Lepanto, one of the greatest in his-

tory, his expedition to Africa and his successful campaign in the Netherlands, in the midst of which, in 1578, he died.

CERVANTES. Page 233.
The most famous of Spanish authors, whose "Don Quixote de la Mancha" is esteemed as one of the world's greatest monuments of literature. He also wrote dramas, moral tales, and an admired "Journey to Parnassus." He was for a time held as a slave in Algiers, being ransomed after risking his life to liberate his fellow captives.

THE BUCCANEERS. Page 266.
The pirates who infested the coasts of the West Indies and Spanish America during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. Their name comes from buccan, which signifies a method of preparing beef by salting and smoking. From these meat-smokers of the West Indies the buccaneers arose.

HERCULES. Page 284.
A famous hero of ancient Greek legend, whose strength enabled him to perform enormous labors. During an expedition to the far west he was credited, in fabulous story, with erecting at the entrance to the Mediterranean two pillars, called the Pillars of Hercules.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. How were kings dethroned in Gothic Spain? Page 11.
2. What threatening marvel did King Roderic find in the enchanted palace of Toledo? Page 20.
3. In what great battle was Roderic slain and Spain laid open to the Moorish armies? Page 26.
4. In what way did Tarik, the warrior, outwit the covetous Musa, in relation to the costly prize, the table of Solomon? Page 36.
5. In what way did a Moorish princess become a Christian queen of Spain? Page 42.
6. How did Pelistes the patriot warrior treat Count Julian the traitor? Page 52.
7. In what shrewd way did Theodomir, the Gothic knight, obtain favorable terms of surrender from the Emir Abdul? Pages 57–58.
8. In what decisive battle did the Goths check the progress of the Arab conquerors and lay the foundations of a new Spain? Pages 63–66.
9. In what way was the Arabian dominion divided and a caliphate of the west established? Page 73.
10. Who were the two most famous legendary heroes of Spain? Pages 75, 81.
11. In what great battles was the Arab invasion halted? Pages 96, 100.
12. What was known as the Key of Granada and how was it taken from the Moors? Pages 110–113.
13. What dissensions between the Moors greatly aided Ferdinand in the conquest of Granada? Pages 124–125.
14. What was the most daring exploit of Perez del Pulgar? Page 137.
15. What is known as "the last sigh of the Moor"? Page 148.
16. How was Columbus received on his return from his discovery of America? Page 152.
17. What led the Free Companies of France and England to the papal city of Avignon and the invasion of Spain? Pages 156–158.
18. What famous English warrior took part in the contest in Spain? Page 164.

19. What gave Gonsalvo de Cordova his title of the "Great Captain"? Page 172.

20. In what way was a French king made the captive of a Spanish one? Page 184.

21. How was Francis released from captivity? Pages 188–189.

22. What two famous expeditions were made from Spain against Africa? Pages 193, 198.

23. What remarkable resolution was taken by the Emperor Charles V in 1555? Page 203.

24. Why did Philip II imprison his son? Pages 215–220.

25. What was the effect of the naval victory at Lepanto? Page 234.

26. What was the Invincible Armada and how was it defeated? Pages 235–244.

27. What were the principal causes of the decadence of Spain? Pages 247–255.

28. Who led the Moriscos in their revolt? Pages 257, 261.

29. Who were the buccaneers? Page 266.

30. What man of humble birth raised himself to the post of prime minister of Spain? Page 276.

31. What gives its political value to the Rock of Gibraltar? Page 284.

32. Who was prime minister of Spain during the French Revolution and the early Napoleonic period and what led to his downfall? Pages 293–300.

33. Who was the "Maid of Saragossa" and to whom does she owe much of her fame? Page 305.

34. Who were the Carlists and what was their purpose? Page 313.

35. What was the naval record of Spain in the war with the United States in 1898? Page 322.

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF HISTORICAL LITERATURE

THE HISTORY OF SPAIN AND PORTUGAL. *Dunham, S. Astley.*
This historical work begins with the earliest period and comes down to the opening of the French Revolution. It has been prepared with great care and consultation of authorities, and ranks with the best histories of Spain extant.

GESCHICHTE VON SPANIEN. *Lembke, F. E.*, and *Schaefer, H.*
A German work which many regard as the best general history of Spain, the authors having consulted authorities not accessible to Dunham. In style, however, the latter is superior.

HISTORY OF THE DOMINION OF THE ARABS IN SPAIN. *Condé, Antonio José.*
This work, by a Spanish author, is a storehouse of information for writers on the subject, but otherwise of little utility to readers.

HISTORY OF THE CONQUEST OF SPAIN BY THE ARAB MOORS. *Coppée, Henry.*
The best of available material has been used in the preparation of this work, which is at once accurate and of very attractive style. After describing the conquest, it rapidly sketches the decline and fall of the Moslem power, and describes the remarkable civilization of the Arabs in Spain.

HISTORY OF THE REIGN OF FERDINAND AND ISABELLA. *Prescott, William H.*
To this history the author gave ten years of labor, and produced a work of the highest merit, alike from the points of view of scholarship and literary style. Later in life he began "The Reign of Philip the Second," but died before it was finished. The period treated is nearly the same as that treated in Motley's histories of the Netherlands, and is a monument of careful research.

CHRONICLES OF THE CONQUEST OF GRANADA. *Irving, Washington.*
This brilliant work is a classic in style and treatment, being the most important of Irving's histories, and esteemed alike for accuracy and interest. Irving examined all the old records available and visited and studied the localities described.

HISTORY OF THE WAR IN THE PENINSULA AND THE SOUTH OF FRANCE. *Napier, William F. P.*
This work, while crowded with details that have now lost all importance, contains much of value, and is notable for vivid description and beauty of style. His pictures of war scenes have rarely been equalled and the work is regarded as one of the finest of all military histories.

THE HISTORY OF GIBRALTAR. *Sayer, Frederick.*
The best book known upon this subject. It describes the many sieges of Gibraltar and its effect upon the international politics of western Europe.

COURSE OF READING IN RUSSIAN HISTORY

INTRODUCTION

RUSSIA, the colossus of Eastern Europe and Northern and Central Asia, the giant empire of the world, has had a strange and varied history. As an introduction to this course of reading we cannot do better than give a brief digest of this history. One thing may be said, first, that Russia has been the last of Aryan nations to swing into the circle of civilization. While the mental and political development of ancient Rome and Greece was making its way slowly among the peoples of Central and Western Europe, Russia lay plunged in barbarism, and not until within the past two centuries did civilization fairly begin to penetrate it. As yet it lies at a lower level than the remainder of Europe, its vast hordes of peasantry being still in a semi-barbarian state, while its political system is a heritage from the remote past, as far behind the age as are those of Turkey and China.

Going back to the early centuries of the Christian era, we find the territory of Russia overrun by the Scythian tribes, largely of Asiatic origin, forming the starting point of many of the savage invasions

that desolated Europe. The Slavs, or true Russians, then dwelt on the Danube, the Elbe, and the southern shores of the Baltic Sea, and made their way into the territory of the present Russia from the west. This invasion took place slowly, and a number of small communities were formed. The beginning of modern Russia was made by Rurik, a Scandinavian, who conquered the Baltic region of Russia about 862 A.D. and made Novgorod his capital. He and his brothers and their descendants spread their authority throughout Russia, conquered Bulgaria and assailed Constantinople, nearly making a conquest of this city and the empire it controlled. But Rurik and his dynasty were not autocratic. The Slavs in those days were independent in spirit and possessed institutions of a democratic type, retaining a strong voice in the government and limiting the power of their rulers. In fact, for several centuries, the Russian nation consisted of a series of republics, the rural districts being divided into village communities holding the land in common. These communities still exist in Russia. The chief cause of the overthrow of these republics was the great calamity of the Mongolian invasion in the thirteenth century. The tide of nomad warriors led by Genghis Khan that overran Asia, also subdued Russia and held it under despotic control for many years. Aided by the Mongol power some of the Russian chiefs put an end to the free principalities in their vicinity and made themselves tyrant rulers. Finally Moscow became the centre of the growing

empire. Its kings gradually subdued their neighboring communities and in time grew powerful enough to defeat and drive out the Mongol hordes. In the end they became the lords of all Russia, which they ruled with a tyranny of the Mongol type. Thus we owe the modern autocratic empire of Europe to the Mongolian conquerors of Asia, who aided to destroy the ancient republican institutions and set Russia centuries behind the rest of Europe in its political organization. The beginning of Russian civilization may be credited to Peter the Great, who consolidated the empire, introduced into it the military, naval, and other conditions of the West, utterly defeated the Swedish conqueror Charles XII, added Finland to the empire, and left Russia a century in advance of the state in which he found it. Since his time the territorial progress of Russia has been chiefly in Asia, all Siberia, Central Asia, and Caucasia being added to the empire. This progress of Asiatic invasion continued until the present century, when it was suddenly and definitely brought to an end by the triumph of Japan on the plains of Manchuria. This check to the progress of invasion was accompanied by a threatening uprising against autocratic government. For a century past the more enlightened of the Russians, inspired by the example of Western Europe, have demanded a greater measure of political freedom. Within very recent times this spirit has penetrated the mass of the people, who are demanding representative gov-

ernment in no uncertain tone. A partial response has been made to their demands in the convening of a parliament so restricted in its scope as to be largely powerless. Its value is only that of the wedge. It has made the first narrow split in the oak of autocracy, and seems likely to be driven in until the solid bulk is rent asunder and Russia wheels into line with the modern institutions of Europe.

OUTLINE OF READINGS

FIRST READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 5–20.
The Russian plains—The Scythians and their habits —Stories of Herodotus—Revolt of the slaves—Rurik and his kingdom—Oleg gains Kief—He besieges Constantinople—Oleg's horse.

SECOND READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 21–28.
Igor invades the Greek empire—Ends his career—Olga's revenge on the Drevlians—Her strange and cruel strategy.

THIRD READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 29–48.
Vladimir the viking—Slays Yaropolk and gains his kingdom—His great dominion—How he became a Christian—A Russian champion—The freedom of Novgorod—The Russian Mir—Yaroslaf the Wise—Founds the Russian Church—His code of laws—The classes of the nation.

FOURTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 49–59.
The nomads of Asia—They invade and conquer Russia—The princes slaves to the Khans—Alexander's power and his fate—Rise of the Moscow princes——Dmitri defies the Tartars—The victory of the Don.

FIFTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 60–73.
Ivan the autocrat—Fall of the Golden Horde—Russia freed from the Tartars—Ivan's dominion—Power of the Czar—How the Mongol invasion enslaved Russia—The revolt of Novgorod—The growth of tyranny—Novgorod subdued—Republicanism destroyed.

SIXTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 74–84.
Reign of Ivan IV—His period of wise rule—Changes to a Nero—His frightful cruelties—Becomes a monster of iniquity—Claims divine powers—His death—Siberia and its tribes—Yermak the discoverer—Siberia explored and conquered.

SEVENTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 85–100.
The death of Prince Dmitri—Fury of the mob—Boris, the minister, gains control—His growing power—He is elected czar—His cruelty—A pretender to the throne—He invades Russia and is defeated—Death of Boris—Dmitri proclaimed czar—His over-confidence—Killed by conspirators.

EIGHTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 101–113.
New pretenders to the throne—The drowning of a city—Water and starvation assail Toula—End of the siege—Fall of the pretenders—Capture of Moscow—The Romanof dynasty founded—The Books of Ancestry—They are burned by the czar.

NINTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 114–131.
Princess Sophia regent—Intelligence of Prince Peter—His military sports—Naval studies—Starts a Russian navy—Sophia sent to a convent—The ship-carpenter of Zaandam—His adventures—The frigate built at Amsterdam—Peter's diligence—He goes to England and works at Deptford—His return to Moscow.

TENTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 132–148.
Insurrection of the Strelitz—Plot to murder the czar—His revenge on the conspirators—General Gordon suppresses a second outbreak—Peter's bloody revenge—His edict against long cloaks and long beards—Only the patriarch exempted—The foreign dress decreed—The beginning of the year changed.

ELEVENTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 149–154.
The Polish noble's revenge—Escape of Mazeppa—Becomes a Cossack leader—Peter the Great insults him—In revenge he conspires to aid Charles XII of Sweden—The Cossacks refuse to assist him—The end of Mazeppa.

TWELFTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 155–164.
Peter plans a new city—The Neva—A fortress built—Growth of the city—Peter's impatience—Makes the city his capital—Builds the fortress of Cronstadt—The growth and importance of St. Petersburg.

THIRTEENTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 165–183.
The pastry-cook's boy—He warns Peter of an attempt to poison him—The czar makes him a prince—The greatness and fall of Mentchikoff—Peter's wife saves him from ruin—Peter's idea of humor—Exposes the tricks of the priests—A prince made the court buffoon—A Russian state dinner in Peter's time.

FOURTEENTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 184–201.
Peter III and his wife—His insults to the queen—The troops conspire in her favor—Catherine proclaimed empress—Peter's cowardice—His arrest and death—Pugatchef the Cossack pretends to be the czar—His army and his victories—His defeat and flight—His capture and punishment.

FIFTEENTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 202–220.
Migration of the Kalmucks from Russia—The Cossack pursuit—Frightful losses of the fugitives—The Bashkirs attack them—The Chinese emperor sends an army to rescue the Kalmucks—The final battle with the Bashkirs—Saved by the emperor—The monument erected in honor of their feat.

SIXTEENTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 220–230.
Potemkin builds a city to order—Catherine the Great's journey—The desert transformed—The new city reached—Silence and emptiness resume their reign—The dismemberment of Poland—Kosciusko the patriot—The siege of Warsaw—The end of Poland.

SEVENTEENTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 231–240.
Suwarrow the warrior—His sarcasm—The idol of his men—Sent to Italy—His operations against the Turks—The storming of Ismail—Suwarrow in the Alps.

EIGHTEENTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 241–247.
Napoleon's Grand Army—The march to Moscow—Battle of Borodino—Cause of Napoleon's retreat—Terrible sufferings of the army—The havoc at the Beresina—Death on the bridges—The remnant of the Grand Army.

NINETEENTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 248–257.
The revolt of the Poles—The conflict at Warsaw—

Victories of the Poles—A Russian victory—The siege and fall of Warsaw—Russian revenge.

TWENTIETH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 258–266.
The Circassian mountaineers—Schamyl the hero—His exploits and strategy—His stronghold taken—His capture and the loss of his country.

TWENTY-FIRST READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 267–283.
The Russians and the Highlanders—A cavalry battle—Charge of the Light Brigade—Tennyson's poem—The siege of Sebastopol—Storming the Malakoff—Retreat of the Russians—The ruins they left behind.

TWENTY-SECOND READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 284–299.
The Russian desire for Constantinople—The war of 1877—The fall of Plevna—The Balkans crossed—Peril of Constantinople—The British fleet in the harbor—An armistice signed—The freeing of the Russian serfs—The work of the Nihilists—Use of explosives—Assassination of the czar.

TWENTY-THIRD READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 300–318.
Occupation of Chinese territory—Siberia and the steppes—Russian methods—Invasion of Turkestan—Central Asia occupied by Russia—The flight of the Tekke Turkomans—Building the Turkestan railway—Its difficulties and success—The Siberian railway.

TWENTY-FOURTH READING. VOL. viii. Pp. 319–340.
Siberian exiles—Escapes of convicts—A panic in the steppes—Pursuit of the fugitives—Killed by the Kalmucks—The daring of Japan—Russia defeated—The coming of the Russian fleet—Naval battle and defeat of the Russians—Great triumph of Japan.

EXPLANATORY AND SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

DARIUS. Page 7.

The most famous of the kings of ancient Persia after Cyrus, the founder of the monarchy. It was he that organized the great empire conquered by Cyrus and Cambyses, dividing it into satrapies under governors. He was unsuccessful in his expedition against the Scythians and also in that against the Greeks, and failed to extend the Persian empire into Europe.

HERODOTUS. Page 7.

A famous Greek historian, who travelled widely through the surrounding countries and gave valuable accounts of their manners and customs as well as of their history. His work is one of the most agreeable and valuable relics of ancient literature.

THE VARANGIANS. Page 15.

The name given to the Scandinavian adventurers who, in common with Slav warriors, engaged in the service of the Greek emperors, and formed a body of indomitable warriors of great service in their wars. Rurik, the founder of the Russian empire, belonged among this class of adventurous Northmen.

GREEK FIRE. Page 22.

An inflammable compound used by the Greeks of the Eastern Empire against their Saracan enemies. It is supposed to have been a mixture of pounded resin or bitumen, sulphur, naphtha, and probably nitre. It was very difficult to extinguish and created great terror in besieging armies. The Greeks kept its composition a profound secret for several centuries. Compositions similar to it have been used to some extent in modern wars, as at Charleston in 1863.

GENGHIS KHAN. Page 50.

The leader in the most famous and terrible warlike migration known in history. Under his original

name of Temujin he organized a great combination of the tribes of Mongolia and at their head invaded Southern Asia, conquering and devastating its countries with horrible cruelty. Russia was also invaded and after his death China and Russia were conquered and added to the enormous Mongol empire, which was so skilfully organized by him that it long held together.

HORDE. Page 51.
A word signifying a tribe or clan, a company of nomad people dwelling in tents or wagons. The divisions of the Mongol empire were called hordes, of which the principal, the Golden Horde, extended its power over Russia. Khan was the royal title borne by the Mongol rulers.

CZAR. Page 64.
Also Tsar or Tzar, the title assumed by the Russian emperors. It is apparently of Oriental origin and was originally equivalent to Cæsar. Ivan III was the first ruler to assume it. Kaiser, the title of the emperors of Austria, and now given to the German emperor, has the same significance.

ORIENTAL. Page 142.
Eastern, as opposed to Occidental, or western. Oriental is now used as distinctive of Asia, or the Orient; while Occidental is applied to Europe and America.

THE COSSACKS. Page 150.
A race of disputed origin, some holding them to be Tartars, others to be of nearly pure Russian stock. Probably they are a people of very mixed origin. Brave and warlike, democratic in organization, and nomadic in habit, they have long supplied a valuable contingent of cavalry to the Russian armies, and now form the outposts of Russian authority in Siberia, Central Asia and the Caucasus. They comprise two main branches, the Russian or Ukraine and the Don Cossacks. They are far from being the savage people they have been held to be.

VODKA. Page 189.
A fiery whisky, usually distilled from rye, sometimes

from barley or potatoes. It is the common intoxicant in Russia and is largely consumed, drunkenness being a common vice of the peasantry.

NEY. Page 245.

A famous marshal of Napoleon's army. Born the son of a cooper, he entered the army as a private in 1787 and rose to be general of brigade in 1796. He won great reputation under Massena and Moreau, and was made marshal by Napoleon in 1804, and subsequently was given the titles of Duke of Elchingen and Prince of the Moskwa. During the retreat from Moscow he was the most picturesque character, and saved by his courage the fragment of the army that escaped. After entering the service of Louis XVIII he joined Napoleon and fought at Waterloo, for which act he was tried for treason, condemned, and shot.

CRIMEAN WAR. Page 267.

In the war proclaimed by Russia against Turkey in 1854, England and France, and subsequently Sardinia, took the part of the Turks and sent their fleets and armies to the Black Sea, where they occupied the peninsula of the Crimea. Here the strong fortress of Sebastopol was besieged and was taken after a long siege and after several battles with the Russian armies. With its fall the war ended.

OTTOMAN. Page 292.

The name of Ottoman Empire, often given to Turkey, is derived from Osman or Othman, the name of one of the early leaders of the conquering clan of Turks, and the ancestor of all the sultans who have ruled since. From him his followers took the name of Osmanlis, which in Europe became corrupted into Ottoman.

TURKOMANS. Page 311.

One of the nomad races inhabiting the deserts of Turkestan, or Central Asia. Warlike in habit, they are now under Russian domination and are forced to engage in peaceful pursuits.

VAMBÉRY. Page 305.
Arminius Vambéry, a Hungarian Jew, who travelled over a great part of Central Asia in those days when the fanaticism of the Turkomans made such travel very dangerous. He succeeded by disguising himself as a Mohammedan. He is the author of various works of travel about Persia and Central Asia.

NEMESIS. Page 329.
One of the deities of the Grecian mythology. She was the daughter of Night or Erebus and was the goddess of retribution, who rectified the errors of fortune.

MUSCOVITE. Page 330.
Russia is often called Muscovy and its people Muscovites, words derived from Moscow, this city being the centre around which the present empire has grown up by conquest and expansion. The original rulers were princes of Moscow and had a narrow dominion.

TOGO. Page 333.
Heihachiro Togo, an able naval leader of Japan, who took an active part in the Japano-China War. He won in that war the name of the "Fighting Admiral" and became the third in command. In the Russo-Japan War he was supreme in command and the destruction of the Russian fleets was due to his skill and energy.

NELSON. Page 336.
Horatio Nelson, the most famous of British naval heroes, won his fame by many victories in the Napoleonic wars. Chief of these was that over the French and Spanish fleets off Cape Trafalgar. His signal on this occasion was: "England expects every man to do his duty."

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. What was the character of the ancient Scythians? Pages 7–13.
2. How did Vladimir the Great obtain the title of Saint Vladimir? Page 29.
3. Who gave Russia its first code of laws? Page 45.
4. What great calamity came upon Russia in the thirteenth century and how long did its effects continue? Page 50.
5. In what way was Russia finally delivered from its conquerors? Page 52.
6. What great victory served as the first check to the Mongol domination? Page 59.
7. By whom was the Golden Horde overthrown? Page 62.
8. How and by whom was liberty overthrown in Russia and the reign of the autocrats established? Pages 63–72.
9. In what way did Ivan ruin the city of Novgorod? Page 72.
10. Which of the Russian czars showed the cruelty of a Nero? Page 74.
11. In what way was Siberia made a part of the Russian dominion? Pages 81–84.
12. When and by whom was the dynasty of Rurik brought to an end? Page 89.
13. What led to the founding of a new dynasty, that of the Romanofs? Pages 100–109.
14. In what way did Peter the Great show his greatness in his youth? Pages 116–121.
15. How did he show his greatness after succeeding to the throne? Page 123.
16. Why did Peter the Great destroy the corps of the Strelitz? Pages 132–141.
17. What strange method did Peter take to introduce the customs of Western Europe into Russia? Page 142.
18. What great project did Peter the Great begin in 1703? Page 158.
19. In what way did Peter the Great show his disdain for the claims of rank? Pages 165–173.
20. What were the habits of the Russian court in the time of Peter the Great? Pages 174–183.

21. How many empresses have occupied the Russian throne? Page 184.

22. What impostor sought to win the throne in the reign of Catherine the Great? Page 196.

23. What led the Kalmuck Tartars to undertake their long and perilous migration? Page 202.

24. What led to the partition of Poland? Page 226.

25. Who was the ablest Russian general of the eighteenth century and what was the misfortune of his career? Pages 231–240.

26. What was the cause of the failure of Napoleon's invasion of Russia? Pages 242–247.

27. What brought on the struggle of the Poles for liberty in 1831? Page 248.

28. Who was the great hero of the Caucasus in its war with Russia? Pages 258–259.

29. What was the most famous event of the Crimean War and to what aphorism did it give rise? Pages 267–274.

30. On what did the result of the Crimean War turn? Page 277.

31. What prevented the fall of Constantinople and the driving of the Turks from Europe in 1878? Page 290.

32. Who were the Nihilists and what was their method? Page 293.

33. What have been the advances of Russia in Asia? Pages 300–310.

34. How has Russia sought to secure her possessions in Asia? Pages 311–318.

35. In what way has the name of Siberia been made terrible to Russian lovers of liberty? Page 319.

36. What was the result of the war in Manchuria between Japan and Russia? Page 331.

37. What was the result of the naval war between those powers? Pages 337–340.

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF HISTORICAL LITERATURE

THE HISTORY OF RUSSIA FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO 1877. *Rambaud, Alfred Nicolas.*
A work originally written in French, but with several chapters by the author expressly written for the English version, thus making this the most valuable. It ranks with the best histories of Russia and contains the results of much original research. The reign of Peter the Great is given much space, as also the Napoleonic invasion.

HISTORIE DE L'EMPIRE RUSSIE. *Karamzin, Nikolai M.*
The standard Russian authority for the early history of the empire, containing a great mass of information derived from Russian records. The history is brought down to 1606.

HISTORY OF RUSSIA FROM THE FOUNDATION OF THE EMPIRE TO THE ACCESSION OF CATHERINE II, and LIFE OF CATHERINE II. *Tooke, William.*
Mr. Tooke was appointed in 1774 chaplain of the factory of the Russian Company in St. Petersburg, and there gathered the material found in these works.

THE HISTORY OF RUSSIA FROM THE EARLIEST PERIOD TO THE PRESENT TIME. *Kelly, W. K.*
The first volume of this work is a condensation of the volumes of Karamzin and Tooke, containing sufficient for the needs of general readers. The second volume comes down to the close of the Crimean War.

HISTORY OF THE MONGOLS FROM THE NINTH TO THE NINETEENTH CENTURY. *Howorth, Henry H.*
The history of Russia is closely intertwined with that of the Mongols, and the author has made a close study of the period of Mongol domination, his work displaying great erudition and being very useful in this field.

PETER THE GREAT and THE ROMANCE OF AN EMPRESS. *Waliszewski, Kazimierz.*
These works are based in great part on abundant and recently published Russian historical material and have become very popular, their accuracy being accompanied by much charm of style. Catherine II is the empress indicated, and her character and reign are very ably treated.

THE INVASION OF THE CRIMEA. *Kinglake, Alexander William.*
This subject furnishes material for nine volumes and constitutes at once the most exhaustive history of the Crimean War and one of the most attractive examples of historical writing. The opening chapters deal ably with the condition of Russia under Nicholas I.

THE CRIMEA IN 1854–1894. *Wood, Sir Evelyn.*
The author was an eminent officer in the British army, who served in the naval brigade in the Crimea, and has produced a work of much excellence, giving useful information about many particulars concerning the war and the peninsula.

EARLY RUSSIAN HISTORY. *Ralston, William R. S.*
This author, who has written much on Russian subjects and is a high authority on the history and literature of Russia, gives here in a few chapters an excellent survey of the early institutions and development of that country.

RUSSIA. *Wallace, Donald Mackenzie.*
There is no better descriptive work on Russia, its people, and its institutions, and it has been very widely read. The author spent six years in travel over the empire, gathering materials, which he has very ably handled.

THE EMPIRE OF THE TSARS AND THE RUSSIANS. *Leroy-Beaulieu, Anatole.*
This work deals with the geography, ethnology, and the economic and political institutions of Russia, also the Russian Church and the various sects. It is a work of high importance on these subjects.

THE STORY OF RUSSIA. *Bergner, R. von.*
This is a brief but well written volume, covering the history of the empire from its early days to the war with Japan in 1904 and will be useful in gaining a rapid idea of Russian history.

RUSSIA IN REVOLUTION. *Ferris, G. H.*
Descriptive of the recent revolutionary movement in Russia, with its causes and events, and the deep unrest that prevails in our day in the Muscovite empire.

THE RUSSIAN REVOLUTIONARY MOVEMENT. *Ziliacus, Konni.*
A work by a native author covering the same series of events as the above and showing fully the great modern revolt against autocracy among the masses of Russia.

COURSE OF READING IN SCANDINAVIAN HISTORY

INTRODUCTION

THE history of Scandinavia differs in essential particulars from that of any other of the nationalities of Europe. Peopled by the purest-blooded of the Aryans, a tall, blond race with red or flaxen hair, and free from admixture with the darker race that has left its mark on all the more southerly peoples of Europe, its inhabitants in early days made themselves the masters of the ocean, roving with a daring which was elsewhere unequalled and filling with terror all southern peoples that bordered upon the sea. Beginning their career as sea-rovers or vikings, fearless of storm or foeman, for centuries they ravaged the South, winning the throne in England and Ireland and founding a kingdom in France from which came the Norman conquerors of England. Eastward they supplied Russia with a kingly dynasty and westward they sailed over unknown seas, without aid of chart or compass, until they had discovered and settled Iceland and Greenland and reached the shores of North America. Such was the character of the exploits of this daring race up to the eleventh century of the

Christian era. After that period the southern nations no longer offered a free field for viking ravages and the Scandinavians settled down to a more civilized existence, warlike still, but confining their wars largely within their own domains.

Three kingdoms naturally arose on Scandinavian soil. The peninsula of the North presented westwardly a broad mountain range, whose inhabitants lived chiefly upon the finny product of the sea, and had little intercourse with the inhabitants of the more fertile country to the east. They naturally, therefore, developed into a separate kingdom, that of Norway; while the eastern section of the peninsula, peopled by an agricultural community, became the kingdom of Sweden, adding Finland to its territory by conquest. Southward lay a second peninsula, divided from the Scandinavia of the North by the Baltic Sea, and here grew up a third kingdom, that of Denmark. In early times Denmark was the most powerful of the three kingdoms, extending its dominion southward until it grew large and powerful and imposed its rule upon the British isle. Northward it extended its control temporarily over Norway, and this rule became permanent after 1397, when all Scandinavia was combined into one kingdom under Margaret of Denmark. Sweden vigorously resented this union and succeeded in breaking its bonds finally in 1527, when Gustavus Vasa, who had driven out Christian II of Denmark, was crowned king. But Norway remained under the rule of the Danish kings until

1814, when it was transferred to Sweden, remaining in union with that nation until 1905, when it broke the union and elected a king of its own.

After Gustavus Vasa came to the throne, Sweden rose to be the leading nation of the three. Norway had practically lost its nationality and Denmark, pressed upon by the powerful nations of the South, gradually declined in power and narrowed in territory, until it was confined to the peninsula of Jutland and Sleswick and the adjoining duchy of Holstein. In 1848 the people of the duchies of Sleswick and Holstein, largely German, rebelled against Danish rule, and in 1863, aided by Prussia and Austria, they broke loose and were incorporated into the Germanic confederation, Denmark being reduced to the Jutland peninsula and the adjoining islands, with an area of little over 15,000 square miles. While Denmark was thus shrinking in area and importance Sweden was growing. Under the descendants of Gustavus Vasa it gained a wide dominion on the southern coast of the Baltic, and during the reign of Gustavus Adolphus, the greatest of its kings, it became one of the leading powers of Europe, defeating Wallenstein and Tilly in the Thirty Years' War and adding largely to its territory at the expense of Russia, Poland and Germany. In the year 1700 began the career of the most extraordinary of the Swedish monarchs, Charles XII, a man inspired with the old fearless viking spirit and setting all Europe aghast by the boldness and celerity of his movements and the extraordinary

character of his victories. Had he added discretion and self-control to his valor and military ability he might have vastly increased the power and dominion of Sweden. As it was, however, his career proved ruinous, Sweden lost the conquests of former monarchs and was speedily confined within the limits of the Scandinavian peninsula. The later history of Sweden may be briefly described. During the Napoleonic era, through the folly of one of its kings, it lost Finland to Russia, but gained Norway as a result of the settling up of affairs after Napoleon's fall. Since then it has progressed side by side with the other nations of Europe, but in 1905, as stated, its king lost his power of rule over Norway, and the three Scandinavian kingdoms of old were once more restored.

OUTLINE OF READINGS

FIRST READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 9–18.
Princess Torborg—King Rolf of Gothland—Rolf's reception in Upsala—Queen Inberg's dream—A battle for a bride—The winning of the warrior maid.

SECOND READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 19–30.
Princess Tora's snake—Ragnar kills the serpent and wins a bride—The childhood of Aslög—Ragnar's three demands—A poetical wooing—The sons of Ragnar—The taking of Hvitaby—How Ragnar learned his wife's true name.

THIRD READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 31–48.
Snorri, the Saga writer—Harold and the Finns—Gyda the Fair and Harold's vow—Harold's wars of conquest—The slaying of Thorolf—Bald Grim's revenge—How Rollo won Normandy—Gorm's island kingdom—The sacrifices to Odin—Gorm wins all Denmark—Goes abroad with the vikings—Queen Thyra's wall—Gorm persecutes the Christians—Death of Knud, his son.

FOURTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 49–68.
How Erik won Gunhild the sorceress—Thorolf and Egil, the Icelanders—Egil's defiance of the king—Erik loses the throne—The death song of Egil—The sea-kings invade England and France—Charlemagne and the vikings—Hasting, the freebooter—The vikings in Ireland—Their voyages of discovery—Win the thrones of England and Russia—The Varangians.

FIFTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 69–88.
Haakon the Good—Becomes a Christian—Gunhild's sons invade Norway—Haakon surprised by his foes—Defeats them and dies a heathen king—Earl Haakon wins Norway—The Jomsvikings invade Norway—A great naval battle—The killing of the captives—Haakon's vice and his death—Olaf becomes king.

SIXTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 89–107.
The perils of Queen Aastrid—The adventures of her

son Olaf—Under a queen's protection—His wanderings—Wins the Princess Gyda—Seeks Norway and succeeds Earl Haakon as king—Destroys the heathen temples and builds churches—Invades Denmark—His defeat and death.

SEVENTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 108–120.
A new Olaf becomes king—Defeats Earl Sweyn—Attempts to establish the Christian faith—Destroys the idol of the peasants—King Canute of Denmark plots to dethrone him—Defeat of Canute's fleet—Olaf dethroned by the chiefs and flees to Russia—Returns and is defeated and slain—Known as Olaf the Saint.

EIGHTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 121–131.
The feat of Palnatoke—He founds the Jomsborg viking community—Sweyn of Denmark invades England—His son Canute wins the English throne—He introduces Christianity into Denmark—Crosses the Soham Mere and subdues the insurgents at Ely—He rebukes the flattery of his courtiers—The width of his dominion—The quarrel with and murder of Ulf—End of the Danish rule in England.

NINTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 132–144.
Norway and Denmark under King Magnus—Why called Magnus the Good—Harold the Varangian becomes joint king of Norway—Death of Magnus—Denmark secedes from rule of Harold—Harold's narrow escape—His victory over the Danes—Goes to England with Tostig—Is killed at the battle of Stamford Bridge.

TENTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 145–159.
Gunhild the cook and her son—Sverre enters the priesthood—Seeks the throne of Norway—Becomes chief of the Birchlegs—A life of peril and adventure—The battle of Nidaros—Sverre wins the throne—Death of Magnus and triumph of Sverre.

ELEVENTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 160–175.
Haakon, the boy prince—The Birchlegs protect him—Ambition of Earl Skule—The ordeal of fire—Earl Skule's plots and death—Valdemar I and Denmark's troubles—Arcona captured by stratagem—Baptism of the Baltic idolaters—Death of Valdemar and accession of Knud—His wide dominion.

TWELFTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 176–185.
Valdemar II and his two queens—His conquests and crusade in Esthonia—The coming of the Danneborg —Valdemar's enemies—He is taken prisoner—Attempts at rescue fail—His ransom—The pope's aid —The Ditmarsh rebels—The laws of Valdemar.

THIRTEENTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 186–201.
The Christians of Sweden and the pagans of Finland—The first iron-clad ships—Birger Jarl invades Finland—His son made king—Rebellion of the Folkungers—The greatness of Birger—The romance of Bengt and Sigrid—Birger's code of laws—War with the Russians—Fate of the garrison of Landskrona.

FOURTEENTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 202–216.
King Birger and his brothers—His treachery—Rising of the people—The wicked king besieged and expelled—Sweden and Norway united under King Magnus—Queen Margaret of Denmark becomes heir to the thrones of the three kingdoms—She defeats and imprisons Duke Albrecht—The Calmar Union combines the three kingdoms.

FIFTEENTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 217–240.
Election of Charles VIII of Sweden—Exploits of Sir Tord Bonde—The murder of Sir Tord—King Charles an exile—He twice regains the throne—Sten Sture, the Swedish patriot—He besieges Christian I of Denmark in Stockholm—The battle of Brunkenburg —The Ditmarshers and their love of liberty—King Hans defeated in the marshes.

SIXTEENTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 241–251.
Christian II succeeds Hans in Denmark and gains the crown of Sweden—His plot to destroy the great lords —Arrest of the patriotic nobles and bishops—The day of the massacre—The frightful "blood bath" in Stockholm—The savage acts of Christian—Women and children become his victims.

SEVENTEENTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 252–270.
Gustavus Vasa treacherously seized by Christian II —His flight to Sweden—Becomes a hunted outlaw— His perilous adventures—Saved by patriotic women —The trapdoor refuge—His appeal to the Dalmen—

In the bleak hills—The rising of the Dalmen—Scouts seek Gustavus and he returns to become the liberator of Sweden.

EIGHTEENTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 271–295.
Gustavus Vasa king of Sweden—Christian II deposed by the Danes—Becomes a leader of soldiers of fortune—Invades Norway and is defeated—His terrible imprisonment and final release—A plot in West Gothland against Gustavus—Hans Hardy deceives the plotters and captures their correspondence—The peasants decline to help the plotters—The consternation of the conspirators—Three of them on trial—Their punishment.

NINETEENTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 296–309.
Prince Erik of Sweden and Princess Elizabeth of England—Erik's courtship—His double suit to Elizabeth and Mary Stuart—Two more lady loves, Princess Renata and Princess Christina—His lack of constancy ends in loss of them all—His brother, Duke John, marries a Polish princess—He captures and imprisons John—Erik's final love affair—Duke John's rebellion and Erik's capture and imprisonment.

TWENTIETH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 310–325.
Gustavus Adolphus, Sweden's greatest king—Marches on Tilly at Leipsic—Defeat of Tilly—End of the career of Gustavus—Charles X on the throne—He defeats the Poles and attacks the Danes—Jutland overrun—Crossing the Great Belt on the ice—The siege of Copenhagen—Failure of the assault—The misfortunes and death of Charles.

TWENTY-FIRST READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 326–342.
The boyhood of Charles XII—Coalition of Russia, Poland and Denmark against Sweden—A sudden descent upon Denmark—The Danes defeated and Copenhagen besieged—Frederick of Denmark forced to make peace—Charles wins a great victory over the Russians—Invades Poland and takes Warsaw—The character of Charles—He invades Russia—His defeat at Pultowa—Flight to Turkey and residence there—His return to Sweden and death.

TWENTY-SECOND READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 343–348.
Position of Denmark in the Napoleonic wars—Eng-

lish complaints against Denmark—An English fleet sent to Copenhagen—Nelson attacks the Danish fleet —A desperate fight—Nelson wins—Denmark again attacked in 1807 and her fleet carried away—Denmark loses Norway.

TWENTY-THIRD READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 349–357.
Sweden loses Finland—A new king, Charles XIII, elected—Marshal Bernadotte elected crown prince of Sweden—Makes a secret alliance with Russia—He joins the allies in the war against Napoleon—Fights against the French at Dennewitz and Leipsic—Puts down a rebellion in Norway—Becomes king as Charles XIV in 1818.

TWENTY-FOURTH READING. VOL. ix. Pp. 358–370.
Civil war in Denmark in 1848—Prussia and Austria send armies to Sleswick-Holstein—Denmark loses these provinces—Norway separated from Denmark and put under the king of Sweden in 1814—Commercial troubles between the two kingdoms—Norway throws off her allegiance to King Oscar of Sweden—A vast majority vote favors separation—A treaty of separation made—Norway elects a Danish prince as king.

EXPLANATORY AND SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

THE SAGAS. Page 31.

This is the title given to the tales of Iceland, alike the historic and the fabulous. They are all more or less biographic in style, including tales of Icelanders, of the kings of Norway, and of heroes of other countries. Their authors are largely unknown. Snorri Sturleson was the chief author or collector of those dealing with the lives of the kings of Norway.

FJORD. Page 36.

Fjord anglicized as Fiord, signifies an inlet from the sea, narrow and winding. In Norway the rocky coast region is everywhere cleft by gigantic fissures, often very deep and occasionally penetrating to great distances inland and having numerous branching arms. Sogne Fjord, for instance, extends 106 miles from the ocean, and Hardanger Fjord is 68 miles long. In some cases the water in the Fjords is much deeper than in the sea outside.

ODIN. Page 43.

The chief deity of the Norse mythology, corresponding in the main to the Greek Zeus and the Roman Jupiter. Like them he was viewed as the father of the gods, though he himself had a father. He was also called Val-father (father of the fallen), all who fell in battle belonging to him. Hence his hall was called Valhalla (hall of the fallen). The chosen warriors daily amused themselves with fighting and slaying. Nightly—the dead restored to life—they feasted in Valhalla on mead and boar's flesh; but Odin lived on wine alone. Odin was the great object of Norse worship, though there were many inferior deities.

YULETIDE. Page 43.

Yule is the old name for Christmas, coming to us from the times of heathenism, its Anglo-Saxon form being *geôl*, Icelandic *jól*. It is still occasionally used,

as also its derivatives Yulelog, Yulecake, etc., to indicate matters connected with the Christmas festival.

THRALL. Page 87.
Slave or bondsman, a word of Teutonic origin. The old Northmen divided the people into three classes: earls, churls, and thralls; equivalent to nobles, freemen, and slaves. The English word thraldom, or servitude, is a derivative from this term.

THOR. Page 98.
The god of thunder in northern mythology. He is also the god of strength and the great conqueror of the giants. His three great possessions were his mighty hammer, his girdle of strength, and his gloves of iron. In Iceland and some parts of Norway Thor appears to have been regarded as the greatest of the gods. He protected the works of industry and the arts of peace, and though hot of temper was frank and good-natured.

EDWARD THE CONFESSOR. Page 134.
An Anglo-Saxon king, born about 1004. Canute the Great married his mother Emma, so that he was half-brother to Hardicanute, whom he succeeded. He received the title of Confessor from the fact that, though married, his wife was such only in name. He was the last of the Anglo-Saxon kings.

WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR AND HAROLD. Page 141.
On the death of Edward the Confessor without an heir, the throne of England was claimed by his kinsman, William, Duke of Normandy, and Harold, son of Godwin, Earl of Kent, a Saxon prince preferred to William by most of the people. Harold was proclaimed king, but his claim was contested by his brother Tostig, whom he defeated at Stamford Bridge. William meanwhile invaded England and Harold was defeated and killed at the battle of Senlac, William and the Normans thus becoming the masters of England.

FREDERICK BARBAROSSA. Page 169.
Frederick I, Emperor of Germany, was surnamed Barbarossa or the Red-bearded. He was able and

ambitious and is regarded as one of the greatest men of his time. His chief wars were with Milan and the other cities of Lombardy. Joining the Third Crusade with a large army, he was drowned on the march to Palestine.

Saxo Grammaticus. Page 174.

An eminent Danish historian, born in the first half of the twelfth century. His "History of Denmark" is one of the most curious documents of the middle ages, abounding with traditions and romantic or fabulous legends.

Queen Elizabeth. Page 296.

The love affair of Elizabeth, both as princess and queen, with Erik of Sweden, was of the type of her somewhat multitudinous affairs of this kind. Throughout her life royal and other suitors sought her hand, including, besides Erik, Henry III and Henry IV of France, Philip III of Spain, Archduke Charles of Austria, and a goodly number of earls and dukes. She played fast and loose with all of these, her most evident attachments being to the French Duke of Alençon, and the English Earls of Leicester and Essex. In the end, despite the importunities of her many suitors, she died unmarried.

Mary Stuart. Page 299.

While Elizabeth resisted all suitors, her rival, the beautiful Mary, Queen of Scots, was affianced to the Dauphin of France when six years of age and married him at sixteen. He became king, as Francis II, the following year, but died a little more than a year later, leaving her a widowed queen at eighteen. She was already queen of Scotland, and had been since she was a week old, through the death of her father, James V. Returning to Scotland in 1561, she began to reign, though still less than nineteen. The schemes for her marriage were numerous, Erik of Sweden being only one among a dozen of royal or noble suitors. She finally married the most unworthy of them all, her cousin Lord Darnley. Intrigues and murders followed, the king was assassinated, and Mary married his murderer, the Earl of Bothwell. This ended the story of her love affairs. A rebellion of her people led to her abdication, her throwing herself on the

protection of Queen Elizabeth, her imprisonment, and finally her execution as the result of a discovered plot for the assassination of Elizabeth.

WALLENSTEIN. Page 311.
A celebrated German general, who was the chief leader of the imperial forces in the Thirty Years' War. Such was his pride, rapacity and cruelty that the emperor dismissed him from command, but the victories of Gustavus Adolphus and the death of Tilly obliged the emperor to recall him, as the only man able to save the empire. He consented only on condition that he should have exclusive control of the army, and should become monarch of the countries he might conquer. He was defeated by Gustavus at Lützen but won victories elsewhere. Inspired by fear of his ambition, the emperor deprived him of his command, and he was soon afterwards assassinated.

PAPPENHEIM. Page 313.
The Count von Pappenheim was one of the prominent imperial generals in the Thirty Years' War. He had already gained distinction in the army of Bavaria when he entered the service of the emperor, about 1630, as field marshal. He commanded a corps under Wallenstein at Lützen and was killed in that battle.

JANIZARIES. Page 340.
The first standing army of the Turks, formed by Sultan Orkhan, about 1330, of Christian captives compelled to accept Mohammedanism and the children of Christians trained in this faith. Many Turks afterwards joined them. They became of such importance and were given such special privileges that they grew corrupt and committed many atrocities. More than one Sultan tried to reform or abolish them, and this was finally done by Sultan Mahmoud II in 1826, great numbers of them being slain in the effort.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. How did King Rolf win the Princess Torborg? Pages 10–18.
2. How did Ragnar Lodbrok kill the great serpent and win the Princess Tora? Pages 20–22.
3. What is the story of Ragnar's second wife? Pages 23–26.
4. What legend is told of Ragnar's sons? Page 27.
5. Who was the first king of Norway? Page 37.
6. How did a Norse sea-rover become Duke of Normandy? Page 40.
7. Who first conquered Denmark and became its king? Page 43.
8. How did Queen Thyra secure Denmark against its foes? Page 46.
9. What is the story of Erik and Gunhild the sorceress? Pages 50–59.
10. What were the deeds of the sea-kings? Pages 60–68.
11. Who was the first Christian king of Norway and how did he die? Pages 69, 77.
12. What is the story of Earl Haakon? Pages 78–88.
13. How did Olaf, the slave boy, win the throne of Norway? Pages 89–97.
14. How did Olaf seek to Christianize Norway? Pages 98–100.
15. How did his career end? Pages 102–107.
16. How did the second King Olaf win the title of "the Saint"? Pages 112–116, 119.
17. How did a Dane become king of England? Pages 122–123.
18. What was the extent of Canute's dominions? Page 127.
19. How did a king of Norway add Denmark to his dominions? Page 132.
20. With whom did Magnus share the throne? Page 136.
21. How did Denmark become free from Norwegian rule? Pages 137–141.
22. How did a cook's son become king of Norway? Pages 145–158.

23. Who were the greatest and best kings of Denmark? Page 169.

24. Against whom did Valdemar I fight? Pages 170–172.

25. How did the Danes obtain their national standard, the Danneborg? Page 178.

26. What misfortunes came to Valdemar II? Pages 180–183.

27. When was Christianity introduced into Sweden? Page 186.

28. When and where were the first iron-clad vessels used? Page 187.

29. In what way was Finland conquered? Pages 187–189.

30. What four important laws were enacted by Birger Jarl? Page 194.

31. What led to the first war between the Swedes and Russians and what was its result? Pages 197–201.

32. In what way were Sweden and Norway united? Page 212.

33. How were these kingdoms united to Denmark? Page 213.

34. In what way did Margaret bring Sweden under her sway? Page 214.

35. What is meant by the Calmar Union and what was its effect on Norway? Pages 215–216.

36. What was the strange career of Charles VIII of Sweden? Pages 217–225.

37. Who freed Sweden from Danish rule and how was it done? Pages 226–235.

38. What is the story of the Ditmarshers? Pages 236–240.

39. How did Christian II become king of Sweden? Page 241.

40. What dreadful course of repression did he pursue? Pages 243–251.

41. Who was Gustavus Vasa and what were the events of his early life? Pages 252–256.

42. Through what perils did he pass in his efforts to arouse the people to rebellion? Pages 256–270.

43. What followed the rebellion under Gustavus? Page 271.

44. What led to the dethronement of Christian by the Danes? Page 273.

45. What were the events of his later life? Pages 275–282.

46. How did Gustavus suppress a rebellion in Gothland? Pages 286–295.

47. What is said of the love affairs of King Erik? Pages 296–309.

48. Who was the greatest king of Sweden? Page 310.

49. In what way did he win high fame as a soldier? Pages 313–318.

50. How did Charles X invade and subdue Denmark? Pages 319–322.

51. How did his career end? Pages 322–325.

52. Who was the most brilliant of Scandinavian soldiers? Page 326.

53. What led to the failure of Charles XII? Page 337.

54. What was the effect on Sweden of the career of Charles XII? Page 342.

55. What excuse had England for attacking the Danish fleet? Pages 344, 347.

56. In what way did a soldier of Napoleon become king of Sweden? Pages 349–351.

57. What led to the dismemberment of Denmark? Pages 358–361.

58. When was Norway transferred from Denmark to Sweden? Page 362.

59. When did it break loose from Sweden and for what reason? Pages 363–366.

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF HISTORICAL LITERATURE

THE HISTORY OF SWEDEN. *Tryxell, Anders.*
The two volumes of this work which have been translated into English bring the author's extensive "Svenska historien" down to 1612. It is written on an exhaustive scale, and while not on the level of recent historical criticism, is vivid in its presentation of events and marked by a love of accuracy. It has been highly popular in Sweden.

HISTORY OF SWEDEN. *Geijer, Eric G.*
This is the most important work of Sweden's most eminent historian. Published in 1832, it is based on exhaustive researches into Swedish historical material, while its literary style is of a high grade. It may be regarded as the standard history of Sweden.

HISTORY OF SWEDEN. *Carlson, Frederick Ferdinand.*
This work, in six volumes, supplements that of Geijer, bringing the history down to 1881. It is the principal work of the author, who for many years was professor of history at Upsala.

HISTORY OF SWEDEN. *Cronholm, Neander N.*
A two-volume account of this country from the earliest time to the beginning of the present century. The early history is handled with great brevity, but the treatment of the later history is of value.

SCANDINAVIA. *Bain, R. Nisbit.*
This covers the story of the three nations from their origin to the present century, being necessarily brief in order to compress all this within a single volume. The author has also written a history of the career of Charles XII.

SCANDINAVIAN HISTORY. *Otté, E. C.*
A work covering the same field as the above. It is accurate and ably written, and is a leading authority in English on the story of the peoples of Scandinavia.

HISTORY OF DENMARK, SWEDEN AND NORWAY. *Dunham, S. Astley.*
A work by an English author which is highly regarded as a useful brief exposition of the subject.

THE SCANDINAVIAN RACES. *Sinding, Paul C.*
A work freshly and agreeably written, though not to be relied upon in its statement of facts.

HISTORY OF GUSTAVUS ADOLPHUS AND OF THE THIRTY YEARS' WAR. *Chapman, Benjamin.*
A very readable and interesting work. It was formerly looked upon as accurate and important, but later investigations have invalidated many of its statements.

HISTORY OF CHARLES XII. *Voltaire, François Marie.*
This history ranks first among the historical works of its gifted author. It is a masterpiece of elegant, animated, and rapid narration, doing ample justice to the career of the Swedish Alexander.

HISTORY OF DENMARK AND NORWAY UNDER FREDERICK III. *Barfod, Paul Frederik.*
This king reigned from 1648 to 1670, the important event of his reign being the war in which he engaged with Charles X of Sweden and his sudden and complete defeat.

HISTORY OF THE NORSE NATIONS. *Munch, Peter Andreas.*
An eminent antiquary and philologist, Munch wrote various works on the ancient languages and laws of Norway, together with the valuable historical work here named.

THE HEIMSKRINGLA; OR, CHRONICLE OF THE KINGS OF NORWAY. *Laing, Samuel.*
This work is a translation of the famous Icelandic sagas of Snorri Sturleson, a writer of the first half of the thirteenth century. We owe to his history nearly all we know of the real and legendary careers of the early Scandinavian kings, from the days of fable to those of authentic history.

NORTHERN MYTHOLOGY. *Thorpe, Benjamin.*
A work compiled in part from original sources, and valuable alike for its literary and historical character. The author's notes add greatly to its value and give it standing of one of the most important collections of the sagas of Scandinavia.

COURSE OF READING IN GREEK HISTORY

INTRODUCTION

In dealing with the history of Greece we have many nations to consider, small in territorial extent, yet several of which have played very important parts in the records of the human race. These differ so strikingly in character that the point of view from which this work is written changes with each nation taken up, and changes in such a way that the elements of our modern civilization for which that particular nation stands are given special emphasis. Few of us realize as we should the important part that Greece played in history. It stands especially for culture, and in the volume devoted to Greece much attention has been given to the development of literature, philosophy, sculpture, science, and art. The story of Greece forms an essential turning point in the history of the world. In the ages before it we meet with great, autocratic empires, crude in art and literature and in all the elements which stand for the higher civilization. The active-minded Greeks took this art and literature in hand and brought it to a state of extraordinary beauty and perfection, so much so that they have ever

since stood for the culmination of sculptural, architectural, and literary art. Despite the broad progress since that early date, the works of the Greek artists are still regarded as models of artistic supremacy, which may be imitated but cannot be surpassed in grace and beauty.

But the greatness of Greece does not rest upon art alone. Its political lesson is also one of striking value. In this land the principle of democracy replaced the autocracy of the past and developed to a remarkable extent. Free and self-governed as we are in the United States to-day, we are in no respect above the level reached by Athens in the past, whose citizens formed the state and vigorously resisted any attempt to overthrow their democratic institutions. In other respects the history of Greece teaches us a valuable lesson. This little land of freemen set itself as a barrier against the vast flood of Asiatic barbarism, which sought to overflow Europe and bring it under the imperialistic Persian sway. Time and again it hurled back this mighty flood. Under Xerxes it was invaded by the greatest army ever recorded in the history of man, but the small realm of Athens—for it had little aid from without—defeated this vast barbaric host and gave the Athenian commonwealth an importance in the world's history immensely exceeding that of any other domain of equal area. All this is of the greatest interest and importance. The weak point in the political development of Greece was the isolation of its several states, their lack of union

into a single federal commonwealth, their hostilities and wars, with the ruinous results to Athens, Thebes, and other great cities. It was this that lead to their eventual overthrow by Macedonia and Rome. Torn by dissensions and hostilities, enfeebled by desolating wars, Greece nearly to the end remained in the state in which our own country would be if its every state was a distinct nation, with special interests and frequent hostilities. No country could survive under such internal relations of discordance, and we see in consequence Greece weakening to its final fall. In its last days the idea of union was born, and leagues of states were formed, especially the Achæan League. But there was never a union of all Greece, and the petty jealousies of the states aided Macedonia to hold control. Their petty wars were kept up, especially between Sparta and the Achæan League, and in the end Sparta asked Rome to come to its aid. Rome came, and soon it was the lord and master of all the land of Greece. Thus the history of this land is full of historic lessons. National jealousy and local isolation were the causes of its ruin. Had union come at an earlier date, history might have a very different tale to tell of this remarkable land. But after all is said, its story remains a splendid one, and the world still gazes back on Greece as the most resplendent exhibit that history has to show.

OUTLINE OF READINGS

FIRST READING. VOL. X. Pp. 7–22.
Helen and her lovers—The war against Troy—Achilles and Ulysses—A long siege—Greek and Trojan heroes—Achilles and Hector—The Palladium—The wooden horse—The taking of Troy—The return of Ulysses.

SECOND READING. VOL. X. Pp. 23–40.
Jason and the Argo—Perils of the voyage—The winning of the golden fleece—Adventures on the return—Medea's revenge on Jason—The Minotaur's victims—Theseus seeks Crete—He slays the monster—His desertion of Ariadne—Dædalus and Icarus, the flyers—Later story of Theseus.

THIRD READING. VOL. X. Pp. 41–49.
The myth of Œdipus—Riddle of the Sphinx—The siege of Thebes—The brothers' combat—Defeat of the assailants—The devotion of Antigone—The second siege of Thebes.

FOURTH READING. VOL. X. Pp. 50–66.
Athens and Sparta—Lycurgus the law maker—The severe Spartan code—Life in Sparta—A nation of soldiers—War with Messenia—The hero Aristomenes—His escape from death—The fate of Messenia.

FIFTH READING. VOL. X. Pp. 67–85.
Early laws of Athens—Solon the Wise—The taking of Megara—Freedom for debtors—Solon's laws—Solon and Crœsus—Pisastratus the despot—Crœsus and his son—The Oracle—Defeat of Crœsus—How he escaped death.

SIXTH READING. VOL. X. Pp. 86–99.
Cleisthenes of Sicyon—The suitors of Agaristé—Dancing a wife away—Megacles wins the maiden—The tyrants of Corinth—A child's life saved—The oracle of Delphi—Periander the tyrant.

SEVENTH READING. VOL. X. Pp. 100–116.
Samos and its king—The power of Polycrates—Futile

sacrifice of his ring—The Samian exiles—Death of Polycrates—The fate of Samos—Democedes the physician—His reward for curing Darius—Returns to Greece—The end of his story.

EIGHTH READING. VOL. X. Pp. 117–134.
Darius invades Scythia—The Danube bridge—A strange message—Darius and the Athenians—The destruction of Sardis—The army of invasion—The fleet destroyed—Athens in peril—The victory at Marathon—The delay of the Spartans.

NINTH READING. VOL. X. Pp. 135–153.
Death of Darius—Xerxes and his vast army—The bridge across the Hellespont—Counting the army—The bridge crossed—The Athenian fleet—The advice of the Oracle—The Spartans at Thermopylæ—Their glorious death—A famous inscription.

TENTH READING. VOL. X. Pp. 154–173.
Delphi and its treasures—The Grecian fleet—The wise counsel of Themistocles—A great naval battle—Flight of Xerxes—The Persians at Thebes—The Greeks retreat to Platæa—A terrible Persian defeat—Greece is saved.

ELEVENTH READING. VOL. X. Pp. 174–185.
Alcmæon and the gold of Crœsus—Cleisthenes makes Attica a democratic state—The new laws—Miltiades at Paros—His defeat and disgrace—The glory of Themistocles—His treason and flight to Persia—Aristides the Just—His ostracism and return.

TWELFTH READING. VOL. X. Pp. 186–199.
The rebuilding of Athens—Its great artists and architects—The League of Delos—The Long Walls built—Pericles, the great statesman—Athens in the prime of its glory—The war with Sparta—The plague at Athens and the death of Pericles.

THIRTEENTH READING. VOL. X. Pp. 200–212.
The revolt of Mitylene—Its capture and doom—The trireme of death—The trireme of mercy—Mercy wins and Mitylene is saved—The Spartans attack Platæa—Heroic defence—Escape of the three hundred—Slaughter of the remainder.

FOURTEENTH READING. VOL. X. PP. 213–230.
The Peloponnesian war—Athens defeated at Syracuse—Its fleet destroyed—Surrender of Athens—The Long Walls levelled—The rule of the Thirty—Alcibiades and Socrates—Alcibiades counsels the Sicilian expedition—His treason and death—The character of Socrates—He dies for his principles.

FIFTEENTH READING. VOL. X. PP. 231–244.
Cyrus invades Persia—Greeks in his army—Death of Cyrus—Peril of the Greeks—Their retreat under Xenophon—The dangers of the march—The Black Sea reached—Their return to Greece.

SIXTEENTH READING. VOL. X. PP. 245–258.
The armed strangers in Thebes—The relations of Thebes to the other cities of Greece—Sparta takes and holds Thebes—Return of the seven exiles—Their stratagem—They kill the Spartan leaders—The people assail the citadel and free the city.

SEVENTEENTH READING. VOL. X. PP. 259–270.
The humbling of Sparta—Pelopidas and Epaminondas—Thebes captures Platæa—Epaminondas defies Sparta—Defeat of the Spartans—The supremacy of Thebes—Epaminondas invades Spartan soil—Destroys the Spartan prestige and restores Messenia.

EIGHTEENTH READING. VOL. X. PP. 271–287.
Timoleon saves his brother Timophanes, who becomes a despot in Corinth—Timoleon consents to the despot's death—His remorse—Syracuse and its tyrant—Timoleon sent to Sicily—His victories—He attacks and takes Syracuse—Defeat of the Carthaginians—All Sicily conquered—The noble rule of Timoleon.

NINETEENTH READING. VOL. X. PP. 288–295.
The temple of Apollo—The fine laid on Phocis—The Phocians rise and seize the temple—The Sacred War—Looting the temple treasure—Philip of Macedon takes part in the war—Greece conquered by Philip.

TWENTIETH READING. VOL. X. PP. 296–304.
Alexander the Great and the Gordian knot—The Persians defeated at Issus—Flight of Darius—Alexan-

der's conquests—Takes Egypt and builds Alexandria —Overthrow of the Persian army—The Persian capital taken—Death of Darius—Later career of Alexander.

TWENTY-FIRST READING. VOL. X. PP. 305–314.
Oratory in Athens—The boy Demosthenes—His study of oratory—His Philippics or orations against Philip of Macedon—His great oration "For the Crown"—Persecution and death of Demosthenes.

TWENTY-SECOND READING. VOL. X. PP. 315–323.
The Olympic games—Temple of the Olympian Zeus—Origin of the Olympic festival—Chariot races introduced—Dramas, poems, and other writings exhibited or read—Other famous Grecian festivals—Famous Olympic occasions—The Athenian theatre—Great tragedy and comedy contests.

TWENTY-THIRD READING. VOL. X. PP. 324–350.
Pyrrhus of Epirus—Invited to Italy—His ambition —His sternness at Tarentum—Defeat of the Romans —Second victory for Pyrrhus—Pyrrhus in Sicily— The Romans defeat him—Political conditions in Greece—Early life of Philopœmen—His daring as a soldier—Made general of the Achæan League—Victory over Sparta—Capture and death.

TWENTY-FOURTH READING. VOL. X. PP. 345–368.
Corinth taken and plundered—Athens occupied— Grecian freedom lost—Zenobia fights the Roman armies—Her defeat—Is shown in a Roman triumph —Her life in Rome—The intellectual glory of Greece —Homer and Hesiod—The lyric and dramatic poets —The splendor of Athens—History and philosophy— The Sicilian poets—The Museum of Alexandria— The decline of Grecian literature.

EXPLANATORY AND SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

HOMER. Page 12.

The earliest and most famous of epic poets, who flourished in Greece about one thousand years before the Christian era. He left two great epics, the "Iliad," describing the siege of Troy by the Greeks, and the "Odyssey," describing the adventures of Ulysses during his return from this war. The former is the most splendid of all epic poems and the model upon which all later ones were composed.

ZEUS. Page 33.

The king of the gods, the chief divinity in Greek mythology, corresponding to the Jupiter of the Romans. His court was held on Mount Olympus, where he ruled over heaven and earth. He was the father of Mars, Minerva, Mercury, Venus, Apollo, and other gods.

PLUTARCH. Page 51.

An eminent Greek philosopher, moralist, and biographer, born about 50 A.D. He was a prolific writer, and is especially admired for his "Parallel Lives," in which he gives the biographies of eminent Greeks and Romans arranged in pairs. There is no ancient work more read and admired, it standing high among biographical works.

THE ACROPOLIS. Page 72.

A word signifying "the high-town" or "hill city," which formed the citadel of many of the cities of Greece and Asia Minor. It occupied the summit of a rock or hill and formed the centre around which the town grew. Important buildings, especially temples, were usually built upon it. The most famous Acropolis is that of Athens, on which the Parthenon and other splendid temples were built, and on which their ruins still remain.

HERODOTUS. Page 88.
A celebrated Greek historian, born about 484 B.C. He is spoken of as the "father of history," his work being the earliest history that has been preserved. In beauty of language and value as a work of literature it ranks high, while it gives a multitude of facts of the utmost interest, the writer having travelled widely and described life as he saw it in the great nations of antiquity.

PYTHAGORAS. Page 109.
One of the most celebrated of ancient philosophers. Born in Samos about 600 B.C., we know very little about his history. His philosophy strongly resembles that of the Brahmans and Buddhists of India, including the dogma of the transmigration of souls. He founded a secret brotherhood at Crotona, in Italy, which became large and influential, spreading widely. It excited the hatred of the people and was finally suppressed.

PISISTRATUS. Page 186.
A despotic ruler of Athens, born about 612 B.C. He became the leader of the democratic party, and attained power by arts like those of the modern political demagogue. Sustained by his party, he ruled Athens like a king, but in an able and liberal manner. His sons, who succeeded to his power, acted as tyrants and were expelled.

PHIDIAS. Page 187.
Famed as the greatest sculptor that ever lived. The splendid sculptures of the Parthenon were designed by him, and he executed the colossal statue of Minerva placed in this building. His other masterpiece was the great ivory and gold statue of Zeus at Olympus. As an architect also he attained preëminence.

XENOPHON. Page 237.
A notable Greek historian and general. His great military exploit was the leading of the Ten Thousand from Persia, an exploit described in his famous "Anabasis." He wrote also "Hellenica," a history of Greece, "Cyropædia," a romance founded on the life of Cyrus the Great, and other works, all of highly attractive style.

TEMPLE OF APOLLO. Page 288.

To Apollo, the god of archery, music, and poetry, was erected a splendid temple at Delphi in Phocis, which grew famous as the seat of the most notable oracle of antiquity. The priestess of this temple, affected by a vapor which rose from a chasm in the ground, would pronounce oracular sayings supposed to indicate coming events. But those that we possess have the form of riddles, capable of several interpretations, and calculated to lead believers astray.

THUCYDIDES. Page 309.

The historian of the Peloponnesian War, in which Athens was overthrown by Sparta. He did not live to finish his work, which ends seven years before the termination of the war. It is a work of the highest merit, and the earliest in which history is written from a philosophical and statesmanlike point of view.

PLATO. Page 309.

One of the most illustrious of the world's philosophers. Born at Athens about 429 B.C., he was the ablest of the disciples of Socrates and the tutor of Aristotle, the greatest scientist of antiquity. Nearly all we know of Socrates is due to him, his choicest works being in the form of dialogues in which Socrates is the chief speaker. His philosophy still holds its own among the choicest products of the human intellect.

NEOPLATONISM. Page 367.

The final form taken by ancient philosophy. It sought to combine Plato's doctrine of Ideas with the oriental doctrine of Emanation. Its followers endeavored to gain an intuitive knowledge of the Absolute through the aid of a personal faculty called Ecstasy. In this way it was held that individual man could identify himself with the Infinite. The philosophy of Hypatia, spoken of in this chapter, was of the Neoplatonic school.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. What was the judgment of Paris? Page 8.
2. Who were the greatest of the leaders in the war with Troy? Page 9.
3. What are the subjects of the "Iliad" and the "Odyssey"? Pages 12, 20.
4. What was the purpose of the voyage of the Argonauts? Pages 23–24.
5. For what purpose did Theseus seek Crete? Page 34.
6. What was the Sphinx? Page 42.
7. For what act of devotion is Antigone memorable? Page 46.
8. What was the character of the laws of Lycurgus? Pages 54–56.
9. In what way did the Spartans overcome the Messenians? Page 66.
10. What was the chief feature of the laws of Solon? Page 71.
11. What was the extent of ancient Greece and its settlements? Page 77.
12. How did Crœsus escape being burned to death by Cyrus? Page 85.
13. What is meant by an oligarchy? Page 93.
14. How did King Polycrates seek to escape misfortune? Page 102.
15. How did King Darius escape from Scythia? Page 122.
16. On what field of battle was Greece saved from the first invasion of the Persians? Page 132.
17. How did the vast army of Xerxes reach Greece? Page 142.
18. Where and by whom did it receive its first check? Page 151.
19. What was meant by the wooden walls of Athens? Pages 146–147.
20. In what great battle did the effort of Persia to conquer Greece end? Page 171.
21. Which of the great men of Athens was called "the Just," and why? Page 185.
22. In what way was Athens, after being burned by the Persians, rebuilt? Page 187.

23. What were the Long Walls of Athens? Page 190.
24. Under what great statesman was Athens rebuilt? Page 191.
25. What unhappy event weakened Athens during the Peloponnesian War? Page 197.
26. What base act was done by the Spartans in 429 B.C.? Page 205.
27. What caused the fall of Athens? Page 214.
28. What is the story of the Long Walls? Pages 218–220.
29. Who was the great moral philosopher of Greece and what his fate? Page 226.
30. With what famous event is the name of Xenophon connected? Page 237.
31. How was Thebes freed from Spartan control? Pages 250–258.
32. What was the result of the freeing of Thebes? Page 270.
33. By what brave man was Sicily freed from its tyrants? Page 275.
34. What is meant by the Sacred War? Pages 290–295.
35. What great conqueror revenged Greece on the Persians, by conquering their empire? Page 297.
36. Who was the world's greatest orator? Page 307.
37. Where were the Olympic games held and in what did they consist? Pages 318–319.
38. What was the end of the ambitious enterprises of Pyrrhus of Epirus? Page 333.
39. By whom was Sparta finally overthrown? Page 342.
40. What were the last steps in the subjection of Greece? Pages 347–350.
41. What brave woman defied the Roman armies in Syria? Page 353.
42. Which poet is the earliest extant among Greek writers? Page 360.
43. Where did the Greek lyric first appear? Page 362.
44. What led to the origin of the drama? Page 363.
45. Who are the most famous of the Greek philosophers? Page 364.
46. What was the character of the Museum of Alexandria? Page 366.

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF HISTORICAL LITERATURE

HISTORY OF GREECE. *Grote, George.*
This is the most voluminous of Grecian histories and in many respects the best and ablest. The learning and research indicated leave nothing to be desired, the only fault to be found with the work being an occasional obscurity of language. It has been spoken of as "the most important contribution to historical literature in modern times."

HISTORY OF GREECE. *Duruy, Victor.*
A work of much value and evidencing wide research, while at the same time highly attractive from its literary style, which has given it wide popularity.

HISTORY OF GREECE. *Thirlwall, Connop.*
An able production, preceding that of Grote, and praised by him for its learning, sagacity and candor. In style it is superior to Grote's history, but in other respects cannot be classed with it. It gives prominence to the aristocratic forces of the community rather than to the democratic, as in the case of Grote.

HISTORY OF GREECE FROM THE EARLIEST ACCOUNTS TO THE DEATH OF PHILIP, KING OF MACEDON. *Mitford, William.*
Great spirit and warmth of coloring characterizes this work, which displays unusual learning and research. It is marked by strong anti-democratic prejudice, doing much injustice to the democracy of Athens, and making Philip its leading hero. It possesses an attractive style, but as a work of history has been superseded by the more modern productions.

HISTORY OF GREECE. *Curtius, Ernest.*
The English edition of the work of an able German antiquary. This history is full of evidences of high scholarship, though it is written for the general reader and fails to give reference to its authorities. In its scholarly deductions it frequently differs from

Grote, but its conclusions are always worthy of attention.

HISTORY OF GREECE. *Duncker, Maximilian.*
The production of a German antiquarian, translated into English by Evelyn Abbott. It possess a high rank as a satisfactory history of Greece, during its early period, the work ending with the battle of Salamis.

HISTORY OF GREECE. *Holm, Adolph.*
A work of Italian origin, its author being professor of history at Palermo, Sicily. It displays wide research and ranks with the leading histories of ancient Greece, while its attractive style has given it a wide popularity.

HISTORY OF GREECE. *Goldsmith, Oliver.*
In this we have a work of history from the pen of a poet, dramatist, and novelist, and displaying the charming literary skill for which its author was notable. Goldsmith had no time or opportunity for original research, yet he has produced a work of history which can be read with pleasure and profit.

WORKS. *Herodotus.*
The Greeks did not wait for the labors of modern writers, but produced many able historians of their own, the first and most delightful in style among them being Herodotus, the "Father of history." He must be read, however, rather for enjoyment than as an authority, as he cannot be trusted except for the results of his personal observations.

HISTORY OF THE PELOPONNESIAN WAR. *Thucydides.*
In this admirable production we possess the first historical work written from the point of view of careful statement and philosophical deduction. Thucydides may be viewed as the "father of history" in its modern sense, and his work remains unsurpassed as a model of historical composition.

ANABASIS and HELLENICA. *Xenophon.*
As a writer of great charm for his literary style Xenophon will long find a wide circle of readers, but scarcely for any historical merit in his works, which no student can accept as authorities.

THE ANABASIS OF ALEXANDER. *Arrian.*
In this admirable work we have far the best ancient account of the remarkable exploits of his hero. Arrian is no hero-worshipper. He is impartial and just in his views, and while seeking to do full justice to the great qualities of Alexander, makes no effort to hide or palliate his faults.

UNIVERSAL HISTORY. *Polybius.*
The greatest among the later Greek historians, it is a loss to historical literature that much of his work has disappeared. He is an authority alike on Greek and Roman history, the most valuable feature of his extant writings being their study of the confederations of later Greece.

PARALLEL LIVES. *Plutarch.*
Plutarch is the great ancient biographer, his biographies being full of historical information—perhaps with a goodly share of fable. In his wonderful pages one sees ancient life as it really was, and he has long been the most popular of ancient writers.

HISTORY OF GREECE. *Cox, Sir George.*
In this we possess a work of great learning; and the author's "Tales of Ancient Greece" and "Lives of Greek Statesmen" are also useful and readable.

SCHOOL HISTORY OF GREECE. *Smith, Sir William.*
We mention this author in particular for his compendious and highly useful "Dictionary of Greek and Roman Biography and Mythology" and similar dictionaries of the antiquities and the geography of ancient Greece and Rome, all of them excellent works of reference.

GREECE, ANCIENT AND MODERN. *Felton, Cornelius C.*
This work deals, not with Grecian history from a political point of view, but with the culture and social life of Greece. As such it holds a high position, and is regarded by some critics as the most interesting work on Greek history considered from this aspect.

THE AGE OF PERICLES. *Lloyd, W. W.*
Here we are given a photographic view of Greek

life and activities in the age of Athenian supremacy in art and empire. While defective in literary style, it is a storehouse of information upon the social and political life of ancient Athens.

SOCIAL LIFE IN GREECE FROM HOMER TO MENANDER. *Mahaffy, John P.*
In this work we are introduced into the daily life of the Greeks through the great eras of their history, the manners and customs of the Grecians being made highly interesting to all readers of this scholarly production.

CONSTITUTIONAL ANTIQUITIES OF SPARTA AND ATHENS. *Gilbert, Gustav.*
This essay upon the constitutions of the leading communities of ancient Greece is a very meritorious work, displaying abundant learning, and is a standard production upon its subject.

COURSE OF READING IN ROMAN HISTORY

INTRODUCTION

In dealing with the history of Rome we find ourselves in contact with a nation essentially different in character from its sister realm of Greece. While the latter stood for the development of art and literature from their crude early condition to a stage of remarkable completeness, Rome occupied a similar position in the development of government and law, which advanced immensely beyond their earlier stages, the legal system of Rome reaching such perfection that the modern laws of Europe are based very largely upon it, as a code in some respects incapable of improvement. Rome, in its progress, conquered all the civilized nations of its era and the history of this country constitutes the main foundation stone of modern history. The progress of Rome in these respects is amply shown in the series of tales devoted to this country, with the stages and causes of development which led from its early semi-barbaric condition to its final stage of organization and legal and governmental progress.

In following the story of Rome in these tales, we begin with that largely traditional period when

the young people lay under the control of kings, whose power increased until it became an oppressive tyranny. Then we reach the first great political revolution in history, where the people rose, deposed their kings, curbed the power of the nobility, and established a republic of the same type as that of the nations of Greece. The struggle thus begun was not consummated until several centuries later, the plebeians or common people winning right after right from the patricians or aristocrats until Rome became a democratic people of an advanced type. In these stages of progress we perceive a close counterpart of those presented in the history of Athens, the most advanced of the Greek commonwealths. But from this point forward the history of Rome takes on a different phase. During this period of political struggle began that series of wars which in time gave Rome the mastery of the civilized world. Starting from a great reverse, when the Gauls captured and destroyed the young city, it spread its dominion until all Italy lay under its sway. Then it came in contact with and after a long struggle destroyed the African republic of Carthage. Thus it became master of Northern Africa and Spain, and rapidly spread its conquests until Greece and Western Asia lay under its sway. Subsequently Gaul, Egypt, and Britain were added and Rome reached the limits of its cosmopolitan dominion. This career of conquest led to a great development of the military force of the republic, and gave such great power and popularity to suc-

cessful generals that in the end they overthrew the republic and built up an autocratic empire upon its ruins. During the remainder of its history Rome remained an empire. But despite the admirable system of government that had been developed, the huge dominion in time grew so unwieldy as to break into pieces from its own weight and become divided into two empires, those of the West and the East, with Rome and Constantinople as their respective capitals. The remaining history of Rome consists in the growing organization of the barbarian tribes of the North, their successful resistance to the Roman armies, their invasions of Roman territory, and their increasing strength and boldness until in time they overthrew the Western Empire, deposed its emperor, and put a barbarian king upon his throne. With this event the history of Rome came to an end, but the Eastern or Greek Empire maintained itself for many centuries later in an enfeebled and contracted condition. In time it also succumbed to the assaults of the Northern barbarians and the last remnant of the great empire of Rome was swept from the earth. The history of this great domain, with its many changes and its interminable series of wars, presents an abundance of interesting and suggestive tales, of which the more important and epoch-making are given in this volume, the whole constituting what may be accepted as practically a history of Rome.

OUTLINE OF READINGS

FIRST READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 7–21.
The tradition of the origin of Rome—The founding of the city—The growth of population—The Sabine virgins—War with the Sabines—Reign and death of Romulus.

SECOND READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 22–31.
War with the Albans—The Horatii and Curiatii—The crime and pardon of Horatius—The Tarquin dynasty—The augurs—Servius Tullius deposed and killed—The wickedness of Tullia.

THIRD READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 32–42.
The Sibyl and her books—Their loss and the collection of oracles—Brutus the dullard—Lucretia the worthy—The wicked deed of Sextus—Brutus demands revenge—The Tarquins banished—The end of kingship in Rome.

FOURTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 43–53.
The cruel judgment of Brutus—King Tarquin fights to regain his throne—Horatius keeps the bridge—The patriotism of Caius Mucius—Tarquin leads a new army against Rome—A desperate battle—The strange horsemen—Honors to Castor and Pollux.

FIFTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 54–67.
The people of Rome oppressed—Revolt of the people—They gain redress—Power of the Tribunes—The exploits of Coriolanus—His exile—Leads the Volscians against Rome—How Coriolanus was induced to spare Rome—Rome honors the women who saved it.

SIXTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 68–86.
Cincinnatus the farmer—A Roman army entrapped—Cincinnatus rescues it—The Æquians pass under the yoke—Cincinnatus returns to his farm—Laws of the Twelve Tables—Tyranny of the Decemvirs—The plot of Appius Claudius—Virginius kills his daughter to

save her honor—The revolt of the army—The Decemvirs deposed and punished.

SEVENTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 87–104.
The siege of Veii—The draining of Lake Alba—Camillus the dictator captures Veii—The triumph and exile of Camillus—The invasion of the Gauls—Murder of the senators and siege of the Capitol—The sacred geese—The golden ransom—Camillus saves Rome—How Rome dealt with its preservers.

EIGHTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 105–115.
Pestilence and flood—The gulf in the Forum—Sacrifice of a noble youth—Other Roman traditions—The cruel sentence of Manlius—The sacrifice of a general wins a victory—The Roman discipline—Triumph of Fabius.

NINTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 116–125.
How the Sabines conquered and took the name of the Samnites—Their mountain fastness—Wars with Rome—The pass of Caudium—A Roman army entrapped—Forced to go under the yoke—Rome breaks the treaty by a trick.

TENTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 126–134.
The Carthaginians in Sicily—Their powerful fleet—Rome builds a fleet and wins a victory—The first invasion of Africa—Regulus, the Roman general, defeated and captured—Sent to Rome to ask for peace—He counsels war—Returns to Carthage and is cruelly punished.

ELEVENTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 135–151.
Results of the first Punic War—The Carthaginians in Spain—Hannibal made commander-in-chief—Captures Saguntum—Crosses the Alps to Italy—Hannibal's great victories—The Fabian tactics—Defeat of Hasdrubal—Hannibal defeated and driven into exile—The defeat of Antiochus and death of Hannibal.

TWELFTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 152–164.
The siege and defence of Syracuse—The machines made by Archimedes—The city taken by surprise—Cato the Censor and the doom of Carthage—Victory and severe conditions of the Romans—The courage

of despair—Scipio takes Carthage, which is plundered and destroyed.

THIRTEENTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 165–179.
The jewels of Cornelia—Tiberius Gracchus—He becomes tribune and defends the rights of the people—He is killed—Caius Gracchus made tribune—He is driven by his enemies to suicide—The people's gratitude—Jugurtha the unscrupulous—Holds Numidia by bribing the Roman senate—Caius Marius takes his stronghold—Fate of Jugurtha.

FOURTEENTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 180–197.
Marius defeats the Germans—The Social war—Rivalry of Marius and Sulla—Civil war and the flight of Marius—Escapes to Africa—Marius returns, wins Rome and slays his enemies—The return of Sulla—Defeats the Samnites—Takes Rome and slaughters his enemies—The Proscription—Escape of Cæsar—Dissipation and death of Sulla.

FIFTEENTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 198–207.
The gladiators rebel—Their successes—Crassus attacks them—Death of Spartacus—Cruelty of Crassus to his captives—The Mediterranean pirates—Cæsar punishes them—Their overthrow by Pompey.

SIXTEENTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 208–226.
The leaders in Rome—Cæsar in Gaul—His rivalry with Pompey—Crosses the Rubicon—Pursues and defeats Pompey—Cæsar's clemency and reforms—The attempt to make him king—A conspiracy against him—Cæsar attacked and slain in the Senate chamber—The second triumvirate—Defeat and death of the assassins.

SEVENTEENTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 227–235.
Cleopatra on the Cydnus—Antony in Egypt—Antony a slave to love—Hostilities between Antony and Octavius—The battle of Actium—Suicide of Antony and Cleopatra—Octavius emperor as Cæsar Augustus.

EIGHTEENTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 236–249.
Caligula the monster—His cruelties and follies—His march to Germany and Gaul—He is assassinated—Nero becomes emperor—Plot to drown his mother—She escapes and is murdered.

NINETEENTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 250–271.
Revolt of the Britons—Their defeat and death of their queen—The follies and prodigalities of Nero—Great fire in Rome—Nero aides in rebuilding—Charges the Christians with the conflagration and bitterly persecutes them—Conspiracy against Nero—A general revolt—A terrible death decreed—He kills himself.

TWENTIETH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 272–279.
The Roman amphitheatres—The Colosseum—Shows of Rome—Gladiatorial contests—Animal fights—An emperor in the arena—A monk seeks to stop the bloodshed, and causes the cessation of the shows—A Roman triumph.

TWENTY-FIRST READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 280–292.
The feasts of Vitellius—Germans and Gauls in the army—An imperial banquet—Retribution upon the glutton—Vespasian made emperor by his army—The city assailed and taken—Death of Vitellius—Sabinus the Gaul—His wife's long devotion—Vespasian executes him and his faithful wife.

TWENTY-SECOND READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 293–308.
Rebellion of the Jews—The siege of Jerusalem—The city taken and the temple burned—The massacre on Mount Sion—An eruption of Vesuvius—Pliny's account of the disaster—Fate of Pompeii and Herculaneum—The excavation of Pompeii—The art relics of Herculaneum.

TWENTY-THIRD READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 309–324.
The emperors after Vespasian—Septimus Severus—Maximin the Thracian—Alexander Severus killed and Maximin made emperor—His cruelties—He is assassinated—The progress of Christianity—How Constantine became a Christian—Christianity the religion of the state—Constantine builds a new capital at Byzantium.

TWENTY-FOURTH READING. VOL. xi. Pp. 325–340.
The Goths cross the Danube—They are ill treated and revolt—Slaughter of the Gothic children—Greece invaded—Alaric in Italy—End of the gladiatorial shows—The last Roman triumph—Death of Stilicho, the bulwark of Rome—Alaric captures and plunders Rome—The Vandals in Rome—End of the Western Empire.

EXPLANATORY AND SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

JANUS. Page 22.

An ancient Latin deity, represented with two faces, and regarded as the opener of the day and keeper of the gates of heaven. The month January is said to have been derived from his name. He presided over the commencement of enterprises and his temple at Rome was kept open while war prevailed and closed in time of peace.

AUGURY. Page 26.

In Rome augury meant the interpretation of omens, such as observation of the flights of birds, the drawing of lots, the appearance of the entrails of animals, and other natural occurrences, also dreams and oracular prophecies. These were supposed to indicate coming events. There were public augurs, whose duty was to observe such events and interpret their meaning. Something like augury is very wide-spread among uncultured peoples.

THE FORUM. Page 29.

A public space, especially the market-place of a city, in which public meetings were held, affairs discussed, courts held and money transactions carried on. The Forum of Rome was the level space between the foot of the Capitoline Hill and the northeast part of the Palatine Hill. It was the place of the great meetings of the Roman people.

CASTOR AND POLLUX. Page 53.

Divine brothers, and sons of Zeus, or, as one tradition says, Pollux alone was the son of Zeus and as such immortal. Castor was famous in the management of horses, Pollux in the art of boxing. They were placed among the stars as Gemini, or the Twins.

THE ROMAN DICTATOR. Page 89.

In Rome a dictator was appointed in times of public peril, and was given absolute authority over all

classes and affairs. The dictatorship could not lawfully be held longer than six months, and this time was surpassed only in the cases of Sulla and Cæsar. The dictator could not be called to account for anything he had done during his term of office.

THE CAPITOL. Page 97.

The great national temple of Rome, situated on the summit of the smallest but most famous of the seven hills of Rome. The Arx, or citadel of Rome, stood on its northern summit, and the whole hill was fortified and considered the natural defence of the city. The Capitol was founded by the Tarquins and was several times burned and rebuilt. It was dedicated to Jupiter, Juno and Minerva. Here the Sibylline books were kept, the consuls entered upon office, and the victor in a triumph was borne in his car to give thanks to Jupiter. In the United States this word is applied to the legislative halls of the general government and the States.

THE PLAGUE. Page 105.

A term formerly used to designate all kinds of fatal epidemics, of which the best known in ancient times were the plague at Athens during its siege by the Spartans and that at Rome on the occasion here spoken of. Most fatal of all such epidemics was the Black Death of the fourteenth century. The term plague is now restricted to a very malignant kind of contagious fever, other epidemics having specific names.

PUNIC WARS. Page 135.

The wars between Carthage and Rome, so called from the Latin word *Punicus*, "Phœnician," Carthage having begun as a colony of ancient Phœnicia.

ARCHIMEDES. Page 152.

The greatest of the ancient geometers. His most famous feat was that in which he proved that the gold crown of the king of Syracuse was alloyed with silver, by weighing it in comparison with an equal mass of pure gold. He made many discoveries in mechanics and hydrostatics, and left a number of valuable works, eight of which are extant.

CATO THE CENSOR. Page 158.

An eminent Roman patriot and statesman, born 234 B.C. He worked as a farmer, lived a simple, hardy life, and cultivated the austere virtues. He became famous as an orator, and as censor reformed abuses with a severity that made him many enemies. He served in the wars against Hannibal and was through life a bitter enemy of Carthage. His great grandson, Cato the Younger, took him as a model and practised the same austerities. The latter was very prominent in the closing days of the republic, took the side of Pompey in the war with Cæsar, and commanded an army in Africa after Pompey's death. Determined not to survive the republic, he died at Utica by his own hand. Like his ancestor, he was regarded as one of the noblest and purest of the Romans.

POMPEY. Page 195.

A famous Roman general who fought on the side of Sulla in the civil wars, and subsequently was victorious in Numidia and Spain. He brought the Mithridatic War to an end, subdued Syria and captured Jerusalem and won other provinces in the East. He afterwards formed with Cæsar and Crassus a triumvirate, or three-man-power. His rivalry with Cæsar and his defeat and death are described in the Tales.

CATILINE. Page 195.

A Roman demagogue and conspirator, who became infamous through his murders and profligacy. He formed a conspiracy against the republic in 63 B.C. but was denounced by Cicero, and was killed in the defeat of the army which he raised against the state.

CICERO. Page 208.

The most illustrious of the Roman orators and statesmen, who took a very active part in the active times of the overthrow of the republic. Ancient times produced few men his superiors in genius and his life was distinguished by a vigorous struggle against vice and injustice. His series of splendid orations against the ambitious and corrupt Mark Antony led to his murder by order of this incensed triumvir. The prose works left by Cicero are among the most admired of the literary relics of ancient times.

CLEOPATRA. Page 227.

This celebrated Egyptian queen, noted for her personal charms and accomplishments, was the last of the dynasty of the Ptolemies to hold the throne of Egypt. She sought to retain her power by her blandishments, and was successful with Cæsar and Antony, but failed in her effort to win the favor of Octavius. With her death the independence of Egypt ended.

HERCULANEUM. Page 308.

The story of Pompeii and its excavation is well known, but that of Herculaneum is less familiar. This was a larger and more important city than Pompeii, but its excavation has proved much more difficult, from the hardness of the materials which overwhelmed it. Yet many beautiful statues and fine paintings have been obtained and at present it is projected to undertake a more thorough investigation, with the hope of rescuing valuable relics of antiquity.

PRÆTORIAN GUARD. Page 317.

The body-guard of the Roman emperors, instituted by Augustus. They soon acquired a dangerous power, deposing and elevating emperors at their pleasure, and went so far as to sell the imperial dignity. Their organization was broken up by Severus and they were distributed in the ranks of the regular army by Constantine.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. What is the character of the early history of Rome? Page 7.
2. Where and by whom was the city of Rome built? Page 11.
3. How were wives obtained by the Romans? Page 16.
4. What brought an end to the kingship of early Rome? Page 31.
5. What were the Sibylline books? Page 32.
6. What kind of government followed that of the kings? Page 42.
7. What story of the rigid Roman virtue is told of Brutus, the expeller of the kings? Page 43.
8. What caused the first revolt of the people against the nobles? Page 54.
9. What good did the people gain from their revolt? Page 58.
10. How was Rome saved from destruction by the exiled Coriolanus? Page 66.
11. In what way did Cincinnatus win deathless fame? Pages 68, 74.
12. By whom were the laws of Rome codified and how did the law-makers act? Pages 75–76.
13. What was the special act that led to the overthrow of the decemvirs? Page 83.
14. By what barbarian race was Rome put in danger of utter destruction? Pages 94–100.
15. What consul showed an example of the rigid Roman virtue still more striking than that of Brutus? Page 109.
16. What was the greatest disgrace ever suffered by a Roman army? Page 123.
17. After conquering Italy, with what great city of Africa did Rome come into collision? Page 126.
18. What was the result of the first Punic War? Page 135.
19. What great feat was accomplished by Hannibal, the Carthaginian general? Pages 140–144.
20. What caused the failure of Hannibal's invasion of Italy? Pages 147–150.
21. Who was the greatest mechanician of antiquity? Page 152.

22. What was the final fate of Carthage? Pages 163–164.

23. What gave fame to the sons of Cornelia, the noble matron? Pages 167–171.

24. What enabled Jugurtha, the Numidian, to defy the power of Rome? Page 174.

25. What two great soldiers fought for supremacy in the late days of the Roman republic? Pages 180–190.

26. What gave rise to the revolt of the gladiators under Spartacus? Page 198.

27. What first gave prominence to Julius Cæsar? Page 205.

28. What great conquest was made by Cæsar? Page 210.

29. What brought about the greatest civil war in Roman history? Pages 212–216.

30. What was its end? Page 217.

31. What led to the assassination of Cæsar? Page 220.

32. Who formed the second triumvirate and who was its most famous victim? Page 225.

33. What is meant by a triumvirate? Page 225.

34. What led to the fall of Antony and the supremacy of Octavius, or Augustus as he was afterwards named? Page 229.

35. What two monsters of cruelty soon followed Augustus as emperors? Pages 236, 243.

36. What was the most inhuman act of Nero and what his fate? Pages 261, 269.

37. What were the favorite amusements of the Romans? Pages 272–278.

38. Who was the basest and most shameless of the emperors of Rome? Page 282.

39. What led to the siege of Jerusalem and destruction of its temple? Page 293.

40. What great and unlooked for disaster occurred in Italy in the first century B.C.? Page 301.

41. How did a barbarian peasant rise to be emperor of Rome? Pages 310–313.

42. Who was the first Christian emperor, and what radical act did he perform? Pages 320–324.

43. What act led to the fall of the western empire of Rome? Page 326.

44. What were the steps of the downfall of this empire? Pages 337–340.

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF HISTORICAL LITERATURE

A History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire. *Gibbon, Edward.*
The greatest monument of historical work ever produced by the hand of one writer, and covering a field of history much of which is treated only sparsely by other writers. Though written more than a century ago, Gibbon's research was so all-embracing that modern critics have found very few errors of statement in his pages. It covers the period from the middle of the second century to the fall of Constantinople in 1453 and is indispensable to any student who wishes to gain a general historical culture.

The History of Rome and the Roman Provinces. *Mommsen, Theodor.*
There is no other history of Rome more vital than this in making the heroes of old Rome live and breathe, in giving them a real and picturesque existence almost as if they were characters of our own day. Here is none of the ponderous dignity of Gibbon, but a fresh and warm treatment and in its way a masterly one. These features have made Mommsen's histories favorites of students and scholars.

A History of the Romans under the Empire. *Merivale, Charles.*
Perhaps the most valuable feature of this work is that it fills the gap between Mommsen and Gibbon, the three together forming a complete history of Rome from the era of Romulus to that of the fall of the Eastern Empire. It is highly regarded as a historical work, some of its chapters being admirable for their brilliant descriptive power.

History of Rome and Lectures on the History of Rome from the Earliest Times to the Fall of the Western Empire. *Niebuhr, Barthold Georg.*
Niebuhr's work revolutionized the history of early

Rome. He was the first to show that the events chronicled by Livy are largely legend, the folk-lore of a nation, with little more than a basis of fact. His great erudition and exhaustive research enabled him to probe the sources of these romantic and picturesque stories, and the appearance of his work transformed Roman history as previously understood and accepted. Though critics have controverted some of his conclusions, the reputation of his history holds good, and no writer now maintains the authenticity of Roman history previous to the burning of Rome and destruction of its records by the Gauls.

THE HISTORY OF ROME. *Duruy, Victor.*
This work, covering the whole field of Roman history and abundantly illustrated, holds the position of the chief popular history of Rome. It is based in great part upon original research and is excellently adapted for the general reader.

THE HISTORY OF ROME FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE EMPIRE. *Liddell, Henry George.*
This is rather a manual than a complete history, yet it is full of information and is trustworthy in its statement of facts, though to many it may prove dry reading.

HISTORY OF ROME. *Arnold, Thomas.*
This history, which the death of the author closed in the era of the Second Punic War, is based on Niebuhr for the early period, but for the Punic War era, so far as the work extends, is the best description given by any English historian.

CÆSAR, A SKETCH. *Froude, James Anthony.*
Though this declares itself to be only a sketch, it is an entrancing one, and of great popular interest. Following Mommsen, the author presents Cæsar to us as the most remarkable figure in Roman history.

THE HISTORY OF ROME. *Livius, Titus.*
Among Roman historians Livy bears the palm. In style and general interest to readers his work has few equals, but it was written to gratify the national

vanity of the Romans, repeated the early legends without any pretense of verifying them, and made the history of early Rome a thing of fable and pro-Roman prejudice. Of his 142 books only 35 have been preserved.

THE LIFE OF AGRICOLA. *Tacitus, Cornelius.*
"The Histories," "The Annals," and "The Manners and Peoples of Germany," constitute the works of history of the ablest of Roman historians. For literary skill Tacitus has no rivals among his countrymen; he admirably pictures for us the life and character of the Romans, and, according to Gibbon, "He was the first historian who applied the science of philosophy to the study of facts." In delineation of character he is unrivalled among historians, and his "Life of Agricola" is, in this respect, very notable.

THE LIVES OF THE TWELVE CÆSARS. *Suetonius, Caius Tranquillus.*
This includes the emperors from Julius to Domitian and deals with them impartially. The work is rather anecdotal than historical, and freely exposes the private lives and vices of the emperors, giving abundant details. Its style is attractive, and it has high value as a portrayal of the manners and customs of the early empire.

THE ROMAN HISTORY. *Marcellinus, Ammianus.*
Only a portion of this work has been preserved, covering the period from 353 to 378 A.D. The whole work extended from 96 to 378. The author is highly praised for fidelity and impartiality, but falls much below the classic authors of Greece in point of style. He not only describes events, but comments interestingly upon the manners and institutions of his time.

COURSE OF READING IN JAPANESE AND CHINESE HISTORY

INTRODUCTION

In considering the history of China and Japan we are dealing with nations radically different in race and course of historical progress from those of Europe and America. In the United States we had to do with the youngest of the great nations of the earth. In China we meet with the oldest of the nations, one that reached its most flourishing state a thousand years before any of the existing nations of the western world had begun their career, and which more than two thousand years ago attained a stage of political and literary development from which it has scarcely deviated since. It has been the most self-satisfied of the nations. While the other peoples of the world were struggling and progressing, China lay in a state of contented stagnation, so proud of its old literature and civilization that no thought of a possible improvement came to its people. Within the past few years a marked change has come upon it. Recent wars and invasions, especially the struggle between Japan and Russia, have wakened the Colossus of the East,

and with startling suddenness it has thrown overboard much of its cargo of ancient prejudice and is showing decided signs of a purpose to keep pace with the later nations, adding to the best it has the best they have to give it.

One cause of the stagnation of China has been its isolation. Cut loose from the remainder of the civilized world, it was only within the past century that it became aware of what had been taking place in Europe and America. Surrounded by mountain ranges and deserts, it lay for ages out of touch with the remainder of the world, except the Mongolian and Manchurian tribes, of its own race, with which alone it came into warlike contact. It is the general impression that the Chinese are an unwarlike people, but this has been principally because they had no one to fight with except the nomad barbarians of the North and the island Japanese. But internally there have been incessant warlike convulsions, first those between the feudal states into which it was formerly divided, then, after the founding of the empire, among the people themselves, who have frequently broken into great revolts that it needed all the power of the throne to put down. Thus it is that, though China bears the reputation of being unwarlike, many of the tales we have selected from its history have to do with scenes of war, now among its own people, now with the peoples to the west and north.

In Japan we meet with a people of different character from those of China, a people not tied to

ancient traditions and destitute of pride in a moth-eaten civilization of the past; a people bustling and warlike, yet so situated that nearly all their wars have been fought at home between ambitious chiefs, their only foreign wars of past times being with the neighboring country of Corea. While China was twice invaded and conquered—by the Mongols and the Manchus—only one attempt to conquer Japan has been made, that by Kublai Khan, and in this instance the islanders valorously and successfully defended themselves. Our tales of Japan, therefore, are of necessity largely confined to the struggles for control between the great chiefs and leading families, and the stories of the coming of the missionaries, their sectarian feuds and political meddling, and their final expulsion by the disgusted islanders. Within the past half century a remarkable change has come upon Japan. Stringently isolated since the era of the missionaries, its isolation was broken down by the visit of Commodore Perry in 1853, and since then it has shown a spirit of progress that is among the wonders of the world. Having no ancient prejudices or traditions to interfere, it has accepted and assimilated the civilization of the West with remarkable ardor and activity, and to show how well it had learned its lesson it defeated the hosts of China in 1895 and astounded the world by its utter defeat of Russia by land and sea in the war of 1904–05. The history of the two nations of China and Japan, while of different type from that of European countries, is

full of matter of interest and importance, and its course is fairly laid down in the tales we have selected, which present a fairly consecutive history of the two countries, while giving their most striking events.

OUTLINE OF READINGS

FIRST READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 5–18.

Beginning of Japan—Exploits of Jimmu Tennō—His conquest of Yamato—Chinese story of the settling of Japan—The mikado Sujin—Early barbarism—Intercourse with Corea—Sujin selects his heir.

SECOND READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 19–34.

A hero of Japanese romance—Yamato and the Ainos—He is assailed by magic—Death of the hero—Jingu the Amazon—The gods tell her of Corea—An invading expedition—Corea conquered—The Japanese God of War.

THIRD READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 35–50.

Civilizers from Corea—The Shoguns usurp power from the mikados, who become spiritual chiefs—Rise of the Fujiwara family—Kiyomori wins control—Power of the Taira family—Yoritomo saved from death—His courtship and marriage—His victorious career.

FOURTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 51–66.

Royal children in the cloister—Flight of Yoshitsuné, the younger—He becomes a conqueror—A terrible naval conflict—Rise of the Hojos—Their tyranny—Revolt against the tyrants—The Hojos overthrown—A mikado comes to power.

FIFTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 67–79.

Kublai Khan invades Japan—The Japanese defence—A typhoon wrecks the fleet—Marco Polo's story—Nobunaga the wise chief—His enmity to the Buddhists—Destroys their monasteries—The hero murdered.

SIXTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 80–96.

A peasant boy becomes the ruler of Japan—His activity in city building—Invades and conquers Corea—Iyeyasu's fight for power—His success—A poetic incident—He founds the city of Yedo—The organization of the empire.

SEVENTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 97–112.
Marco Polo describes Japan—The coming of the Portuguese—Guns and powder introduced—Francis Xavier, the missionary—Progress of Christianity—Sectarian troubles—The missionaries banished—Persecution of the Christians—Japan becomes isolated.

EIGHTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 113–132.
Dutch commerce—The Russians seek to penetrate Japan—Captain Golownin a captive—His release—A foreign squadron in the Bay of Yedo—Commodore Perry's mission to the emperor—The letter received—Departure and return of Perry—His reception—A treaty made and Japan opened to the world.

NINTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 133–141.
Positions of the mikado and the shogun—The shogun favors, the mikado opposes, foreign intercourse—Release of the daimios—They gather round the mikado—Civil war—The office of shogun abolished and the mikado regains his power—Mutsuhito comes to the throne and feudalism is abolished.

TENTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 142–155.
Origin of the Chinese—The ancient traditions—Yao, the first historical emperor—Later emperors—The faithfulness of the historians—The feudal system of China—Laoutse and Confucius—The life and writings of Confucius—The works of Mencius.

ELEVENTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 156–171.
Hoangti subdues the feudal lords and repels the Tartars—The building of the Chinese Wall—Civil wars—Overthrow of feudalism and unity of the empire—Internal improvements—Disputes with the literati—The burning of the books—Death of the great emperor.

TWELFTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 172–185.
Beginning of the Han dynasty—Kaotsou's great public works—His fondness for splendor—Anecdotes of his wisdom—War with the Tartars—The virgin tribute—Liuchi, the empress poisoner—She rises to power and removes all rivals—The story of her death.

THIRTEENTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 186–196.
The steppes of Mongolia invaded—Tartar raids—The war continued—A venturesome traveller and his discoveries—A poisoner in power—End of his career—The band of the "Crimson Eyebrows."

FOURTEENTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 197–204.
The character of the Chinese—Their first war of conquest—Panchow conquers Turkestan and reaches the Caspian Sea—Comes in contact with the Roman empire—A national hero—The siege of Sinching.

FIFTEENTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 205–216.
The empire in danger—A boy soldier appears—Defeats the pirates—Made commander-in-chief—He deposes the emperor and seizes the throne—Mongchi the heroine—Lieouchi and the traitor—The story of Houchi, the woman ruler.

SIXTEENTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 217–227.
The Tang dynasty succeeds the Han—Lichimin, the prince conqueror—He reigns under the title of Taitsong—Subdues Eastern Turkestan—His home labors—Kaotsong and his ambitious wife—She conducts the wars of the empire—Becomes empress—Her cruelty and ability.

SEVENTEENTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 228–241.
Mongolia and its warlike tribes—Temujin the warrior—Takes the title of Genghis Khan—China invaded—Great conquests of the Mongols—The friars in their camp—Other friars visit the Great Khan—What they saw—Prester John.

EIGHTEENTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 242–254.
Kublai Khan besieges Sianyang—A gallant defence—The city reprovisioned—Fanching besieged—Surrender of Sianyang—Conquering progress of the Mongols—The Sung dynasty overthrown—Death of China's last defender and the conquest completed.

NINETEENTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 255–271.
The Polos in Peking—Marco Polo's description of Kublai's palace—The city of Kambalu—Defeat and punishment of a rebel—Coleridge's poem—Choo the deliverer—Captures Nanking—Drives back the Mongols—Is crowned emperor with title of Hongwou.

TWENTIETH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 272–289.
The realm of the Manchus—Noorhachu forms a confederacy—Invades Liautung—Captures Moukden—The Great Wall crossed and Peking in peril—Career of Li, the brigand chief—Becomes emperor—The Manchus brought in—They defeat Li and gradually conquer all China.

TWENTY-FIRST READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 290–305.
Kanghi, the Manchu emperor, and the Mongols—His war with Galdan—The steppes invaded—Victory gained and Mongolia added to China—Thibet and the hill-tribes—The Goorkha raid—Overthrow of the Goorkhas.

TWENTY-SECOND READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 306–322.
The isolation of China—Visits of Europeans—Destruction of opium and war with England—Hong Kong ceded to the English—Canton captured—The Taku forts taken—Advance on Peking—The Summer Palace occupied and looted—The burning of the palaces.

TWENTY-THIRD READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 323–338.
Character of the Chinese—A weak emperor and a revolt—A powerful Tai-ping army—The final overthrow of the Tai-pings—The kingdom of Corea—Raids of Japanese pirates—Rigid isolation of Corea—This policy broken down—Claims on Corea of China and Japan—The rivalry ends in war—Japan the victor.

TWENTY-FOURTH READING. VOL. xii. Pp. 339–355.
Ironclads in the Yellow Sea—Skilful tactics and victory of Japan—Final fate of the Chinese fleet—The inquisitive and progressive character of the Japanese—Their rapid acceptance of civilized methods—Their struggle with Russia—The conservatism of China—Indications of the coming of a new era.

EXPLANATORY AND SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES

MARS. METHUSELAH. Page 34.

Mars was the Roman god of war, closely identical with the Ares of Greek mythology. Methuselah was the longest lived of the Hebrew patriarchs, his age being stated as 969 years.

MIKADO. SHOGUN. Page 36.

Mikado is the official title of the emperors of Japan. Originally at the head of the church as well as of the government, the political power of the mikados was gradually usurped by the military chiefs, called shoguns or generals, who became and for centuries continued the ruling heads of the nation, the mikados being limited to spiritual functions.

BUDDHISM. Page 75.

One of the religious systems of India, which was suppressed in that country by the Brahmanists, but made its way widely over Northern Asia, reaching Japan as early as 552 A.D. It has long been the dominant religion of Japan.

TYCOON. Page 96.

Tai Kun, anglicized as Tycoon, signifies Great King. It was first used in intercourse with foreigners to signify the supremacy of the shogun and was the title by which that official first became known in foreign lands.

SINDBAD THE SAILOR. Page 98.

A personage of the "Arabian Nights Entertainments." He is described as a great traveller and has extraordinary adventures.

SHINTOISM. Page 103.

The native or indigenous religion of Japan. It lacks an ethical code, idols, priestcraft, and ideas of a future life, and is essentially a system of deification of ancestors and heroes, with the worship of certain

forces and objects in nature. In the minds of the people Buddhism and Shintoism are closely blended.

THE RELIGIONS OF CHINA. Page 150.
The Chinese are amply supplied with systems of religious faith. Underlying all is the primitive ancestor worship, of the same type as the Shintoism of Japan. Other native faiths are Taoism, arising from the teachings of the philosopher Laoutse, which has become a system of worship, and Confucianism, which is chiefly a system of ethics. Buddhism, of later introduction, is widespread. There is no conflict or lack of harmony between these several systems.

FEUDALISM. Page 157.
A system of national organization which has appeared at some time in the development of most of the nations. It existed in its most complete form in mediæval France, where the great lords of provinces had to give military support to the king, but were otherwise sovereign in their special domains. Something like this existed in ancient China and in Japan until recent times.

LUCRETIA BORGIA. Page 180.
A daughter of Pope Alexander VI and a sister of Cesare Borgia, who has been accused by historians of infamous crimes. Of these she has been acquitted by modern historical research.

TARTARS OR TATARS. Page 186.
The name of certain tribes in Chinese Tartary, but extended in the middle ages to include all the peoples of Central Asia and some of the tribes of Russia. Recently the word has been more limited in its application.

PARTHIANS. Page 191.
The people of ancient Parthia, a Scythian tribe in northern Persia. After the breaking up of the empire of Alexander the Great, the Parthian chiefs built up an extensive empire, which came into frequent contact with Rome and put a limit to its extension eastward, the Euphrates being the dividing line between the two empires.

DYNASTY. Page 217.

A succession of rulers of the same line or family. There have been many dynasties in China, due to the overthrow of old royal lines by ambitious chiefs, but only one in Japan, on account of the withdrawal of the mikados from active government. In that country there were dynasties of shoguns, or military chiefs, instead of emperors.

HANLIN COLLEGE. Page 270.

The famous Imperial Academy of Peking, the centre of the literary activity of the empire, and the former seat of an extensive library, which has nearly disappeared. Here have long been conducted the final examinations in the competitive system of China, the students who passed the examinations being open to the highest positions in the empire.

CHINESE GORDON. Page 328.

Charles George Gordon, an adventurous British soldier, who was engaged in the Crimean war and other foreign service, and commanded the Chinese forces which suppressed the Tai-ping rebellion, fighting thirty-three battles in less than two years. He was governor-general of the Soudan from 1877–1880, and in 1884, during the Mahdi outbreak in the Soudan, he took command of the Egyptian forces in Khartoom. Before a relief force could reach him Khartoom was captured by the Mahdi's army and he was killed.

REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. What is the date in the Christian era corresponding to the first year in the era of Japan? Page 5.
2. What is the character of the early Japanese annals? Page 5.
3. Who were the Ainos? Page 5.
4. What are the oldest historical works of Japan? Page 6.
5. Who was the first of the dynasty of the Mikados? Page 11.
6. Who established the military system which afterwards grew dominant in Japan? Page 16.
7. Who is the leading hero in Japanese legend? Page 19.
8. When and by whom was the conquest of Corea first undertaken? Pages 27, 31.
9. By whom were the arts of civilization first brought to Japan? Page 35.
10. What caused the decline of the power of the mikados? Page 36.
11. What was the position of the mikados during the dominance of the shoguns? Page 37.
12. What great families fought for power in the ninth and tenth centuries? Page 41.
13. Who may be spoken of as the Bayard of Japan? Pages 53–58.
14. Who was the first of the shoguns or generals to attain imperial power? Page 59.
15. What new clan rose to power and gained the authority without claiming the office of the shogun, and how did they act? Page 61.
16. When and by whom was Japan invaded and with what result? Pages 67–72.
17. What chief of the Tairi family rose to power and why did he seek to destroy the Buddhists? Page 75.
18. By whom was the second invasion of Corea made? Page 85.
19. Who was the founder of the city of Yedo and the system of feudalism? Pages 92–94.
20. Who introduced Christianity into Japan and what was the result? Pages 100–112.

21. What nation first tried to break down the isolation of Japan and with what result? Pages 114–122.

22. By what nation was the isolation overcome and foreign intercourse obtained? Page 125.

23. What was the first important result of the opening of Japan? Pages 134–141.

24. Who were the fathers of the nation of the Chinese? Page 142.

25. What do we know of the first two thousand years of Chinese history? Pages 144–148.

26. Who were the first famous characters in Chinese history? Page 150.

27. For what is Confucius memorable? Pages 152–154.

28. Who founded the Chinese empire and what were his famous deeds? Pages 156–171.

29. What was the result of the attempted destruction of the books? Pages 169–170.

30. What emperor built a great system of public roads in China? Page 173.

31. What foreign wars were undertaken by China in the second century B.C.? Pages 187–190.

32. What great military adventurer appeared in China in the first century of the Christian era? Page 198.

33. How was the Song dynasty founded? Page 209.

34. Why was the emperor Taitsong called the Great? Pages 220–222.

35. Who was the first great woman ruler of China? Pages 225–227.

36. Who was the greatest of the desert soldiers and conquerors? Page 233.

37. For what purpose did a number of friars visit Tartary? Pages 236–241.

38. When did the Mongols invade China and how long did it take to effect a complete conquest? Pages 242, 254.

39. How long was Marco Polo in the service of Kublai Khan and what great work does he describe? Pages 256–259.

40. When and by whom were the Mongols expelled from China and how was a second invasion prevented? Pages 267–269.

41. Who are the Manchus and by whom were they consolidated? Pages 272–279.

42. In what way did the Manchus conquer China? Pages 281–289.

43. What led to the first hostile collision between Europe and China? Page 309.

44. When was the second invasion of China and what was its result? Pages 314–322.

45. What was the character of the Tai-ping rebellion? Page 325.

46. What led to the war between China and Japan and what was its outcome? Pages 334–338.

47. What brought on the war with Russia? Page 352.

48. What is the character of present progress in China? Page 354.

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF HISTORICAL LITERATURE

JAPAN; ITS HISTORY, TRADITIONS, AND RELIGIONS. *Reed, Sir Edward James.*
This author, an expert in naval construction, visited Japan on the invitation of the Emperor in 1878, and made the researches which led to this accurate and useful work on the island empire. It is one of the best to be had on the subjects treated.

JAPAN AS IT WAS AND IS. *Hildreth, Richard.*
The care in investigation and clearness in statement shown in the United States history of this author are evident in his work on Japan. It was written at the time of the opening of Japan, and is of value as a useful record of that period.

THE STORY OF JAPAN. *Murray, David.*
This is one of the "Story of the Nations" series, written by an author who made his studies in Japan and has given us a concise but useful and interesting history of the Japanese Empire from its beginning down to a few years ago.

HISTORY OF JAPAN AND SIAM. *Kaempfer, Engelbert.*
The earliest European history of the countries treated, the author, an eminent German botanist, dying in 1716. The first edition of it was published by Sir Hans Sloan in English in 1727. It is a work of considerable value.

NEHONGI ("Chronicles of Japan").
A very ancient Japanese work, which, with the "Kojiki," forms the source of our knowledge of the early centuries of the empire. Both these works have been translated into English. Of the two, which cover much the same ground, the first named is in higher estimation than the other.

THE JAPAN-CHINA WAR. *Inouye, Jukichi.*
This is an official history of the 1894–95 conflict and

claims to be impartial in its account of the military and naval actions and manœuvres.

THE RUSSO-JAPANESE WAR. *Coman, Thomas.*
A work giving a comprehensive description of the greatest military struggle of the present century, and covering the whole story of the war except its later 1905 events.

HISTORY OF JAPAN. *Brinkley, Frank.*
This work, embracing eight volumes, was written for popular use, and is fairly well prepared for the purpose intended. It is very handsomely and fully illustrated.

JAPAN BY THE JAPANESE. *Stead, Alfred (Editor).*
This is made up of chapters written by eminent scholars and statesmen of Japan and is an excellent and very serviceable compilation.

JAPAN: AN INTERPRETATION. *Hearn, Lafcadio.*
The author lived and worked among the Japanese and understood them probably better than any other man of alien race. His intimate knowledge of them and his fine literary skill give high value to his work.

HISTORY OF CHINA. *Boulger, Demetrius Charles.*
Much the best work on Chinese history written in English. It is a careful and trustworthy work, the first volume concisely treating the history of a period of four thousand years, the other two bringing the record down to our own immediate times.

HISTOIRE GÉNÉRALE DE LA CHINE. *Mailla, Joseph A. M. de.*
A Jesuit missionary, sent to China in 1702, he translated into French a "General History of China," in twelve volumes. This forms the most extensive and valuable collection of historical material that has appeared on China. Boulger found this work invaluable in his labors.

CHINA. *Douglas, Sir Robert Kenneway.*
In the British service in China and subsequently in charge of the Chinese library in the British Museum,

Douglas has prepared a very excellent brief history of China, much the best of its kind.

THE SIEGE OF PEKING. *Martin, W. A. P.*
The author took part in the troubles incident to the Boxer rebellion of 1900 and was for many years president of the Imperial University of China. His work is written with much sprightliness and ability, and clearly depicts the events of this turning point in Chinese history.

CHINA: ITS HISTORY, ARTS AND LITERATURE. *Brinkley, Frank.*
This is a popular descriptive and historical work, prepared for general use and well adapted to the proposed purpose.

COURSE OF READING IN THE TALES OF KING ARTHUR

INTRODUCTION

HISTORY is not confined to the recital of the deeds of men and the movement of events. It also properly includes the details of manners and customs, religious, social and political ideas and systems, and the various conditions that enter into national life. This fact is being taken into account by most modern historians, and the description of the modes of life and general habits of the people of varied nations and ages is not the least interesting part of their work. In fact, there are instances in which nothing else of a historical character has survived, and the world is very glad to accept the legendary and largely fictitious tales of the poets for the sake of what they reveal to us of the life and habits of people in periods beyond the range of ordinary history. In regard to early Greece, for instance, the poems of Homer, the "Iliad" and "Odyssey," yield us, amid their questionable historical details, a mass of facts regarding the state of civilization of that period which is of the utmost interest and value. There is a period as dark in English history, that of the centuries immediately following the

withdrawal of the Romans from Britain. Only slight, dubious shreds of history come to us from that period, which is so void of known facts that Mr. William H. Babcock has written of it as "The Two Lost Centuries of Britain." Yet though the historian has left this period practically untouched, the poet and the chivalric tale writer have taken his place, and from this age of historic darkness come to us the glowing stories of King Arthur and his Round Table Knights, which for ages past have been regarded as the choicest examples of the lore of the age of chivalry and have furnished material for the pens of some of the ablest modern poets and dramatists. Therefore, though in the King Arthur romances we step frankly out of the domain of history in its ordinary acceptation, we have to do with the people and modes of life of that age of chivalry which has long passed away, and are given an illuminating glimpse into the conditions of a period which would otherwise rest in almost total darkness. For this reason the highly interesting and entertaining work of Sir Thomas Malory—condensed and modernized—has been added to our series of historical tales, as a fitting picture of a period and state of society to which history has failed to reach. From that otherwise dark era come the originals of this splendid series of tales of knightly prowess and daring adventure, with their moral and religious element in the stories of the quest of the Holy Grail, which supplied material for the favorite literature of Europe for many

centuries, and has been handled in our own age by Tennyson and other eminent poets.

That there was a King Arthur, as a daring and successful leader of the Britons of Cornwall and Wales, in their contests with the Saxon invaders of the British island, is considered very probable by Mr. Babcock, who has made a critical study of the question in the work named and has earnestly sought to rehabilitate Arthur "in his habit as he lived." But the romance writers of the age of chivalry did not concern themselves with critical research. They built up an Arthur of their own, wrought from purely imaginative elements, and surrounded him with a brave band of hard-hitting knights-errant who live and breathe for us in Malory's stirring prose. Some of them may have been actual personages, the stories told of them may have in some cases been based on real events, but the work itself is made up of very evident fiction, its only historic value being in such light as it sheds on the habits of the people of an otherwise dark age. To the readers of Tennyson's "Idylls of the King," of the "Percivale" dramas and romances of German writers, and other modern versions of the Arthur legends, this work must have a special value, as furnishing the originals of these rare products of the modern muse, and to all readers it can scarcely fail to have a living interest as representing the popular reading material of a far past age.

OUTLINE OF READINGS—VOL. I

FIRST READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 19–39.
The sword in the stone—Young Arthur's wonderful feat—Arthur chosen as king—The challenge and Arthur's victory—Merlin the magician reveals Arthur's parentage.

SECOND READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 39–54.
Arthur's joust with Pellinore—King Arthur's new sword—King Ryons' challenge—Arthur's love for Guenever—The Round Table and its knights—Arthur's marriage to Guenever—The white hart and the three guests.

THIRD READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 55–71.
Balin and the charmed sword—The Lady of the Lake—Balin's sorrowful deed—Merlin's prediction—King Ryons overcome—Death of King Lot and treachery of Morgan le Fay.

FOURTH READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 72–88.
Balin seeks Garlon, an invisible knight—King Pellam's feast—Balin slays Garlon—The dolorous stroke and the fall of King Pellam's castle—The fatal fight of Balin and his brother—Balin's sword.

FIFTH READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 89–93.
Merlin the wise falls in love—Teaches his magic art to the false damsel Nimue—The cavern in Cornwall—Nimue by magic imprisons Merlin in the cavern.

SIXTH READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 94–110.
The enchanted ship—Arthur imprisoned and challenged by Damas—How Morgan le Fay deals with Arthur's sword—The terrible fight of Arthur and Accolan—Arthur regains his sword Excalibur—His judgment on Damas.

SEVENTH READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 110–136.
The wickedness of Morgan le Fay—The mantle of death—The damsels of the garlands—Gawaine's ad-

ventures—How Sir Pelleas showed his love—Gawaine breaks his sword of honor—The strange story of Pelleas and Ettard—The adventures of Marhaus and Uwaine.

EIGHTH READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 137–153.
Lancelot du Lake at Arthur's court—Lionel's misfortunes—Hector made captive—Lancelot imprisoned by Morgan le Fay—His escape—The adventure of the pavilion—Lancelot at the tournament.

NINTH READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 153–163.
Lancelot is told of Sir Turquine and his captives—He slays Turquine and releases his captives—Rescues Sir Kay and rides off in his armor—His adventures in Kay's armor.

TENTH READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 164–178.
Lancelot's adventures in Castle Perilous—Heals the victim of the sorceress—Trapped by a false knight—Escapes and kills his antagonist—The severe penance of Sir Pedivere—The renown of Lancelot.

ELEVENTH READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 179–200.
The stranger's request—He is made a kitchen boy by Sir Kay—Undertakes a perilous adventure—Dismounts Kay and takes his shield and spear—Fights Lancelot and is knighted by him—The damsel flouts the kitchen boy—He slays the black knight and vanquishes the green knight—Dismounts and spares the red knight—The damsel flouts him still.

TWELFTH READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 201–237.
The damsel begs pardon of Beaumains for her disdain—He tells her who he is—The Red Lawns castle and the hanging knights—Beaumains vanquishes the red knight and releases the Lady Lioness—Her plot to win his love—King Arthur at Castle Dangerous—Beaumains is victor in the tournament—He wins and weds the Lady Lioness.

THIRTEENTH READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 238–258.
The boy Tristram and the false queen—He champions King Mark of Cornwall—He vanquishes Sir Marhaus—Is wounded by a poisoned spear and cured by La Belle Isolde—Dismounts Palamides, the Saracen—His misfortune in love.

FOURTEENTH READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 258–274.
Sir Tristram at King Arthur's court—Accepts the wager of battle as champion for King Anguish—Overthrows Sir Blamor—They become warm friends—Tristram woos La Belle Isolde for King Mark—They drink the draught of love—Tristram's adventure and fight with Sir Galahad—Isolde marries King Mark.

FIFTEENTH READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 275–303.
The plot of Palamides—Tristram rescues Isolde—The jealous wrath of King Mark—The drinking-horn of Morgan le Fay—Tristram's escape from his foes—The queen's letter and its effect—Tristram grows mad from love—Isolde seeks to kill herself—Tristram's recovery and exile.

SIXTEENTH READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 304–322.
Tristram and Dinadan and their adventures—He sets out for the tournament at the Castle of Maidens—Meets with Gawaine—Receives letters from Isolde—Is unhorsed by Palamides—Lancelot du Lake takes part in the fray.

SEVENTEENTH READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 322–345.
The gallant deeds at the tournament—The king's knights against Lancelot's—The shame of Palamides—The second day's fight—Lancelot wounds Tristram—The madness of Palamides—The search for Tristram—Gaheris punishes King Mark—Tristram released from prison.

EIGHTEENTH READING. VOL. xiii. Pp. 345–360.
Tristram's new shield—The tournament at Rochedure—Tristram wounds King Arthur—Rescues Palamides from ten enemies—Tristram and Palamides dismounted by a stranger, with covered shield—Learn that it is Lancelot du Lake—Tristram becomes a Knight of the Round Table.

VOL. II

FIRST READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 9–23.
The jest on King Mark—His humiliation at Arthur's court—The murder of Lamorak of Wales—Sir Percivale given the Seat Perilous at the Round Table—Tristram returns to Cornwall—Dinadan's mocking lay

and its effect—Percivale delivers Tristram from prison—Tristram leaves Cornwall with La Belle Isolde—Lancelot welcomes them to Joyous Gard.

SECOND READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 23–36.
Tristram's jest and Dinadan's mishap—Tristram punishes the murderers of Lamorak—Dinadan's merry visit to La Belle Isolde—Dinadan and Gareth—Tristram's joust with Palamides—Old foes become friends.

THIRD READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 36–55.
Tristram and his comrades ride to Lonazep—The letter of the dead king—Palamides takes the adventure—The assault on Tristram—Dinadan in Tristram's helmet—The triumph of Tristram—The story of King Hermance of the Red City—Palamides seeks the Delectable Isle and wins the championship—In the Red City—Palamides slays the murderers and refuses the kingship.

FOURTH READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 55–69.
Palamides returns to Joyous Gard—Adventure with a caitiff knight—Palamides meets his old love, La Belle Isolde—The love jousts of Palamides—Tristram in disguise at the Lonazep tournament—The gallant feats of Tristram and his comrades—Lancelot overthrows them—Tristram dismounts King Arthur—Isolde's joy at his prowess—Palamides wins the prize of honor.

FIFTH READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 70–82.
The peril of accosting a lady on the highway without introduction—The second day of the tournament—The feats of Tristram and Palamides—Palamides disguises himself and fights Tristram—Tristram wins the prize of the day—Isolde's rebuke of Palamides—The joyful visit of Arthur and Lancelot to Tristram's pavilion.

SIXTH READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 83–91.
Third day of the tournament—Arthur and Lancelot overmatched and Tristram and his comrades change sides and join them—Palamides is unhorsed by King Arthur—The day's prize divided between Lancelot and Tristram—The despair of Palamides at Isolde's

rebuke—Palamides fights his brother Safere and rescues the lady-love of the wounded knight.

SEVENTH READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 92–116.
Palamides imprisoned and sentenced to death for the killing of a knight at the tournament—He is rescued—The meeting at Joyous Gard—The song of Palamides and Tristram's challenge—Tristram fights Palamides without armor—Palamides is baptized as a Christian—King Mark's peril—Tristram at Tintagil and his murder by King Mark—Mark is slain in revenge—La Belle Isolde dies of grief and is buried by Tristram's side.

EIGHTH READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 117–141.
Lancelot sees the Sangreal and marries Elaine, under force of enchantment—The perils of Sir Bors—The love frenzy of Lancelot—The knighting of Galahad—The strange inscription in the Seat Perilous—The floating stone and the sword—Galahad taken to the Seat Perilous—He learns that he is the son of Lancelot and Elaine—He draws the sword from the floating stone—The young knight proves his prowess—The Sangreal appears in Arthur's hall and the knights vow to go in quest of it.

NINTH READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 141–155.
The knights of the Round Table keep their vow—The test of the magic shield—It is given to Galahad—The story of the shield—The golden crown and the wounding of Melias—Sir Galahad is sent to purge the Castle of Maidens of its wickedness—He wins the keys of the castle—The felons who held the castle are slain and the castle freed.

TENTH READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 155–173.
The deeds of the questing knights—Lancelot confesses his evil deeds—Percivale's adventure—The ancient King Evelake—Percivale's terrible ride—He saves a lion from a serpent—His strange dream—The disinherited lady—He escapes her wiles and learns that he has been tempted by the foul fiend.

ELEVENTH READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 173–206.
Sir Bors fights for a lady and saves her estate—The mad fury of Lionel—Colgrevance of the Round Table

aids Bors and is slain—A portent from Heaven checks the wrath of Lionel—Bors enters a strange ship and meets Percivale—Galahad wounds Gawaine —Meets Bors and Percivale on the magic ship Faith —The marvellous sword and its story—Solomon's ship and the bed of the sword—The sword girded upon Galahad.

TWELFTH READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 207–225.
The sick lady and the death of Percivale's sister—Ruin falls upon the castle—Lancelot on the vessel that bears the corpse of Percivale's sister—Galahad joins him—The rashness of Lancelot and his return to Camelot—Galahad, Percivale and Bors in King Pellam's castle—The strange things they saw and heard—The curing of King Evelake and King Pellam—They sail on the magic ship to Sarras in Palestine—Galahad made king of Sarras—The holy death of Galahad and the bearing to Heaven of the Sangreal—Death of Percivale and return of Bors to Camelot.

THIRTEENTH READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 226–250.
Lancelot and the jealousy of Guenever—The poisoned apples and death of Sir Patrise—Bors becomes the queen's champion—A stranger knight relieves Bors and proves to be Lancelot—The fair fame of Queen Guenever cleared—The meeting at Astolat—Lancelot loved by Elaine le Blank—The tournament at Camelot—Lancelot wounded and taken to a hermitage—Elaine learns of his hurt and goes in search of him —She finds and nurses him.

FOURTEENTH READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 251–279.
Lancelot takes Elaine to her home—Her love and Lancelot's coldness—Elaine dies of love-sickness—The black barge and the dumb rower—The maiden's corpse brought to Camelot—Guenever goes a-Maying —The evil deed of Meliagrance—Rides in a cart to the dastard's castle—The rescue of the queen—Meliagrance accuses the queen and entraps Lancelot —The combat for the queen's honor—Lancelot appears and slays the dastard knight.

FIFTEENTH READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 280–297.
Lancelot accused before Arthur—He is entrapped in

the queen's chamber by his enemies—How he obtains armor and slays his foes—Guenever sentenced by the king to be burned at the stake—Lancelot and his friends rescue her—She is taken to Joyous Gard—Gawaine's brothers slain in the rescue and he demands vengeance upon Lancelot.

SIXTEENTH READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 297–314.
Lancelot besieged in Joyous Gard—The fury of Gawaine—Fierce fights around the castle—The Pope bids Arthur to become reconciled to his wife and to Lancelot—He agrees to the former and Guenever is taken to Carlisle—The bitterness of Gawaine drives Lancelot from Arthur's court—The fellowship of the Round Table is broken.

SEVENTEENTH READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 314–334.
Gawaine stirs Arthur to war with Lancelot—The siege of Benwick and Gawaine's challenge to Lancelot—Gawaine twice wounded but keeps his malignity—Evil news from England—Mordred makes himself king—Guenever holds the Tower of London against him—Arthur's return—Gawaine's deadly wound and his letter of remorse to Lancelot—Battling for the kingdom—Arthur's dreams—A desperate encounter—Arthur kills Mordred and receives a mortal wound.

EIGHTEENTH READING. VOL. xiv. Pp. 335–348.
The dying Arthur's request to Sir Bevidere and his faithlessness—The flinging of the sword Excalibur into the water and the marvel that followed—The barge with the three queens—Lancelot returns and learns of the fatal events—His bitter grief—Meets Guenever, who has become a nun—Lancelot enters a hermitage and Bors and others join him—The death of Guenever and Lancelot—The great grief for the noble knight.

EXPLANATORY AND SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES—VOL. I

Merlin. Page 20.

A celebrated British prophet and magician, supposed to have lived in Britain about 450 A.D. He is the principal character of one of the Arthurian romances, which bears his name. He is frequently alluded to by the older poets, and especially by Spenser in the "Faerie Queene," and his story is prominent in Tennyson's "Idylls of the King." There was a Scotch Merlin, of whom Scott often speaks, and whose grave, near the Tweed, is still pointed out.

Arthur. Page 22.

As regards the evidence of the actual existence of King Arthur we have spoken in the introduction. The historic statements concerning him are very scanty, but popular tradition credits him with gaining several victories over the Saxons and maintaining a stubborn resistance against the Saxon Cerdic. Mr. Skene, in "The Four Ancient Books of Wales," is confident of the historic position of Arthur. His favorite residence—Camelot of the romances—was the Welsh Caerleon, on the Usk, where his Round Table, with its twelve bravest knights, had its seat. His name was given during the Middle Ages to many places, such as "Arthur's Seat," near Edinburgh, "Arthur's Head," a headland in Cornwall, etc. The imposing ruins of Tintagil Castle, where he is said to have held his court, still remain.

Twelfth Day. Page 25.

The twelfth day after Christmas, the feast of the Epiphany, was once a time of great popular festivities, originally designed in honor of the Three Kings, or Magi, who did homage to the infant Christ. A chief feature of the celebration was the choosing of a king of the feast by means of a bean hidden in the Twelfth Cake. When this cake was cut up and distributed before the feast, the person whose portion contained the bean was made king.

CANDLEMAS. PENTECOST. Page 26.
Candlemas, a festival held on the 2d of February in honor of the Purification of the Virgin Mary, when she presented the infant Christ in the temple. A principal part of the celebration is a procession with many lighted candles. The lighting up the church with candles was prohibited in the Protestant churches of England in 1548, but continues in the Roman Catholic Church. Pentecost, a feast held by the Jews on the fiftieth day after the Passover, became a Christian festival, indicating the day of the descent of the Holy Ghost on the apostles. From early days it has been one of the great festivals of the Christian Church, being chosen as the time for the solemn administration of baptism. Its English name, Whit-Sunday, comes from the white robes worn by the newly baptized.

SHERWOOD FOREST. Page 32.
A hilly country between Nottingham and Worksop, in England, where once stood a royal forest, the traditional scene of many of the exploits of Robin Hood. The forest, as a whole, has disappeared, but many remains of it still exist.

CAMELOT. Page 55.
The capital of Arthur's kingdom, usually identified with Caerleon, on the Usk, in Wales, once the camp of a Roman legion, and possessing a Roman amphitheatre which is now known as "Arthur's Round Table." Malory at one place connects Camelot with Glastonbury, and elsewhere says that it is Winchester, where also a Round Table is still to be seen—an oaken board with the knights' names on it. An actual Camelot formerly existed in Somersetshire, with the remains of an important town and fortress and with the name of Arthur attached to localities about it. All this throws doubt upon the position of the Camelot of the romances.

ST. MICHAEL'S MOUNT. Page 137.
A conical and isolated rock in Mount's Bay, Cornwall, three miles east of Penzance. It is 195 feet high and is crowned with an ancient and picturesque castle, surmounted by a tower, at one angle of which

is a projecting stone lantern, popularly called "St. Michael's Chair."

SARACEN. Page 250.

The name employed by mediæval writers to designate the Mohammedans. The introduction of a knight of this hated race among those associated with King Arthur is a curious circumstance, especially in view of the honorable position given to Palamides as a knight of honor and credit.

TOURNAMENT. Page 312.

The popular military sport of the middle ages, in which knights exhibited their courage and skill in the use of arms. A tournament was usually held on the invitation of some prince, and the combats always began on horseback, though they might be continued on foot. The usual arms were blunted lances and swords, but sharpened arms were occasionally used. The death of Henry II of France in 1559, during a fight in a tournament, practically put an end to this form of sport.

VOL. II

THE SANGREAL. Page 117.

The legend of the Holy Grail, or Sangreal, is found in varied forms in early romance and can be traced through a long development to the stage in which we find it in Malory's work. In its earliest form it appears to be of heathen origin, being a portion of the belongings of the old Celtic divinities. In the romances it is at first a miraculous food-producing vessel, being one of three talismans, the others being a lance which drops blood and a broken sword which only the destined hero can make whole. At a later date the Grail became christianized and became a cup or vessel, in time being regarded as the cup used by Christ at the Last Supper, and afterwards used by Joseph of Arimathea to collect the blood which fell from Christ's wounds when on the cross. There are two legends of the quest of the Grail, one in which Percivale alone is the hero, and the other that given in the text, in which Galahad, Percivale and Bors are combined in the quest. Another form

taken by the Grail is that given it in Wolfram von Eschenbach's "Parzival," about 1210, in which the Grail is a precious stone, fallen from heaven, and given in charge to the Grail dynasty of kings.

JOSEPH OF ARIMATHEA. Page 117.
A rich and noble-minded Israelite and a member of the Great Council or Sanhedrim of the Jews. He opposed the purpose of his colleagues to bring about the death of Jesus, but fear prevented him from openly professing himself a disciple. At the moment of the crucifixion courage came to him and he begged Pilate to give him the body of Jesus, which he reverently buried in his own rock tomb. Ancient tradition makes him carry the Grail to Britain about the year 63, and settle at Glastonbury. Here he founded the first Christian church in the island, and planted on Wearyall hill his pilgrim's staff. It grew into the Holy Thorn, which blossomed miraculously every Christmas Eve until it was cut down by a Puritan. Grafts from this famous thorn flourish still and one is said to have blossomed on the night of January 5, 1884, at Sutton Payntz, near Weymouth.

FEAST OF THE ASSUMPTION. Page 239.
In the third or fourth century a tradition arose that after the death of Mary, her soul and body were taken to Heaven by Christ and the angels. This was accepted as true by Gregory of Tours in 590, and gave rise to a church festival instituted in the East at the beginning of the seventh century, and of the ninth in the West. It is kept on the 15th of August.

PAPAL BULL AND INTERDICT. Page 303.
A bull, in this significance, is a letter or document issued by the Pope. In the middle ages it signified the capsule of the seal appended to letters from emperors and popes, then the seal itself, and later the document to which the seal was appended. Its use is now usually restricted to papal documents issued with certain formalities. The word comes from the Latin *bulla*, "a bubble of water," thence "a round ball of any kind."

An Interdict in the Roman Catholic Church withdraws the right of administering certain sacraments, celebrating public worship, or using the solemn

burial-service. It could be made to affect a locality, a person or persons, or both place and persons. It was designed to awaken the national conscience to some act of criminal nature by including all in the penalty. The general interdict has long been disused.

GREAT SEAL OF THE REALM. Page 304.

The royal seal used by sovereigns upon formal deeds or documents. They were used early in France, but the earliest regular great seal of England was that used by Edward the Confessor, modelled after the French pattern. A new Great Seal is made for each new sovereign (or on occasion of a change of arms or style), the old one being formally broken.

THE TOWER OF LONDON. Page 324.

The Tower of London is one of the most ancient monuments of that great city. Tradition traces its origin back beyond the times of Alfred the Great, who is stated to have rebuilt and strengthened a work already existing on that site. In the middle ages it was a powerful fortress, and long afterwards existed as a government prison whose inmates included many members of the nobility and even members of the royal family. It is now a government store-house and armory, and still, in some sense, a stronghold. The ground occupied is more than twelve acres in area, and is surrounded by a moat. This is usually dry, but the garrison are able to flood it. Within the moat is a lofty castellated wall, with massive flanking towers; a second and higher wall rises within, enclosing numerous buildings, the centre of all being the lofty keep or donjon known as the White Tower, once the court of the Plantagenet kings.

REVIEW QUESTIONS—VOL. I

1. What famous magician held in his hands the destiny of England? Page 20.
2. Through what portent was Arthur chosen to be king? Page 27.
3. How did Merlin prove Arthur's right of birth to the throne? Page 37.
4. How did Merlin save Arthur's life? Page 42.
5. In what way did Arthur get an enchanted sword? Page 44.
6. Whom did Arthur choose for Queen? Page 47.
7. What famous wedding gift did King Leodegrance give with his daughter? Pages 47–48.
8. What is the story of the "Seat Perilous"? Page 49.
9. How was an enchanted sword brought to Arthur's court and by whom was it drawn? Pages 55–57.
10. What peril went with the sword? Page 58.
11. What was the gift asked by the Lady of the Lake, and to what did her request lead? Page 59.
12. What was the "dolorous stroke" and what was its strange effect? Page 80.
13. What was Balin's doom and what was done with his sword? Pages 86–87.
14. How was Merlin fatally entrapped by the folly of love? Pages 89–93.
15. How did Morgan le Fay, Arthur's sister, lay a plot for his death? Pages 100–108.
16. How did Arthur lose his scabbard and how was he tricked by enchantment? Pages 113–115.
17. How did the damsel Nimue, who locked the enchanter Merlin in the cavern, obtain a husband? Pages 133–135.
18. How did the ablest of knights, Lancelot du Lake, become one of the Round Table circle? Pages 137–138.
19. What knight overcame sixty-four of Arthur's knights and imprisoned them and by whom were they released? Pages 154–158.
20. How did Lancelot win for Arthur the castle of Tintagil, which had belonged to Arthur's mother, Queen Igraine? Pages 161–163.

21. What is the story of Sir Kay's kitchen-boy? Pages 179–186.

22. How did the kitchen-boy prove himself a good knight? Pages 187–212.

23. What reward did he obtain? Page 218.

24. How did the story of the kitchen-boy end? Page 237.

25. Who was Tristram of Lyonesse? Page 238.

26. How did he win the love of a wicked queen? Pages 239–240.

27. What was his first knightly deed? Pages 243–248.

28. By whom was he cured of a poisoned wound and with what result? Pages 250–253.

29. What boon did Tristram ask of King Anguish of Ireland? Page 268.

30. What fatal draught did Tristram and Isolde drink together? Page 269.

31. What was the magic horn of Morgan le Fay? Page 284.

32. What was the effect of hopeless love on Sir Tristram? Pages 294–298.

33. Who was the merriest knight in King Arthur's court? Pages 304–310.

34. What was the effect of love on the Saracen knight? Pages 329–330.

35. What brought Lancelot and Tristram into loving amity? Page 357.

36. How did Tristram become a knight of the Round Table? Page 360.

VOL. II

1. What knight was chosen to fill the Seat Perilous at the Round Table? Pages 15–16.

2. How came Tristram to elope with La Belle Isolde from King Mark's court and where did he take her? Pages 19–22.

3. What great adventure was undertaken and performed by Palamides, the Saracen? Page 40.

4. Who won the prizes of valor and skill at the tournament at Lonazep? Pages 68, 79, 85.

5. What trouble came to Palamides and how was he rescued? Pages 92–96.

6. What led Palamides the Saracen to become a Christian? Pages 102–106.

7. What cruel fate came to the lovers Tristram and Isolde? Pages 115–116.

8. What is the story of the Sangreal? Page 117.

9. What strange things happened to Lancelot du Lake? Pages 118–119.

10. What occurred to Sir Bors, Lancelot's nephew, in King Pellam's castle? Pages 120–125.

11. What marvel happened at Arthur's court when Galahad came thither? Pages 129–135.

12. How did Galahad get sword and shield? Pages 137–145.

13. How was Lancelot led to see the Holy Grail? Page 158.

14. What strange adventures came to Percivale and how was he tempted? Pages 163–173.

15. What happened to Sir Bors? Pages 180–193.

16. What did the three knights find in the magic ship? Pages 199–200.

17. Who girt Galahad with the magic sword and what was her fate? Pages 205–209.

18. How did Lancelot a third time see the Sangreal? Page 214–216.

19. By whom was King Pellam cured of the wound given him by Balin in the dolorous stroke? Page 220.

20. How did the quest of the Sangreal end? Pages 221–225.

21. What sad mishap came to Queen Guenever? Pages 229–230.

22. By what champion was she saved from death? Pages 235–238.

23. Who was the Fair Maid of Astolat and how did she save Lancelot's life? Pages 241–254.

24. What was the pathetic end of the story of Elaine le Blank? Pages 256–259.

25. How did Lancelot rescue Guenever from the castle of Meliagrance? Pages 266–268.

26. How did Lancelot a second time save Guenever from death? Pages 269–278.

27. How was Lancelot entrapped by his enemies and how did he escape? Pages 283–288.

28. How was Guenever saved by Lancelot from death at the stake, and where was she taken? Pages 292–294.

29. What sad event turned Gawaine from friendship to bitter enmity of Lancelot? Page 296.

30. How was the siege of Joyous Gard ended? Page 303.

31. What led Lancelot to leave England? Pages 310–313.
32. What led King Arthur to invade Lancelot's realm? Page 314.
33. What put an end to the war? Page 323.
34. What did Queen Guenever do in Arthur's behalf? Pages 324–325.
35. What led Gawaine to write to Lancelot? Pages 326–327.
36. What fatal end came to the war between Arthur and Mordred? Pages 331–334.
37. What is the story of Arthur's sword? Pages 335–337.
38. What was the end of Arthur's career? Page 338.
39. What befell Lancelot and Guenever and how were they united in death? Pages 345–347.

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF HISTORICAL LITERATURE

FOUR ANCIENT BOOKS OF WALES, containing the "Cymric Poems of the Sixth Century." Also BOOK OF THE DEAN OF LISMORE and CHRONICLES OF THE PICTS AND SCOTS. *Skene, William Forbes.*
Storehouses of Celtic legend, the work of a Scotch historian and antiquarian of great erudition.

ASSERTIO ARTHURI. *Leland, John.*
Leland, born about 1506 and commissioned "king's antiquary," with power to search the records of colleges, cathedrals, etc., throughout England, labored with gigantic industry and collected a vast mass of materials, which have served as a mine for later antiquarians.

HISTORY OF THE ANGLO-SAXONS. *Turner, Sharon.*
A highly esteemed and valuable work dealing with the period in which the Arthurian legends are laid and giving the history of the epoch so far as any authentic records exist.

THE TWO LOST CENTURIES OF BRITAIN. *Babcock, William H.*
This work possesses no small value for the student of the Arthurian romances, as it is confined to that obscure period in which the knights of the Round Table are supposed to have flourished, and deals at length with the question of the existence of King Arthur, the localities of his career, and the probable events of his reign and his struggle with the invading Saxons.

CELTIC BRITAIN and THE ARTHURIAN LEGEND. *Rhys, John.*
The work of a scholar of high reputation as a delver into Celtic philosophy and legend. The two works named are excellent expositions of the subjects treated.

JOURNEY THROUGH ARTHURIAN SCOTLAND and ARTHURIAN LOCALITIES. *Stuart-Glennie.*
The author followed the track of the Arthur story through its Scotch and English resting places and gives much interesting information concerning local legends.

CONTES POPULAIRES DES ANCIENS BRETONS and MYRDHINN OU L'ENCHANTEUR MERLIN. *Villemarqué, Hersart de la.*
Here the Breton localities and tales of the Arthurian legend are traced and the story of the famous enchanter is treated.

HISTORIA BRITONUM and VITA MERLIN. *Geoffrey of Monmouth.*
These works give us the basis of the story of the enchanter Merlin, which forms the subject of one cycle of the Arthurian romances and occupies a prominent place in Tennyson's "Idylls of the King." Geoffrey's "British History" was translated from the Latin by Aaron Thompson in 1718.

STUDIES ON THE LEGEND OF THE HOLY GRAIL. *Nutt, Alfred.*
This work is written with special reference to the hypotheses of the Celtic origin of the remarkable Grail legend, which play so prominent part in Malory's work, and give a portion of it a high purpose and moral application which the remainder largely lacks. In the *Archæological Review*, June, 1889, this author considers the alleged Buddhist influence on the legend.

HISTOIRE LITTÉRAIRE DE LA FRANCE. *Paris, Gaston.*
In volume 30 of this work the Grail legend is dealt with. This author edited a large number of "Chansons de Geste" in early French, and is an authority on the subject.

CHRONOLOGICAL COURSE OF READING

ALL OF THE EVENTS ARRANGED CHRONOLOGICALLY, TOGETHER WITH REFERENCES TO THE VOLUMES AND PAGES WHERE THEY ARE FOUND, SO THAT ONE MAY READ THE CONTENTS OF THE ENTIRE SERIES IN CHRONOLOGICAL ORDER, IF DESIRED.

Date B. C.	Event	Vol.	Page
1184?	Siege of Troy	x,	8
884?	Lycurgus forms the Spartan laws	x,	51
753	Rome is founded	xi,	11
668	Conquest of Messenia	x,	62
660	Beginning of history in Japan	xii,	5
594	Legislation of Solon, archon at Athens	x	68
560	Pisistratus tyrant at Athens	x,	76
554?	Crœsus captive to Cyrus	x,	84
551	Birth of Confucius, the Chinese sage	xii,	150
540	Era of Pythagoras, the philosopher	x,	109
532	Polycrates, tyrant of Samos	x,	100
516	Darius invades Scythia	x,	117
510	The Pisistratidæ banished from Athens	x,	127
510	The kings expelled from Rome	xi,	41
500	Laws of Cleisthenes	x,	175
497	Battle of Lake Regillus	xi,	50
495	Revolt of the Roman People	xi,	55
495	The Tribunes of the People instituted	xi,	58
493	Mardonius, the Persian, invades Greece	x,	128
490	Greek victory at Marathon	x,	133
481	Expedition of Xerxes to Greece	x,	142
480	Battle of Thermopylæ	x,	150
480	Battle of Salamis	x,	162
479	Battle of Platæa	x,	170
477	Beginning of Athenian supremacy	x,	189
456	The Long Walls at Athens completed	x,	190
456	Cincinnatus, the Roman patriot	xi,	74
451	The Decemvirate: Laws of the Twelve Tables	xi,	76

Date B. C.	Event	Vol.	Page
448	Overthrow of the Decemvirs	xi,	84
444	Pericles becomes supreme at Athens	x,	191
431	The Peloponnesian war begins	x,	194
430	The Plague at Athens; death of Pericles	x,	196
428	The revolt of Mytilene	x,	200
427	Destruction of Platæa by Sparta	x,	205
415	Athenian expedition to Sicily	x,	214
405	Loss of the Athenian fleet	x,	216
404	Athens surrenders to the Spartans	x,	218
403	The siege of Veii by Rome	xi,	87
401	Battle of Cunaxa; retreat of the Ten Thousand	x,	237
399	Prosecution and death of Socrates	x,	230
393	The Long Walls of Athens rebuilt	x,	220
389	The Gauls take Rome	xi,	96
387	Camillus, the second founder of Rome	xi,	103
382	The Spartans capture the Theban citadel	x,	248
379	The Spartans expelled from Thebes	x,	254
371	Congress of the Greek States at Sparta	x,	262
370	The Thebans invade Spartan soil	x,	267
363	The Plague at Rome	xi,	105
357	The Sacred War begins	x,	290
346	End of the Sacred War	x,	294
343	Conquest of Syracuse by Timoleon	x,	280
338	Battle of Chæronea	x,	294
338	Greece subjugated by Philip of Macedon	x,	294
335	Alexander the Great destroys Thebes	x,	295
333	Alexander cuts the Gordian knot	x,	297
333	Battle of Issus	x,	299
332	Siege and capture of Tyre	x,	300
332	Conquest of Egypt; Alexandria founded	x,	301
331	Battle of Arbela: Conquest of Persia	x,	302
327	Alexander in India	x,	304
323	Death of Alexander	x,	304
322	Death of Demosthenes, Greece's greatest orator	x,	314
321	A Roman army passes under the yoke	xi,	123
280	Pyrrhus of Epirus invades Italy	x, xi,	325 126
280	Pyrrhus defeats the Romans	x,	329
280	The Archæan League instituted	x,	339
274	Pyrrhus defeated and leaves Italy	x,	333
264	The Romans invade Sicily	xi,	127

Date B. C.	Event	Vol.	Page
264	First show of Gladiators at Rome	xi,	274
260	The first Roman fleet built	xi,	128
255	The Carthaginians defeat and capture Regulus	xi,	132
250	The cruel death of Regulus	xi,	134
246	Hoangti, China's greatest emperor, succeeds	xii,	156
235	Gates of Temple of Janus shut	xi,	135
219	Hannibal besieges and takes Saguntum	xi,	137
218	Hannibal crosses the Alps	xi,	141
216	Great victory at Cannæ	xi,	146
214	Building of Chinese Wall begins	xii,	158
213	The Books of China burned	xii,	165
212	The Romans capture Syracuse	xi,	153
207	Hasdrubal, Hannibal's brother, defeated	xi,	148
202	Defeat of Hannibal at Zama	xi,	148
188	Conquest of Sparta	x,	340
183	Death of Philopœman	x,	346
183	Death of Hannibal	xi,	151
146	The Romans take Corinth	x,	347
146	The Romans take Carthage	xi,	162
135	The Chinese invade Mongolia	xii,	187
133	Tiberius Gracchus reforms the laws	xi,	168
121	Caius Gracchus, the reformer	xi,	170
111	War begins with Jugurtha	xi,	176
106	Death of Jugurtha	xi,	179
102	Marius defeats the Germans	xi,	180
90	The Social War begins	xi,	182
88	Sulla occupies Rome	xi,	183
87	Revenge of Marius	xi,	189
86	Athens taken by Sulla	x,	350
83	Sulla defeats the Marian party	xi,	191
82	Sulla massacres his opponents	xi,	194
76	Cæsar punishes the pirates	xi,	206
73	Revolt of Spartacus and the Gladiators	xi,	199
71	Spartacus killed and the rebellion suppressed	xi,	202
60	The first Triumvirate formed	xi,	209
58	The war in Gaul begins	xi,	210
55	Cæsar invades Britain	xi,	210
49	Cæsar crosses the Rubicon	xi,	212
48	Pompey flees from Rome	xi,	215
48	Battle of Pharsalia	xi,	215
48	Pompey slain ; Cæsar dictator	xi,	217

Date B. C.	Event	Vol.	Page
46	Cæsar reforms the calendar	xi,	219
44	Assassination of Cæsar	xi,	223
43	Second Triumvirate formed	xi,	225
42	Battle of Philippi	xi,	226
41	Cleopatra visits Antony at Tarsus	xi,	228
32	War between Octavius and Antony	xi,	231
31	Battle of Actium : flight of Antony	xi,	232
30	Deaths of Antony and Cleopatra	xi,	234
27	Octavius made emperor, with title of Augustus	xi,	235
25	Gates of Temple of Janus shut	xi,	235
A. D.			
9	Revolt of Hermann and the Germans	v,	11
9	Defeat of Varus and destruction of his army	v,	11
14	Death of Augustus	v,	14
14	Tiberius emperor of Rome	v,	14
14	Germanicus invades Germany	v,	14
17	The Germans defeated	v,	16
37	Caligula becomes emperor	xi,	236
41	Caligula slain for his excesses	xi,	242
54	Nero becomes emperor	xi,	243
57	Panchow, a Chinese general, invades Central Asia	xii,	198
61	Revolt of the Britons under Boadicea	xi,	252
64	The great fire at Rome	xi,	256
64	Nero accuses and persecutes the Christians	xi,	260
68	The death of Nero by suicide	xi,	270
69	Vitellius the glutton made emperor	xi,	281
69	Vitellius slain and Vespasian succeeds	xi,	288
70	Siege and capture of Jerusalem	xi,	293
71	Yamato, Japanese legendary hero, born	xii,	19
79	Eruption of Vesuvius and death of Pliny	xi,	301
79	Destruction of Pompeii and Herculaneum	xi,	305
81	Domitian emperor of Rome	xi,	309
96	Reigns of the five good emperors begin	xi,	309
180	Commodus becomes emperor	xi,	309
193	Septimius Severus becomes emperor	xi,	310
200	Maximin, the Thracian, joins the army	xi,	310
201	Japanese invasion of Corea	xii,	31
211	Caracalla becomes emperor	xi,	309
222	Alexander Severus becomes emperor	xi,	312
239	Assassination of Alexander Severus	xi,	313

Date A. D.	Event	Vol.	Page
239	Maximin, the Thracian peasant, emperor.	xi,	313
270	Zenobia, queen of Palmyra, defies Rome..	x,	353
272	Capture of Palmyra	x,	356
313	Constantine becomes a Christian	xi,	320
323	Christianity the religion of the empire....	xi,	320
324	Constantinople founded	xi,	321
325	The gladiatorial shows prohibited	xi,	278
330	Constantinople made capital of the empire	xi,	321
376	The Goths cross the Danube	xi,	326
378	Valens defeated by the Goths	xi,	329
395	Death of the emperor Theodosius	xi,	331
395	The Goths under Alaric invade Greece ...	xi,	331
400	Alaric invades and ravages Italy	xi,	332
406	German invasion of Italy	xi,	334
410	Capture and sack of Rome by Alaric	xi,	338
420	Lieouyu, a great general, usurps the throne of China	xii,	210
434	The gladiatorial shows suppressed	xi,	278 333
451	The Huns in Gaul	xi,	339
451	Attila and the Huns besiege Orleans	vi,	10
451	Defeat of the Huns at Châlons	vi,	15
455	The Vandals take and plunder Rome	xi,	339
476	Augustulus last emperor of the West	xi,	340
476	Odoacer the Goth becomes King of Italy	xi,	340
496	Clovis, the Frank conqueror, becomes a Christian	vi,	27
529	Justinian closes the schools of philosophy at Athens	x,	368
552	Coreans bring new institutions to Japan ..	xii,	35
568	The Lombards invade Italy	v,	22
597	Missionaries sent to England	iv,	9
597	King Ethelbert accepts Christianity	iv,	14
614	Cruel death of Queen Brunehild	vi,	39
626	Taitsong the Great, emperor of China	xii,	220
645	The Shoguns gain supremacy in Japan....	xii,	38
680	The good King Wamba reigns in Spain ...	vii,	7
683	Wou, a great queen, rules in China	xii,	225
710	Count Julian betrays Spain	vii,	24
711	The Arabs under Tarik invade Spain	vii,	25
711	The Goths defeated at the Guadalete	vii,	26
711	Death of King Roderic	vii,	28
717	Pelayo, the patriot warrior of Spain	vii,	61

Date A. D.	Event	Vol.	Page
717	First Spanish victory over the Arabs	vii,	63
756	Abdurrahman founds a new Moslem kingdom in Spain	vii,	73
772	Charlemagne invades Saxony	v,	37
778	Charlemagne invades Spain	vi,	41
778	Death of Roland the hero	vi,	42
780	Wittekind defeated and Saxons baptized	v,	39
791	Charlemagne invades Hungary	vi,	50
800	Charlemagne crowned emperor of the West	vi,	63
800	Completion of conquest of Old Castile from the Moors	vii,	67
803	The Avars subdued and baptized as Christians	vi,	57
838	The Northmen capture Dublin	ix,	64
845	The Northmen take Paris	v,	47
853	Hasting the Northman in France and Italy	v,	48
864	Rurik the Northman made King of Novgorod	viii,	15
874	Iceland is discovered by the Northmen	ix,	66
878	King Alfred's escape from the Danes	iv,	31
878	Alfred defeats the Danes	iv,	32
882	Oleg becomes King of all Russia	viii,	17
885	Gorm the Old founds the Kingdom of Denmark	ix,	42
887	Paris besieged by the Northmen	v,	54
889	The Taira family supreme in Japan	xii,	42
895	Harold Fair-Haired founds the Kingdom of Norway	ix,	37
912	Rollo the Northman granted the province of Normandy	ix,	40
		v,	55
973	Otho II crowned emperor of Germany	v,	69
978	Otho besieges Paris	v,	70
980	Otho invades Italy	v,	72
986	Greenland settled by Northmen	ix,	66
1000?	King Vladimir of Russia becomes a Christian	viii,	37
1000	A year of superstitious terror	i,	9
1000	The Northmen discover America	i,	10
1007	Thorfinn the Greenlander visits Vineland	i,	23
1015	Yaroslaf becomes king of Russia	viii,	46
1017	Canute the Great becomes king of England	ix,	123
1018	Yaroslaf gives Russia a code of laws	viii,	46

Date A. D.	Event	Vol.	Page
1030	Olaf the Saint christianizes Norway	ix,	120
1040	Birth of Ruy Diaz, the Cid	vii,	82
1042	Denmark and Norway united under King Magnus	ix,	132
1062	Henry IV emperor of Germany	v,	77
1066	Battle of Stamford Bridge; death of Harold of Norway	ix,	143
1066	Battle of Hastings; death of Harold of England	iv,	50
1066	William the Conqueror subdues England	iv,	53
1077	Henry IV submits to Pope Gregory VII	v,	88
1081	Alfonso of Castile captures Toledo	vii,	88
1084	Henry IV takes Rome	v,	90
1094	Ruy Diaz captures Valencia	vii,	90
1095	The Crusade preached by Peter the Hermit	vi,	69
1095	The Council of Clermont held	vi,	71
1096	Peter the Hermit leads a multitude to the East	vi,	73
1097	The Crusading army marches to Palestine	vi,	73
1099	The Crusaders capture Jerusalem	vi,	79
1099	Death of Ruy Diaz, the Cid	vii,	93
1100	Death of William Rufus	iv,	77
1120	Prince William, son of Henry I, drowned	iv,	86
1139	Civil war in England between Stephen and Maud	iv,	93
1142	Maud besieged at Oxford	iv,	105
1153	Stephen wins the throne	iv,	105
1153	The military caste supreme in Japan	xii,	42
1157	Frederick Barbarossa takes Milan	v,	105
1158	Capture and destruction of Milan	v,	108
1162	Birth of Genghis Khan	xii,	231
1162	Valdemar I king of Denmark	ix,	169
1176	Battle of Lignano; defeat of Frederick Barbarossa	v,	111
1184	Sverre wins the throne of Norway	ix,	145
1188	Frederick Barbarossa joins the Crusade	v,	113
1190	He is drowned in the Cydnus	v,	116
1192	The Shoguns rule Japan	xii,	60
1199	The Hojo clan gains control	xii,	61
1202	Valdemar II king of Denmark	ix,	176
1210	The Mongols invade China	xii,	234
1212	Victory of Navas de Tolosa breaks the Moorish power in Spain	vii,	98

Date A. D.	Event	Vol.	Page
1225	The province of Hia conquered	xii,	235
1229	Jerusalem delivered to Frederick II	v,	122
1235	Batou, the Mongol, invades Russia	viii,	50
1246	Christian friars visit the Mongols	xii,	226
1250	Death of Emperor Frederick II	v,	126
1250	Conquest of Finland by Sweden	ix,	189
1260	The Flagellants appear in Italy	v,	130
1268	The Mongols besiege Sianyang	xii,	242
1274	Marco Polo visits China	xii,	256
1280	The Mongols complete conquest of China.	xii,	250
1281	The Mongols invade Japan and are repelled	xii,	67
1282	The Sicilian Vespers	v,	137
1298	Battle of Falkirk; defeat of the Scotch	iv,	145
1300	The first war between Sweden and Russia	ix,	196
1308	The Austrians expelled from Switzerland	v,	159
1314	Victory of Bruce at Bannockburn	iv,	149
1315	Swiss victory at Morgarten	v,	170
1331	The Shoguns of Japan maintain their supremacy	xii,	61
1348	The Black Death in Europe	v,	163
1348	Edward III besieges Calais	iv,	162
1348	The Wat Tyler insurrection	iv,	185
1349	The Flagellants appear in Germany	v,	167
1356	Battle of Poitiers in France	iv,	174
1356	King John of France taken prisoner	iv,	181
1362	Dmitri becomes Grand Prince of Moscow	viii,	55
1365	The Free Companies invade Castile	vii,	156
1366	The Mongols expelled from China	xii,	267
1367	Captivity of Bertrand du Guesclin	vi,	103
1368	Death of Pedro the Cruel of Castile	vii,	171
1376	Death of the Black Prince	vi,	114
1380	Defeat of the Mongols in Russia	viii,	58
1380	Death of Du Guesclin	vi,	114
1386	Battle of Sempach; heroism of Arnold Winkelried	v,	187
1397	The Calmar Union combines Denmark, Sweden and Norway	ix,	215
1407	The Swiss Confederation wins liberty	v,	191
1412	Death of Queen Margaret of Scandinavia	ix,	215
1415	Burning of John Huss	v,	182
1419	Revolt of the Hussites under Ziska	v,	182
1420	Emperor Sigismund invades Bohemia	v,	198

Date A. D.	Event	Vol.	Page
1422	Ziska defeats the emperor and frees Bohemia	v,	198
1422	Death of John Ziska	v,	206
1429	Joan of Arc before Charles VII	vi,	120
1429	Joan raises the siege of Orleans	vi,	126
1431	Joan dies at the stake	vi,	132
1433	Suppression of the Hussite revolt	v,	209
1453	Constantinople taken by the Turks	v,	210
1456	Raising of the siege of Belgrade	v,	215
1462	Ivan III becomes first Czar of Russia	viii,	60
1468	Louis XI and Charles the Bold take Liege	vi,	156
1476	Charles the Bold defeated at Granson	vi,	159
1476	Charles the Bold defeated at Morat	vi,	161
1477	Charles defeated and slain at Nancy	vi,	164
1478	Ivan III becomes ruler of Novgorod	viii,	72
1480	Russians repel a Tartar invasion	viii,	61
1481	Alhama captured from the Moors	vii,	110
1490	Exploits of Del Pulgar before Granada	vii,	137
1492	Surrender of Granada	vii,	143
1492	Columbus starts on his voyage	vii,	151
1492	Columbus discovers America	iii,	7
1492	Expulsion of the Jews from Spain	vii,	249
1492	Perkin Warbeck claims the English throne	iv,	200
1493	Return of Columbus	vii,	151
1495	Ojeda subdues the Caribs	iii,	19
1499	Ojeda discovers and names Venezuela	iii,	22
1500	Hans of Denmark defeated by the Ditmarshers	ix,	239
1503	Gonsalvo de Cordova defeats the French	vii,	179
1503	Gonsalvo wins Naples from the French	vii,	180
1506	Death of Columbus	vii,	155
1509	Cardinal Ximenes captures Oran	vii,	195
1510	Balboa reaches Darien	iii,	35
1511	Cortez aids in the conquest of Cuba	iii,	25
1513	Ponce de Leon discovers Florida	ii,	9
1514	Balboa discovers the Pacific Ocean	iii,	40
1517	Luther's protest against indulgences	v,	217
1519	Cortez sails for Mexico	iii,	32
1519	Gustavus Vasa escapes from Denmark	ix,	256
1520	Cortez and the Noche Triste	iii,	58
1520	The Battle of Otumba in Mexico	iii,	66
1520	The Field of the Cloth of Gold	iv,	213
1520	Christian II crowned king of Sweden	ix,	241

Date A. D.	Event	Vol.	Page
1520	The blood bath at Stockholm	ix,	246
1521	The Diet of Worms	v,	224
1523	Duke of Bourbon flees from France	vi,	176
1523	Gustavus Vasa elected king of Sweden	ix,	271
1523	Christian II deposed by the Danes	ix,	273
1524	The peasant revolt in Germany	v,	239
1524	Siege of Milan and death of Bayard	vii,	183
1525	Battle of Pavia; capture of Francis I.	vi, vii,	182 183
1525	The Anabaptist insurrection	v,	241
1526	Francis I freed from captivity	vii,	189
1527	Capture of Rome by Bourbon's army	vi, vii,	185 188
1531	Pizarro lands in Peru	iii,	71
1532	Pizarro captures the Inca	iii,	78
1532	The Inca's golden ransom	iii,	81
1535	The Siege of Münster	v,	248
1536	Suppression of the Anabaptists	v,	251
1539	De Soto lands in Florida	ii,	14
1540	Gonzalo Pizarro's expedition	iii,	86
1540	Coronado's expedition from Mexico	iii,	102
1541	Orellano's descent of the Amazon	iii,	93
1541	De Soto discovers the Mississippi	ii,	19
1541	Charles V repulsed from Algiers	vii,	198
1542	Death of De Soto	ii,	21
1549	Francis Xavier enters Japan	xii,	101
1553	The Araucanians repel the Spaniards	iii,	120
1555	Charles V resigns the throne	vii,	202
1558	Charles dies in a monastery	vii,	212
1558	Trade begins with Siberia	viii,	80
1568	Insurrection of the Moriscos	vii,	257
1568	Death of the mad Prince Carlos	vii,	223
1571	Don John's great victory at Lepanto	vii,	224
1571	Moscow burned by the Mongols	viii,	76
1571	Nobunaga attacks the Buddhists	xii,	76
1572	St. Bartholomew's Day	vi,	188
1576	Frobisher seeks the Northwest Passage	i,	28
1578	Sir Francis Drake in the Pacific	iii,	127
1578	He wins spoil at Valparaiso and Lima	iii,	129
1579	Reaches California and sails round the globe	iii,	135
1580	Yermak invades Siberia	viii,	82
1581	Great progress of Christianity in Japan	xii,	102

Date A. D.	Event	Vol.	Page
1584	English settle Roanoke Island	ii,	23
1587	The settlement disappears	ii,	27
1587	The missionaries banished from Japan	xii,	107
1589	Henry IV proclaimed king of France	vi,	197
1590	Battle of Ivry won by Henry	vi,	202
1593	Henry becomes a Catholic	vi,	209
1595	Raleigh seeks El Dorado	iii,	143
1595	His voyage up the Orinoco	iii,	147
1598	Second invasion of Corea by Japan	xii,	85
1598	Boris, a usurper, wins the Russian throne	viii,	89
1600	The city of Yedo founded	xii,	90
1605	A pretender seeks the Russian throne	viii,	91
1605	Boris dies and the false Dmitri reigns	viii,	95
1606	Dmitri assassinated on account of his clemency	viii,	98
1608	Captivity and rescue of John Smith	ii,	33
1609	Champlain attacks the Iroquois	i,	43
1610	Expulsion of the Moriscos from Spain	vii,	254
1610	Henry IV of France crowned and murdered	vi,	210
1611	Gustavus Adolphus becomes king of Sweden	ix,	310
1613	Michael Romanof elected czar; Romanof dynasty begins	viii,	109
1615	Persecution of Christians in Japan	xii,	109
1617	Raleigh returns to the Orinoco	iii,	150
1618	Execution of Raleigh	iii,	150
1618	The Thirty Years' War begins	v,	254
1618	The Manchus invade China	xii,	277
1622	Indian Massacre in Virginia	ii,	41
1623	Prince Charles of England seeks a bride in Spain	iv,	241
1625	Wallenstein's conquering march	v,	252
1628	Siege and defence of Stralsund	v,	259
1631	Tilly takes and ravages Magdeburg	v,	266
1631	Gustavus defeats Tilly at Leipsic	v, 267 ix,	312
1632	Wallenstein defeated at Lützen	v,	268
1632	Death of Gustavus Adolphus	v,	271
1634	Assassination of Wallenstein	v,	276
1635	A Manchu general takes title of Emperor of China	xii,	282
1636	Richelieu quells a conspiracy	vi,	218

Date A. D.	Event	Vol.	Page
1637	A Christian insurrection in Japan	xii,	110
1640	Career of a Chinese bandit chief	xii,	281
1641	The conspiracy of Cinq-Mars	vi,	225
1642	Death of Richelieu	vi,	232
1643	Second Indian massacre in Virginia	ii,	46
1646	The War of the Fronde in France	vi,	233
1650	Russians cross Siberia to the Pacific	viii,	84
1651	Defeat of Charles II at Worcester	iv,	276
1651	Escape of Charles II from England	iv,	276
1652	Van Tromp defeats the English fleet	iv,	298
1653	Cromwell dismisses the Parliament	iv,	297
1654	Cromwell made Lord Protector	iv,	304
1655	The English capture Jamaica	iii,	197
1658	Charles X overruns Denmark	ix,	322
1660	The Regicides in New England	i,	73
1662	The Man with the Iron Mask	vi,	257
1670	Morgan, the Freebooter, takes Panama.	iii, vii,	159 270
1673	Marquette and Joliet explore the Mississippi	ii,	62
1676	The Bacon rebellion in Virginia	ii,	51
1676	Governor Berkeley's revenge	ii,	60
1680	Hennepin ascends the Mississippi	ii,	62
1682	La Salle explores the Mississippi to its mouth	ii,	63
1683	The Turks defeated at Vienna	v,	277
1685	Captain Phips discovers a Spanish treasure-ship	i,	63
1687	The Charter of Connecticut	i,	80
1688	The Freebooters cross Nicaragua	iii,	173
1688	Early studies of Peter the Great	viii,	116
1689	Peter succeeds to the throne	viii,	122
1689	The siege of Londonderry	iv,	305
1690	Sir William Phips takes Port Royal; defeated at Quebec	i,	67
1693	Captain Wadsworth defies Governor Fletcher	i,	88
1696	The Chinese invade Mongolia	xii,	294
1697	Belgrade taken from the Turks	v,	287
1697	Peter the Great studies shipbuilding in Holland	viii,	123
1698	Revolt of the Strelitz	viii,	138
1698	Their defeat by General Gordon	viii,	139

Date A. D.	Event	Vol.	Page
1698	Peter's cruel revenge	viii,	139
1698	Peter's edict against beards	viii,	142
1700	The edict against long cloaks	viii,	145
1700	The Russian year made to begin January 1	viii,	147
1700	The buccaneers suppressed	vii,	274
1700	Charles XII of Sweden defeats Denmark and Russia	ix,	326
1701	Charles XII overruns Poland	ix,	336
1703	Peter the Great founds St. Petersburg	viii,	158
1704	Gibraltar taken by the British	vii,	285
1709	Defeat of Charles XII at Pultowa	ix,	340
1710	The French attack Rio de Janeiro	iii,	163
1711	A French expedition captures Rio	iii,	168
1714	The rise of Alberoni to power in Spain	vii,	276
1714	The Golden Horseshoe expedition	ii,	88
1715	Scottish insurrection for the Old Pretender	iv,	323
1718	Death in battle of Charles XII of Sweden.	ix,	342
1718	New Orleans founded	ii,	79
1723	Benjamin Franklin comes to Philadelphia	i,	90
1729	The French destroy the Natchez tribe of Indians	ii,	86
1730	Prince Frederick of Prussia imprisoned	v,	299
1738	The Maroons of Jamaica win freedom	iii,	202
1740	Frederick succeeds to the Prussian throne.	v,	304
1742	Oglethorpe defeats the Spaniards	ii,	95
1746	Battle of Culloden	iv,	329
1746	Flora McDonald saves Prince Charles	iv,	324
1748	Washington surveys the Shenandoah Valley	ii,	107
1753	Washington journeys to the French forts.	i,	98
1753	Voltaire leaves Berlin	v,	305
1757	Frederick defeats the French at Rossbach.	v,	316
1757	He defeats the Austrians at Leuthen	v,	320
1758	General Putnam's escape from death	i,	119
1760	The Goorkhas attack Thibet	xii,	301
1760	Frederick the Great victorious at Liegnitz.	v,	322
1762	End of the Seven Years' war	v,	327
1762	Deposition of Peter III of Russia	viii,	184
1762	Catherine made Empress of Russia	viii,	189
1765	Patrick Henry's speech in House of Burgesses	ii,	120
1768	Governor Tryon and the Regulators of North Carolina	ii,	124
1769	Daniel Boone seeks Kentucky	i,	138

Date A. D.	Event	Vol.	Page
1771	Migration of the Kalmucks from Russia	viii,	202
1772	A republic founded in Tennessee	ii,	133
1773	Pugatcheff, a Cossack, seeks the Russian throne	viii,	195
1774	His defeat and execution	viii,	200
1775	Paul Revere's ride	i,	157
1775	The British at Lexington	i,	166
1775	Capture of Fort Ticonderoga	i,	172
1775	Battle of Great Bridge, Virginia	ii,	140
1775	Burning of Norfolk	ii,	142
1776	Putnam's escape from New York	i,	185
1777	The British in Philadelphia	i,	189
1777	The defence of Fort Henry	i,	128
1777	The siege of Fort Schuyler	i,	195
1778	Voltaire's last visit to Paris	vi,	264
1778	Colonel Clark captures Kaskaskia and Vincennes	ii,	153
1779	Gibraltar blockaded by France and Spain	vii,	287
1780	Battle of King's Mountain	ii,	170
1780	Sergeant Champe and Arnold the traitor	i,	211
1780	Indian insurrection in Peru	iii,	191
1780	Marion at Snow's Island	i,	225
1781	Marion's exploits	i,	228
1781	Battle of the Cowpens	ii,	179
1781	General Greene's famous retreat	ii,	180
1781	Cornwallis at Yorktown	ii,	184
1782	The blockading fleet at Gibraltar defeated	vii,	290
1784	First cotton reaches England from America	ii,	185
1785	The Diamond Necklace conspiracy	vi,	271
1787	Potemkin's mock "way to Byzantium"	viii,	220
1789	Fall of the Bastille	vi,	281
1791	Flight of Louis XVI	vi,	298
1791	Slave insurrection in Hayti	iii,	205
1792	Whitney invents the cotton-gin	ii,	190
1793	First Russian visit to Japan	xii,	114
1793	Execution of Louis XVI	vi,	305
1793	The fall of Robespierre	vi,	306
1794	Kosciusko leads an insurrection in Poland	viii,	227
1794	He is killed and Warsaw taken	viii,	229
1795	The Maroons subdued in Jamaica	iii,	203
1796	Toussaint l'Ouverture made commander-in-chief in Hayti	iii,	210
1798	The British expelled from Hayti	iii,	209

Date A. D.	Event	Vol.	Page
1799	Suwarrow, Russia's great general, in Italy	viii,	238
1800	Lord Nelson attacks the Danish fleet	ix,	345
1801	The French invade Hayti	iii,	212
1802	Capture and fate of Toussaint l'Ouverture.	iii,	214
1802	The American flag at Canton	xii,	308
1803	The French expelled from Hayti	iii,	216
1803	Loss and burning of the *Philadelphia*	i,	237
1805	The plots of Aaron Burr	i,	249
1805	Battle of Trafalgar and death of Nelson	iv,	339
1806	The end of the Holy Roman Empire	v,	343
1807	The English seize the fleet of Denmark	ix,	347
1807	The Portuguese court goes to Brazil	iii,	257
1808	The French invade Spain	vii,	293
1808	Fall of Godoy, the Spanish king's favorite	vii,	299
1808	Siege of Saragossa	vii,	302
1808	Defeat of Sir John Moore	vii,	306
1809	Capture of Saragossa	vii,	311
1810	An insurrection in Mexico	iii,	227
1810	Execution of Andreas Hofer	v,	340
1810	Marshal Bernadotte made crown prince of Sweden	ix,	351
1811	Captain Golownin held prisoner in Japan.	xii,	115
1812	Napoleon invades Russia	viii,	241
1812	Moscow burned and the French retreat.	viii, vi,	243 316
1813	Napoleon defeated at Leipsic	v,	344
1813	Bolivar escapes assassination	iii,	217
1813	The massacre at Fort Mimms	ii,	194
1814	Norway transferred from Denmark to Sweden	ix,	362
1814	Jackson defeats the Creeks	ii,	202
1814	The Pirates of Barataria Bay	ii,	206
1814	Jackson at New Orleans	ii,	215
1814	Francia dictator of Paraguay	iii,	269
1815	Napoleon's return from Elba	vi,	327
1815	Battle of Waterloo	vi,	334
1817	San Martin's campaign in Chili	iii,	247
1817	St. Petersburg made the capital of Russia	viii,	160
1818	Defeat of San Martin in Chili	iii,	250
1818	The Battle of Maypo	iii,	252
1819	Tyranny of Francia, the dictator of Paraguay	iii,	276
1819	Bolivar invades New Granada	iii,	217

Date A. D.	Event	Vol.	Page
1819	Bolivar's victory at Boyacá	iii,	223
1820	Yturbide leads the Mexican revolution	iii,	235
1820	Revolt of the Brazilians	iii,	259
1820	King John returns to Portugal	iii,	261
1821	Paez wins the victory of Carabobo	iii,	243
1821	New Granada becomes independent	iii,	225
1821	Chili is proclaimed independent	iii,	255
1822	Pedro, son of King John, made emperor of Brazil	iii,	261
1823	Bolivar wins freedom for Peru	iii,	225
1823	Mexico becomes a republic	iii,	235
1830	Poland breaks into revolution	viii,	248
1830	Warsaw taken and the Poles subdued	viii,	256
1833	Isabella becomes queen of Spain	vii,	313
1833	The Carlist revolt begins	vii,	316
1835	Siege of Bilboa and end of the war	vii,	319
1836	The defence of the Alamo in Texas	ii,	221
1836	Texas wins freedom at San Jacinto	ii,	227
1837	The Morse telegraph invented	i,	259
1839	Schamyl defends Circassia from the Russians	viii,	260
1840	Death of Francia, dictator of Paraguay	iii,	277
1841	The opium war in China	xii,	310
1841	The massacre on the retreat from Cabul	iv,	349
1844	Treaty of China with United States	xii,	312
1844	The first message by electric telegraph	i,	273
1845	Capture of Dargo, Schamyl's headquarters	viii,	263
1846	General Kearney invades New Mexico	iii,	288
1846	Kearney takes Santa Fé	iii,	295
1847	General Scott takes Vera Cruz	iii,	299
1847	The battles around Mexico	ii, iii,	231 302
1847	Captain Lee crosses the lava beds	ii,	235
1847	Capture of Chapultepec	ii, iii,	237 306
1847	The surrender of Mexico	ii,	239
1847	The invasion of Central Asia begins	viii,	306
1848	Treaty of peace with Mexico	iii,	308
1850	The Tai-ping rebellion begins	xii,	325
1853	Commodore Perry in Bay of Yedo	xii,	123
1854	The opening of Japan	xii,	131
1854	The Crimean War begins	viii,	267
1854	Charge of the Light Brigade	viii,	271

Date A. D.	Event	Vol.	Page
1855	Walker, the filibuster, invades Nicaragua	iii,	310
1855	The fall of Sebastopol	viii,	276
1856	The English bombardment of Canton	xii,	313
1856	Walker made president of Nicaragua	iii,	312
1857	He is deposed and taken to United States	iii,	313
1858	Japan makes treaties with European nations	xii,	132
1859	Schamyl captured and the Caucasus subdued	viii,	266
1860	Walker invades Honduras and is killed	iii,	311
1860	Attack on the Taku forts of China	xii,	314
1860	The English and French take Peking and burn the Summer Palace	xii,	316
1861	The French invade Mexico	iii,	316
1862	Battle of the *Monitor* and *Merrimac*	i,	275
1862	Stuart's raid on Chambersburg	ii,	261
1862	General Gordon at Antietam	ii,	313
1863	Federal raiders and the locomotive adventure	i,	285
1863	General Forrest pursues Colonel Streight's expedition	ii,	277
1863	The siege of Vicksburg	ii,	302
1863	Jackson's flank march at Chancellorsville	ii,	320
1863	Wounding and death of Stonewall Jackson	ii,	330
1863	Morgan's raid in Ohio	ii,	331
1863	Japanese revolt against the Shoguns	xii,	136
1864	Federal officers escape from Libby prison	i,	298
1864	Sinking of the *Albemarle*	i,	314
1864	Maximilian made emperor of Mexico	iii,	318
1864	Sleswick-Holstein taken from Denmark	ix,	358
1865	General Lee's return from Appomattox	ii,	345
1867	The French evacuate Mexico	iii,	320
1867	Maximilian captured and shot	iii,	323
1868	The office of shogun abolished in Japan	xii,	139
1869	The Mikado Mutsuhito ruler of Japan	xii,	140
1870	The Franco-Prussian war	v, vi,	347 337
1871	The Germans besiege Paris	vi,	341
1871	A new empire organized in Germany	v,	341
1871	The Commune in Paris	vi,	342
1871	France becomes a republic	v, vi,	347 337
1871	A United States fleet visits Corea	xii,	333

Date A. D.	Event	Vol.	Page
1871	Italy a kingdom; temporal power of Pope ceases	vi,	340
1873	The subjection of Turkestan completed	viii,	308
1877	Russia invades Turkey	viii,	285
1878	The peril of Constantinople	viii,	289
1878	The powers save Constantinople from capture	viii,	292
1880	Alexander II assassinated by anarchists	viii,	298
1881	A stronghold of the desert Turkomans captured	viii,	311
1885	The Transcaspian Railway begun	viii,	313
1887	The jubilee year of Queen Victoria's reign	iv,	358
1889	Revolution in Brazil; a republic established	iii,	264
1890	The Transsiberian Railway begun	viii,	317
1893	Revolt of the Brazilian navy	iii,	265
1894	War between China and Japan	xii,	335
1894	Battle with ironclads in Yellow Sea	xii,	339
1895	Treaty of peace between China and Japan	xii,	338
1895	The Cuban rebellion begins	iii,	325
1896	Maceo invades Western Cuba and is killed	iii,	334
1897	Queen Victoria's diamond jubilee	iv,	358
1898	The Spanish-American war	vii,	323
1898	Defeat of the Spanish fleet at Manila	vii,	323
1898	Sinking of the *Merrimac* in Santiago channel	iii,	336
1900	The Boxer outbreak; Russia occupies Manchuria	xii,	352
1904	The Russo-Japanese war	xii,	352
1905	The great naval battle between Japan and Russia	viii,	329
1905	Norway secedes from the union with Sweden and elects a king	ix,	368

INDEX

A Boy's Working Holiday in the Wildwood. ii. 104.
A Contest for a Crown. iv. 93.
A Crusade against Beards and Cloaks—incidents in the reign of Peter the Great. viii. 142.
A Drama of Plunder, Murder, and Revenge—massacre of the French settlers in Saint Augustine by Spaniards. iii. 163.
A Female Richelieu—Princess Wou, of China. xii. 223.
A Gallant Defence—Fort Henry defended against Simon Girty and his Indians. i. 128.
A Great Christian Movement and its Fate—Tai-Ping rebellion. xii. 323.
A King in a Quandary—anecdote of Mediæval Germany. v. 95.
A King in Captivity—Francis I of France captured at Pavia, and held captive in Spain. vii. 186.
A Mad Emperor—Wenceslas, emperor of Germany and king of Bohemia. viii. 176.
A Magical Transformation Scene—building and decay of Kherson. Russia. viii. 220.
A Martyr to His Profession. vi. 251.
A Struggle for a Throne—Pugatchef, Cossack chief, pretender to Russian throne. viii. 195.
A Window Open to Europe—founding of St. Petersburg by Peter the Great. viii. 155.
Aastrid, enmity of Gunhild, ix. 89; Olaf born, ix. 89; captured by vikings and sold as slave, ix. 92; marries Lodin, and returns to Norway. ix. 92.
Abbassides, assassination of Ommeyades. vii. 68.
Abdallah El Zagal, Moorish King of Granada, defeated by Boabdil, vii. 123; court in Almeria. vii. 131.
Abdul-Aziz, son of Musa Ibn Nasseyr, emir of Spain, weds Exilona, queen of Roderic, vii. 42; ruined by ambition. vii. 45.
Abdurrahman, last scion of Ommeyades, flees from Abbassides, vii. 68; lands in Spain, gathers adherents, and makes Spain an independent kingdom. vii. 72.

Aben-Aboo, last of the Ommeyade Moorish kings, tortured by Spanish, vii. 259; wars against Spain, vii. 261; killed by treachery, vii. 264; corpse insulted by Spanish. vii. 264.
Aben-Humeya, Ommeyade Moorish king, pursued by Spanish, vii. 257; weak character leads to assassination. vii. 261.
Absolon, Bishop, foster brother to Valdemar I, warlike character, ix. 170; war with Valdemar against Baltic pagans, ix. 170; leads assault on Arcona, ix. 172; baptizes pagans, ix. 172; upholds young Knud, son of Valdemar, ix. 173; patron of learning, ix. 174; dies. ix. 175.
Acadia, Port Royal taken by Sir William Phips. i. 67.
Accolan, beloved by Morgan le Fay, xiii. 71; on the enchanted ship, xiii. 95; lover of Morgan le Fay, xiii. 99; receives Excalibur from Morgan le Fay, xiii. 100; agrees to champion Sir Ontzlake, xiii. 101; fights Arthur, defeated by Nimue's enchantment, loses Excalibur, and dies, xiii. 102; body sent to Morgan le Fay. xiii. 110.
Achæan League, federal league of Peloponnesian cities, x. 339; dissolved by Rome. x. 347.
Achilles and the Trojan War. x. 7.
Acropolis, hill of Athens, x. 72; beautified with work of Phidias. x. 187.
Adalbert, archbishop of Bremen, captured and beheaded by treachery of Bishop Hatto, v. 59; influence on affairs of Henry IV, emperor of Germany. v. 80.
Adams, Will, English pilot, honored in Yedo. xii. 111.
Adashef, able prime minister of Ivan the Terrible. viii. 75.
Adhemar, bishop of Puy, first to take up cross of crusade. vi. 72.
Adrastus, king of Argos, in sieges of Thebes. x. 43.
Adrastus, Phrygian, kills Atys, son of Crœsus, as foretold by oracle. x. 81.
Adrianople, Turkey, captured by Russians. viii. 288.
Advance of Russia in Asia. viii. 300.
Adventure of the Enchanted Ship. xiii. 94.
Adventure of the Magic Ship. xiv. 195.
Adventures of a Fugitive Prince—Abdurrahman, last scion of the Ommeyades dynasty, flees from the Abbassides. vii. 68.
Adventures of a Royal Fugitive. iv. 276.
Adventures of Beaumains—Book V. xiii. 179.
Adventures of Democedes. x. 109.

Adventures of Gustavus Vasa. ix. 252.
Ægean Sea, named from Ægeus, king of Athens. x. 38.
Ægeus, father of Theseus, marries Medea, x. 32; suicide in the Ægean Sea. x. 38.
Æneas and the Trojan war, x. 7; wanderings chronicled in the Æneid, x. 19; founds kingdom in Italy. xi. 7.
Æschines, tool of Philip of Macedonia, denounced by Demosthenes in his greatest oration. x. 311.
Æschylus, Greek tragic poet. x. 193, x. 363.
Aetes, king of Colchis, owner of the Golden Fleece, faithless to Jason. x. 26.
Aëtion marries Labda, x. 92; son Cypselus overthrows the Bacchiadæ, and rules as tyrant of Corinth, x. 93; dies and succeeded by Periander, x. 96; end of the dynasty. x. 97.
Aetius, last great soldier of Rome, vi. 10; defeats Attila and saves France. vi. 11.
Afghanistan, Elphinstone's army slain in helpless retreat, iv. 349; punitive expedition under Pollock. iv. 356.
Agamemnon and the Trojan war. x. 7.
Agaristé, daughter of Cleisthenes of Sicyon, marries Megacles of Athens, and mother of Cleisthenes of Athens. x. 86.
Agravaine, punished by Tristram, xiv. 27; hatred for Lancelot and Guenever, xiv. 280; raises scandal with Mordred against them, xiv. 281; they trap Lancelot in Guenever's chamber, xiv. 287; killed by Lancelot. xiv. 287.
Agrippina, mother of Nero, killed by him. xi. 243.
Ainos, aboriginal Japanese, xii. 5; conquered by Yamato-Dakê. xii. 19.
Aix-la-Chapelle, taken by Vikings, v. 52; plundered by Gorm. ix. 44.
Ajax and the Trojan war. x. 7.
Akechi, Japanese soldier, treacherously kills Nobunaga, xii. 79; killed by Hideyoshi. xii. 81.
Alabama, Indian massacre at Fort Mimms, ii. 194; Creek Indians defeated and Creek Nation broken, ii. 197; Montgomery, cradle of Confederacy. ii. 258.
Alamance, battle of. ii. 130.
Alamo, stronghold in Texas insurrection, ii. 218; besieged by Santa Anna, ii. 221; taken and garrison slaughtered, ii. 223; American Thermopylæ. ii. 224.
Alaric, Gothic king, invades Italy and sacks Rome. xi. 331.
Alaska, a Treasure-House of Gold, Furs and Fishes, i. 327; purchase by Seward, i. 327; opposition in the United

States, i. 327; resources of, i. 327; gold mining in, i. 328; hardships in, i. 331; modern mining methods in, i. 334; fisheries of, i. 336; agriculture in, i. 336; possible population of. i. 337.
Alba Longa, built by Ascanius, xi. 7; Horatii and Curatii —Albans defeated by Romans. xi. 22.
Albans. See Alba Longa.
Albemarle, Confederate iron-clad, attacks Union gunboats and forts at Plymouth, North Carolina, i. 315; repulsed by the *Sassacus*, i. 315; sunk by Lieutenant Cushing, i. 316; escape of Cushing. i. 321.
Albemarle, Duke of, assists William Phips. i. 61.
Alberoni, son of a Parmesan gardener, vii. 276; brings about marriage of Elizabeth Farnese to Philip V of Spain, vii. 277; prime minister and cardinal, vii. 280; great ability, vii. 281; intrigues bring war with Germany, vii. 281; deprived of offices and exiled. vii. 282.
Alboin and Rosamond. v. 19.
Alboin, King of the Lombards, captures Rosamond, princess of the Gepidæ, v. 21; invades Italy and founds a kingdom, v. 21; hated by Rosamond, his wife, v. 23; murdered by Rosamond. v. 24.
Albrecht, Duke of Mecklenburg, defeated by Queen Margaret. ix. 214.
Alcæus, Greek lyric poet. x. 362.
Alcibiades, Greek politician, character and appearance, x. 221; friendship with Socrates, x. 223; fondness for luxury, x. 223; connection with the invasion of Sicily, x. 223; flees to Sparta, x. 224; flees to Persia, x. 227; returns to Athens and works zealously in her favor, x. 225; killed in Asia Minor, x. 225; competes in the Olympic games. x. 321.
Aldama, Mexican revolutionary leader, shot. iii. 234.
Alexander, nephew to King Mark, saved by Sadok, xiv. 107; kept prisoner by Morgan le Fay, xiv. 109; holds La Belle Regard against all comers, xiv. 110; love for Alice la Belle Pilgrim, xiv. 111; tricked by Sir Mordred, xiv. 113; victor at La Belle Regard, xiv. 111; weds Alice, xiv. 114; murdered by emissaries of King Mark, xiv. 115; Bellengerus le Beuse avenges his death. xiv. 115.
Alexander, Russian prince, drives Germans and Swedes from Russia, viii. 53; named Alexander Nevsky, viii. 53; seeks to free Russia from Tartars, viii. 53; death, viii. 54; canonized. viii. 54.

Alexander II, Czar of Russia, killed by Nihilists. viii. 293.

Alexander the Great, son of Philip of Macedonia, at battle of Chæronéa, x. 294; succeeds his father, x. 295; punishes revolt of Thebes, x. 295; Alexander the Great and Darius—cutting of the Gordian knot, invasion of Asia, and defeat of Darius Codomannus at Issus and Arbela, x. 296; conquest of all Persia, Babylonia and Susa plundered and Persepolis sacked and burned, x. 303; death of Darius, x. 304; death of Alexander. x. 304.

Alexander Severus, Roman emperor, assassinated by partisans of Maximin. xi. 312.

Alexandria, Egypt, literary glories, libraries and schools. x. 366.

Alfred, King of England, studious habits, iv. 19; England invaded by Danes, iv. 20; escapes from raid by Guthrum, iv. 21; King Alfred and the burned cakes, iv. 26; enters Guthrum's camp disguised as a harper, iv. 30; defeats Danes at Ethandune, iv. 32; treaty of Wedmore, iv. 33; dies. iv. 34.

Alfonso, King of Galicia, injustice to the Cid. vii. 85.

Algiers, Moors withstand assault by Charles V. vii. 198.

Alhambra, Moorish palace of Granada. vii. 107.

Ali Pasha, leader of Turkish fleet at battle of Lepanto, vii. 227; killed. vii. 231.

Alice la Belle Pilgrim, offers to wed victor of La Belle Regard, xiv. 111; weds Alexander. xiv. 114.

Allen, Ethan, with the Green Mountain Boys, captures Fort Ticonderoga, i. 172; Vermont insurgent against authority of New York, i. 173; reward for Allen's capture, i. 174; controversy with Benedict Arnold over command, i. 175; surrender of Ticonderoga, i. 176; "In the name of the great Jehovah and the Continental Congress," i. 176; renewal of dispute between Allen and Arnold, i. 177; failure of expedition to control Lake Champlain, i. 177; failure of expedition against Canada, i. 178; Allen captured by British, i. 178; described by Alexander Graydon, i. 178; subsequent history and death. i. 179.

Allende, Ignacio, Mexican revolutionary leader with Hidalgo, iii. 226; shot. iii. 234.

Almohades, Moorish reformers, invade Spain and defeated at Navas de Tolosa. vii. 96.

Alonso de Ojeda and the Carib Cacique. iii. 17.

Alvarado, valiant lieutenant of Cortez, iii. 64; "Tonatiuh"—"Child of the Sun," iii. 65; Alvarado's leap. iii. 65.

Alvaredo, Luis de, successor to De Soto, ii. 21; buries De Soto. ii. 22.

Amant, Sir, accuses King Mark. xiv. 10.

Amazon River, discovered by Orellana. iii. 92.

America, Vineland and the Vikings, i. 9; Frobisher and the Northwest Passage, i. 26; Champlain and the Iroquois, i. 34; Sir William Phips and the Silver Ship, i. 53; Story of the Regicides, i. 69; How the Charter was Saved, i. 80; How Franklin Came to Philadelphia, i. 89; Perils of the Wilderness—Washington's expedition before the French and Indian war, i. 98; Some Adventures of Major Putnam, i. 111; A Gallant Defence—Fort Henry defended against Simon Girty and his Indians, i. 128; Daniel Boone, the Pioneer of Kentucky, i. 138; Paul Revere's Ride, i. 157; Green Mountain Boys, i. 172; British at New York, i. 180; A Quakeress Patriot, i. 189; Siege of Fort Schuyler, i. 195; On the Track of a Traitor—search for Benedict Arnold, i. 211; Marion, the Swamp-Fox, i. 223; Fate of the *Philadelphia*, i. 237; Victim of a Traitor—Blennerhasset and Aaron Burr's dream of empire, i. 249; How the Electric Telegraph was Invented, i. 259; The *Monitor* and the *Merrimac*, i. 275; Stealing a Locomotive, i. 285; An Escape from Libby Prison, i. 298; Sinking of the *Albemarle*—Cushing's gallant exploit, i. 314; Alaska, a Treasure-House of Gold, Furs, and Fishes, i. 327; How Hawaii Lost its Queen and Entered the United States, i. 338; Ponce de Leon and the Fountain of Youth, ii. 7; De Soto and the Father of Waters, ii. 13; Lost Colony of Roanoke, ii. 23; Thrilling Adventure of Captain John Smith, ii. 29; Indian Massacre in Virginia, ii. 40; Great Rebellion in the Old Dominion—Bacon's rebellion, ii. 49; Chevalier La Salle, the Explorer of the Mississippi, ii. 62; French of Louisiana and the Natchez Indians, ii. 76; Knights of the Golden Horseshoe, ii. 88; How Oglethorpe saved Georgia from Spain, ii. 95; A Boy's Working Holiday in the Wildwood—surveying expedition of Washington, ii. 104; Patrick Henry, the Herald of the Revolution, ii. 113; Governor Tryon and the Carolina Regulators, ii. 124; Lord Dunmore and the Gunpowder, ii. 135; Fatal Expedition of Colonel Rogers,

ii. 145; How Colonel Clark Won the Northwest, ii. 153; King's Mountain and the Patriots of Tennessee, ii. 166; General Greene's Famous Retreat, ii. 171; Eli Whitney, the inventor of the Cotton-Gin, ii. 185; How Old Hickory Fought the Creeks, ii. 193; Pirates of Barataria Bay, ii. 206; Heroes of the Alamo, ii. 217; How Houston Won Freedom for Texas, ii. 225; Captain Robert E. Lee and the Lava Beds—incident of the Mexican War, ii. 231; A Christmas Day on the Plantation, ii. 241; Captain Gordon and the Raccoon Roughs, ii. 252; Stuart's Famous Chambersburg Raid, ii. 261; Forrest's Chase of the Raiders, ii. 277; Exploits of a Blockade-Runner, ii. 291; Fontain, the Scout, and the Besiegers of Vicksburg, ii. 302; Gordon and the Bayonet Charge at Antietam, ii. 311; Last Triumph of Stonewall Jackson, ii. 319; John Morgan's Famous Raid, ii. 331; Home-Coming of General Lee and his Veterans, ii. 347; Isles of Beauty beyond the Seas—discoveries by Columbus, iii. 7; Alonso de Ojeda and the Carib Cacique, iii. 17; Early Days of a Famous Cavalier—Hernando Cortez, iii. 23; Balboa and the Discovery of the Pacific, iii. 33; Romantic Story of the Prince of Tezcuco, iii. 44; Famous Retreat of Cortez and the Spaniards, iii. 58; Pizarro and the Inca's Golden Ransom, iii. 71; Gonzalo Pizarro and the Land of Cinnamon, iii. 86; Coronado and the Seven Cities of Cibola, iii. 97; Faithful Miranda and the Lovers of Argentina, iii. 109; Lantaro, the Boy Hero of the Araucanians, iii. 116; Drake, the Sea-King, and the Spanish Treasure-Ships, iii. 127; Sir Walter Raleigh and the Quest for El Dorado, iii. 139; Morgan, the Freebooter, and the Raid on Panama, iii. 151; A Drama of Plunder, Murder, and Revenge—Rio de Janeiro sacked by French, iii. 163; Wonderful March of the Freebooters, iii. 173; Cruelty of the Spaniards to the Indians, iii. 186; Cudjoe, the Negro chief, and the Maroons of Jamaica, iii. 195; Toussaint L'Ouverture and the revolution in Hayti, iii. 205; Bolivar the Liberator, and the conquest of New Granada, iii. 217; Hidalgo, the patriot, and the Grito de Dolores, iii. 226; Paez, the Llanero chief, and the war of freedom, iii. 236; Colony, Empire, Republic—revolution in Brazil, iii. 257; Francia the Dictator, the Louis XI of Paraguay, iii. 269; Governor Tacon and Marti the smuggler, iii. 280; Kearney's Daring Expedition and the Con-

quest of New Mexico, iii. 288; Second Conquest of the Capital of Mexico, iii. 299; Walker, the Filibuster, and the Invasion of Nicaragua, iii. 309; Maximilian of Austria and his Empire in Mexico, iii. 316; Maceo and the Struggle for Cuban Independence, iii. 325; Lieutenant Hobson and the Sinking of the *Merrimac*. iii. 336.

American Indians. See INDIANS, AMERICAN.

American Turtle, first torpedo. i. 181.

Amphiaräus, Argive chief, in sieges of Thebes, x. 43; rescued from death by miracle, and deified. x. 45.

Amphictyonic Council, acts lead to war with Phocis, to rifling of the Temple of Apollo at Delphi, and to the subjugation of Greece by Philip of Macedonia. x. 288.

Amulius, deposes Numitor, xi. 8; killed. xi. 9.

Amur, Siberian river, explored by Russians. viii. 84.

Amycus, giant king of Bebrycians, killed by Pollux. x. 25.

An Emperor out of Business—abdication and retirement of Charles V. vii. 202.

An Escape from Libby Prison. i. 298.

An Escape from the Mines of Siberia. viii. 319. ,

An Imperial Monster—crimes and death of Caligula. xi. 236.

An Imperial Savage—Maximin, Thracian peasant and soldier, rises to Roman throne, career, and death. xi. 309.

Anabaptists in Germany, v. 238; Thomas Münzer, their leader, v. 241; Goetz von Berlichingen, v. 241; revolt stamped out in Southern Germany, v. 242; excesses in Thuringia under Münzer, v. 244; Münster given over to Anabaptists, v. 246; rise of John Matthiesen, and John Bockelson (or Bockhold), v. 246; excesses of government, communism, and polygamy, v. 246; Münster defended obstinately against Bishop Francis of Waldeck, but taken by treachery, and Anabaptist madness stamped out. v. 250.

Anacreon, Greek lyric poet. x. 362.

Anaphe, island raised by Apollo to aid Argonauts. x. 29.

Ancient Scythians. viii. 5.

Andovere, first queen of Chilperic, repudiated, vi. 30; murdered by Fredegonde. vi. 32.

Andred, treachery to Tristram, his cousin, xiii. 281, xiii. 286; overcome by Uwaine, xiii. 340; with King Mark, overthrown by Gaheris and Kay, xiii. 342; killed by Bellengerus. xiv. 116.

Andres, insurgent Peruvian chief, captures and sacks Sorata, iii. 193; captured and imprisoned at Ceuta, Spain. iii. 194.
Andrews, James J., Union spy, steals a Confederate locomotive and attempts to wreck railroad leading to Chattanooga, i. 285; exciting flight, and failure of project, i. 289; hung by Confederates. i. 297.
Androgeos, son of Minos, killed by flame-spitting bull of Marathon. x. 33.
Andromache, wife of Hector. x. 14.
Andros, Sir Edmund, governor-general of New England, i. 80; fails in attempt to wrest charter from Connecticut. i. 81.
Anecdotes of Mediæval Germany. v. 92.
Anecdotes of the Latin and Samnite Wars—prowess and execution of T. Manlius; self-sacrifice of Publius Decius; exploits of L. Papirius Cursor and Q. Fabius Rullianus. xi. 108.
Anguish, king of Ireland, champion defeated by Tristram, champion of King Mark of Cornwall, xiii. 241; banishes Tristram for Marhaus's death, xiii. 255; accused by Blamor de Ganis, championed by Tristram. xiii. 261.
Anianus, bishop of Orleans. vi. 11.
Anicetus, tutor of Nero, murders Agrippina. xi. 244.
Anna, princess of Constantinople, marries Vladimir the Great. viii. 37.
Anne of Austria, queen of Louis XIII of France, conspires against Richelieu, vi. 219; revolt in Paris. vi. 233.
Antietam, unsuccessful bayonet charges at. ii. 311.
Antigone, daughter of Œdipus, accompanies him in exile, x. 46; disobeys Creon's edict and dies in prison, x. 46; Hæmon, Creon's son, her lover. x. 47.
Antioch, taken by Crusaders. vi. 75.
Antony. See Marc Antony.
Antony and Cleopatra. xi. 227.
Apollo, saves Argonauts from shipwreck. x. 29.
Appius Claudius, citizen of Regillum, becomes Roman decemvir, xi. 75; seizes Virginia, Roman maiden, xi. 78; death of Virginia, xi. 82; popular uprising, decemvirs expelled, and death of Appius Claudius. xi. 84.
Appomattox Indians, defeated by Nathaniel Bacon. ii. 55.
Araucanians, bold and independent Chilean tribe, iii. 116; Lantaro, the boy hero of the Araucanians. iii. 116.

Arbela, battle of Asia Minor, victory of Alexander the Great over Darius Codomannus. x. 301.
Arcadians, Megalopolis (capital city) built by Epaminondas. x. 269.
Archidamus, Spartan king, besieges Platæa. x. 205.
Archilochus, Greek lyric poet. x. 362.
Archimedes, at the siege of Syracuse, xi. 152; killed. xi. 157.
Areopagus, council hill of Athens. x. 72.
Argentina, explored for Spain by Sebastian Cabot, iii. 109; faithful Miranda and the lovers of Argentina. iii. 109.
Argives, twice besiege Thebes, and finally victorious. x. 41.
Argo, ship of Jason and the Argonauts. x. 23.
Argonauts and the Search for the Golden Fleece. x. 23.
Argos, death of Pyrrhus. x. 333.
Ariadne, daughter of Minos, helps Theseus to slay Minotaur and escape from Cretan labyrinth, x. 35; flees with Theseus, and deserted, x. 37; legends. x. 38.
Arigil, duke of Benevento, adopts Grimoald. v. 30.
Aristagoras, leader in Ionian revolt against Darius. x. 123.
Aristides, general of Greek army at Marathon, x. 130; leader at battle of Salamis, x. 163; called "the Just," ostracized, x. 184; recalled, and leader of Athenians at Platæa, x. 185; proposes constitution to make Athens complete democracy. x. 185.
Aristodemus, king of Messenia, sacrifices his daughter to save country, x. 61; tragic history, x. 61; suicide. x. 62.
Aristomenes, the Hero of Messenia—wars between Messenia and Sparta, x. 60; heroic leader, x. 62; flees from the doomed country, and settles in Rhodes, x. 65; marries his daughter to the king of Rhodes, whence is descended the family of the Diagoridæ. x. 65.
Aristophanes, Greek comic poet. x. 193, x. 363.
Aristotle, Greek philosopher. x. 365.
Arkansas, De Soto at site of Little Rock. ii. 20.
Arkansas Indians, welcome La Salle, ii. 65; life and customs. ii. 65.
Arminius. See Hermann.
Arnold, Benedict, with Ethan Allen against Fort Ticonderoga, i. 175; dispute as to command, i. 175; Ticonderoga captured, i. 176; renewed dispute with Allen, i. 177; failure of expedition to control Lake Cham-

plain, i. 177; to aid of Fort Schuyler, i. 207; good service of Hon-Yost Schuyler, i. 208; in New York after treason at West Point, i. 211; John Champe detailed by Washington to capture him, i. 212; failure of plan. i. 220.

Arnold of Melchthal, Swiss patriot. v. 148.

Arnulf, emperor, defeats vikings. v. 57.

Artaxerxes, Persian king, attacked by Cyrus, his brother, x. 231; Cyrus killed, x. 234; retreat of the ten thousand Greeks. x. 237.

Artemidorus, attempts to prevent plot against Cæsar. xi. 222.

Arthur, King, early legends about, xiii. 10; evidence as to real existence, xiii. 10; legends as treated by various writers, xiii. 11; "Morte Darthur" of Sir Thomas Malory, xiii. 11; How Arthur Won the Throne—Book I, xiii. 19; plucks the magic sword out of the stone, xiii. 23; mystery of birth, xiii. 25; hostility of the knights, xiii. 26; acclaimed by commons, xiii. 27; knighted and crowned, xiii. 27; rules justly, xiii. 27; Sir Kay seneschal, xiii. 27; beset by kings of Lothian, Gore, etc., xiii. 28; wins in pitched battle, xiii. 31; alliance with King Ban and King Bors, xiii. 32; with their help defeats besiegers, xiii. 32; birth revealed, xiii. 36; death prophesied by Merlin, xiii. 36; reconciled with Queen Igraine, his mother, xiii. 37; adventure against King Pellinore, xiii. 40; the Lady of the Lake, the magic sword and scabbard, xiii. 43; defiance of King Ryons, xiii. 45; married to Guenever, xiii. 46; receives Round Table and a hundred knights from Leodegrance, xiii. 48; adds twenty-eight knights, xiii. 48; knights Gawaine, xiii. 49; knights Tor, xiii. 49; oath of Knights of Round Table, xiii. 54; damsel and the enchanted sword, xiii. 55; Balin and the Lady of the Lake, xiii. 57; receives King Ryons captive from Balin and Balan, xiii. 68; defeats Nero, xiii. 69; defeats Lot, xiii. 69; tomb made by Merlin, xiii. 70; trusts scabbard of Excalibur to Morgan le Fay, xiii. 71; how Balin gave the Dolorous Stroke, xiii. 72; fate of Balin and Balan, xiii. 81; Merlin's folly and fate, xiii. 89; treason of Morgan le Fay—Book III, xiii. 94; adventure of the enchanted ship, xiii. 94; falls asleep in the enchanted ship, xiii. 96; awakes in a dungeon, xiii. 96; agrees to battle for Sir Damas, xiii. 99; receives from Morgan le Fay false Excalibur,

xiii. 102; combat of Arthur and Accolan, xiii. 102; saved by the enchantment of Nimue, xiii. 105; regains Excalibur, xiii. 105; learns treachery of Morgan le Fay, xiii. 107; gives judgment against Sir Damas, xiii. 108; sends Accolan's body to Morgan le Fay, xiii. 110; scabbard of Excalibur stolen by Morgan le Fay and thrown into lake, xiii. 113; tricked in pursuit by Morgan le Fay, xiii. 115; saved by Nimue from enchanted robe, xiii. 118; banishes Uwaine, xiii. 119; country of strange adventures, xiii. 120; Lancelot of the Lake—Book IV, xiii. 137; defeats Lucius, and crowned emperor of Rome in his stead, xiii. 137; how Lancelot and Turquine fought, xiii. 153; Chapel Perilous, xiii. 164; adventures of Beaumains—Book V, xiii. 179; knighting of Kay's kitchen boy, xiii. 179; Red Knight of the Red Lawns, xiii. 201; how Beaumains won his bride, xiii. 212; Beaumains' captives do homage, xiii. 218; Tristram of Lyonesse and the fair Isolde—Book VI, xiii. 238; how Tristram was knighted, xiii. 238; La Belle Isolde, xiii. 249; draught of love, xiii. 267; perils of true love, xiii. 275; madness of Sir Tristram, xiii. 289; how Tristram came to Camelot—Book VII, xiii. 304; Tristram and Dinadan, xiii. 304; on the road to the tournament, xiii. 312; at the Castle of Maidens, xiii. 322; overthrown by Tristram, xiii. 331; quest of the Ten Knights, xiii. 335; Lancelot and nine knights quest Tristram, xiii. 336; Knight with the Covered Shield, xiii. 345; overthrown by Tristram, xiii. 350; makes Tristram Knight of the Round Table, xiii. 360; Tristram and Isolde at Joyous Gard—Book VIII, xiv. 9; treachery of King Mark, xiv. 9; welcomes Tristram and Isolde at Joyous Gard, xiv. 23; how Tristram befooled Dinadan, xiv. 23; tournament at Lonazep, xiv. 36; how Palamides fared at the Red City, xiv. 46; tournament at Lonazep, xiv. 41; second day of the tournament, xiv. 70; adventure with Isolde, xiv. 70; woes of two lovers, xiv. 83; adventures third day of the tournament, xiv. 83; rivalry of Tristram and Palamides, xiv. 92; quest of the Holy Grail—Book IX, xiv. 117; enchanted castle of King Pellam, xiv. 117; marvel of the floating sword, xiv. 125; Sangreal appears to Knights of Round Table, xiv. 139; knights vow quest of the Grail, xiv. 140; how Galahad got his shield, xiv. 141; Knights of the Round Table depart in quest of the Grail,

xiv. 141; temptation of Sir Percivale, xiv. 155; strange adventures of Sir Bors, xiv. 173; the adventure of the magic ship, xiv. 195; How Lancelot saw the Sangreal, xiv. 208; deeds of the Three Chosen Knights, xiv. 219; death of Galahad and Percivale, xiv. 224; Bors returns to Camelot, xiv. 224; love of Lancelot and Guenever, xiv. 226; poisoning of Sir Patrise, xiv. 226; Lily Maid of Astolat, xiv. 239; great tournament proclaimed, xiv. 239; prowess of Lancelot, and his wounding, xiv. 243; how Elaine died for love, xiv. 251; Chevalier of the Cart, xiv. 260; kidnapping and accusation of Guenever, xiv. 262; Guenever saved by Lancelot, xiv. 267; Hand of Destiny—Book XI, xiv. 280; trapping of the lion, xiv. 280; scandal against Lancelot and Guenever, xiv. 280; rescue of the queen, xiv. 288; rage of Arthur against Guenever, xiv. 290; condemns Guenever to death at stake, xiv. 290; Guenever rescued by Lancelot, and taken to Joyous Gard, xiv. 293; grief of Arthur, xiv. 294; forces gathered to besiege Joyous Gard, xiv. 296; return of Guenever, xiv. 297; Gawaine's persistent enmity to Lancelot, xiv. 297; besieges Joyous Gard, and battle rages, xiv. 297; Arthur compelled to withdraw, xiv. 303; papal bull in defence of Guenever and Lancelot, xiv. 303; Guenever brought back to court, xiv. 304; enmity of Gawaine and anger of Arthur, xiv. 306; banishment of Lancelot, xiv. 310; war between Arthur and Lancelot, xiv. 314; leaves Mordred ruler in England, and carries war into Lancelot's realm, xiv. 314; battling of Gawaine and Lancelot, xiv. 318; recalled by treason of Mordred, xiv. 323; dreams before the last battle, xiv. 329; kills Mordred and wounded to death, xiv. 333; Passing of Arthur, xiv. 335; Excalibur returns to its giver, xiv. 337; Arthur passes in the barge to Avilion, xiv. 337; death of Lancelot and Guenever. xiv. 339.

Arthur's Wars and the Mystery of his Birth. xiii. 28.

Aruns Tarquinius, murdered by Tullia, his wife. xi. 29.

Ascanius, son of Æneas, builds Alba Longa. xi. 7.

Ascelin, Friar, mission to Tartars. xii. 236.

Asculum, Italy, site of Pyrrhus's second victory over Romans. x. 331.

Ashikaga, Japanese clan, power behind throne, overthrown by Nobunaga. xii. 73.

Asia, Russian advance in, viii. 300; Russian civilizing influences, viii. 308; Russian adaptability to deal with Asiatics. viii. 309.
Aslög, daughter of King Sigurd Fafnisbane, ix. 23; saved by Heimer from murder, ix. 23; Heimer killed by beggars, ix. 23; Aslög adopted by beggars and named Kraka, ix. 23; found by Ragnar Lodbrok, ix. 24; weds Ragnar, ix. 26; Iwar, Ironside, and Ragnwald, their sons, ix. 26; Ragnar infatuated with Ingeborg, ix. 28; secret of Aslög's birth, ix. 29; birth of Sigurd Snake-in-Eye, ix. 29; death of Ragnar. ix. 30.
Assassination of Cæsar. xi. 218.
At the Castle of Maidens. xiii. 322.
At the Gates of Constantinople—Russian campaign against Turkey in behalf of the Balkan states. viii. 284.
Atahualpa, Inca of Peru, captured, put to ransom, and murdered by Pizarro. iii. 71.
Athelwold, treachery to King Edgar in wooing Elfrida, iv. 36; marries Elfrida, iv. 39; killed by Edgar. iv. 44.
Athenians at Marathon. x. 126.
Athens, besieged by Minos, x. 33; tribute to Minos, x. 33; Minotaur killed by Theseus, x. 34; contrasted with Sparta, x. 50; condition before Solon's time, x. 67; reforms instituted by Solon, x. 69; Salamis conquered by Solon, x. 70; council of the Areopagus, x. 72; power seized by Pisistratus, x. 76; treaty with Lydia, x. 78; Cleisthenes, law-giver, son of Megacles and Agaristé, x. 92; Pericles, law-giver, great grandson of Megacles and Agaristé, x. 92; Greeks defeat Persians at Marathon, x. 130; Miltiades, Themistocles, and Aristides, x. 130; defeat of Persians by Spartans and Thespians at Thermopylæ, x. 144; Greek fleet under leadership of Athens defeats Persians at Salamis, x. 154; defeat of Persians at Platæa, x. 165; Four Famous Men of Athens—Cleisthenes, Miltiades, Themistocles, and Aristides, x. 177; Athens, burned by Persians, rises glorious and beautiful from its ashes, x. 186; League of Delos (confederation of Greek cities under Athens) gradually changes to Athenian dominion, x. 189; statesmanship of Pericles, x. 191; glories of Phidias, Zeuxis, Æschylus, Aristophanes and Pindar, x. 187; war with Spartans over supremacy in Greece, x. 194; plague in Athens—inhabitants die by thou-

sands, and death of Pericles, x. 194; revolt in Lesbos put down, x. 200; Platæa, attacked by Spartans, valiantly defended, and garrison escapes, x. 205; fatal blunders of Athens, x. 213; disastrous defeat at Syracuse, x. 214; decisively defeated at Ægospotami by Spartan fleet, and forced to humiliating peace, x. 218; long walls razed, x. 219; blood despotism of The Thirty, x. 219; peace and order restored, Spartan power declines, and Persians aid in rebuilding long walls, x. 220; careers of Socrates and Alcibiades, x. 221; Thebes, ally of Athens, captured and held by Spartans, rescued by seven exiled patriots, x. 245; Dionysia, festival in honor of Bacchus, contests of tragic drama held in Athens, x. 322; captured by Romans, x. 350; pillaged by Sulla, xi. 191; literary glory of Greece. x. 360.

Atlantis, mythical island. x. 74.

Attila, the Hun, invades Europe, vi. 7; made chief of Scythians, vi. 8; crosses the Rhine into France, vi. 9; destroys Metz, vi. 10; besieges Orleans, vi. 10; defeated by Aetius and retreats across Rhine, vi. 13; invades Italy and forces ransom from Rome. xi. 329.

Atys, son of Crœsus, death according to oracle. x. 79.

Audubon, description of Daniel Boone. i. 155.

Augustine, missionary to England, first archbishop of Canterbury, and primate. iv. 12.

Augustulus, last Roman emperor, deposed. xi. 340.

Augustus, title of Roman emperor, restored to the western world. vi. 64.

Aurelian, Roman emperor, defeats and captures Zenobia, destroys Palmyra, and executes Longinus, x. 354; triumph. x. 357.

Austria, driven out of Switzerland, v. 159; defeated by Swiss at Morgarten, v. 170; army under Duke Leopold annihilated by Swiss at Sempach, v. 189; heroism of Arnold Winkelried, v. 193; pillaged by Turks and Vienna besieged, v. 277; saved by Sobieski. v. 282.

Autocracy. See Czar of Russia.

Avars, Hunnish tribe, invade Italy and besiege Friuli, v. 28; invade civilized Europe, vi. 47; description of their country, vi. 51; invasion by Charlemagne, and defeat of Avars, vi. 53; pestilence, and retreat of Charlemagne, vi. 54; invasion of Margrave Eric and Pepin, king of Italy, and capture of vast spoil, vi. 55; baptized and vassals of Frankish kings, vi. 57; absorbed by Moravians. vi. 57.

Ayllon, de, seeks Fountain of Youth. ii. 13.
Aztec. See MEXICO.

Babeque. See HAYTI.
Babylonia, Persian capital, plundered by Alexander the Great. x. 303.
Bacchiadæ, Corinthian family, tyrants, overthrown by Cypselus. x. 92.
Bacon, Nathaniel, leader of Great Rebellion, ii. 50; puts down Indian uprising, ii. 50; arrested by Sir William Berkeley as rebel, ii. 52; granted commission against Indians, ii. 53; proclaimed rebel and traitor, ii. 54; first American declaration of independence, ii. 54; campaign against Berkeley, ii. 55; master of Virginia, ii. 58; burns Jamestown, ii. 58; dies, ii. 59; execution of his adherents by Berkeley. ii. 60.
Bagdemagus, tournament against king of Northgalis, xiii. 150; adventure of the Perilous Shield. xiv. 142.
Bahama Islands, discovery by Columbus. iii. 9.
Bainbridge, Captain, captured in the frigate *Philadelphia* by Barbary pirates. i. 242.
Balaklava, Charge of the Light Brigade. viii. 267.
Balan, meets Balin, his brother, xiii. 63; adventure as Red Knight, xiii. 84; dies. xiii. 87.
Balboa and the discovery of the Pacific. iii. 33.
Balboa, Vasco Nuñez de, early days, iii. 33; comes to Hispaniola, iii. 33; stowaway in Enciso's expedition to Yucatan, iii. 34; finds gold, iii. 35; explores Darien and discovers Pacific, iii. 39; made admiral of the South Seas, iii. 42; seized by treachery, tried, and beheaded. iii. 43.
Bald-Grim. See KVELD-ULF.
Baldwin of the Iron Arm, defender of Germany against vikings. v. 51.
Balin, prisoner in Arthur's court, xiii. 57; wins enchanted sword, xiii. 57; head demanded by Lady of the Lake, xiii. 59; kills her and driven from Arthur's court, xiii. 60; rides to fight King Ryons, xiii. 61; kills Lanceor, xiii. 61; meets Balan, his brother, xiii. 63; Merlin prophesies Dolorous Stroke, xiii. 65; with Balan, captures King Ryons, xiii. 67; delivers him to King Arthur, xiii. 68; seeks and slays Garlon, xiii. 73; slays Pellam with the enchanted spear—the Dolorous Stroke, xiii. 80; buried beneath Listeneise Castle, xiii. 81; rescued by Merlin, xiii. 81; mystic bugle blast, xiii. 83; adventure with the Red Knight (Balan), xiii. 84; dies, xiii. 87; his sword afloat

in the marble block, xiii. 88; floating sword withdrawn by Galahad. xiv. 137.
Ball, John, "a mad priest of Kent," preaches socialism. iv. 187.
Ban, King, allied with Arthur. xiii. 32.
Bannockburn, Scotland freed from English rule by Robert Bruce. iv. 149.
Barataria Bay, Louisiana, haunt of pirates. ii. 206.
Barbarigo, Venetian commander at battle of Lepanto. vii. 226.
Barbary pirates, war against, fate of the frigate *Philadelphia*, i. 237; destroyed at Mazalquivir and Oran by Cardinal Ximenes. vii. 193.
Barleta, Italy, Spanish victory over French. vii. 177.
Barns of Ayr. iv. 140.
Barriero. Spanish commander in New Granada, defeated by Bolivar, iii. 221; prisoner. iii. 223.
Bastille, falls before Paris mob. vi. 281.
Battle Abbey, on spot where Harold of England fell. iv. 59.
Battle of Lake Regillus. xi. 50.
Battle of the Guadalete—decisive victory of Moors over Roderic in plain of Sidonia. vii. 23.
Battle of the ironclads between China and Japan in the Yellow Sea, first battle of modern warships. xii. 333.
Bayard, the Good Knight. vi. 166.
Bayard, Chevalier, chivalry and courtesy at Brescia, vi. 166; killed at battle of Sesia, Italy. vii. 183.
Bayard of Japan—Yoshitsunė breaks Taira power. xii. 51.
Baylen, Spain, victory of Spanish over French. xii. 303.
Bayonet, not effective in Civil War, ii. 311; charges against Confederate troops at Antietam. ii. 311.
Beaumains, Kay's kitchen boy, xiii. 181; granted adventure with the Red Knight of the Red Lawns, xiii. 183; overthrows Kay, xiii. 185; proves himself on Lancelot, xiii. 185; knighted by Lancelot, xiii. 186; secret of his birth, xiii. 186; black, green and red knights, xiii. 187; flouted by damsel Linet, xiii. 187; adventure with the thieves, xiii. 188; adventure with the two knights at the ford, xiii. 189; overthrows the black knight, xiii. 191; overthrows the green knight, xiii. 193; homage of the green knight, xiii. 195; overthrows the red knight, xiii. 198; homage of the red knight, xiii. 200; Red Knight of the Red Lawns, xiii. 201; humility of Linet and Beaumains' forgiveness,

xiii. 202; overthrows Sir Persant of India, xiii. 203; homage of Persant, xiii. 203; overthrows the Red Knight of the Red Lawns, xiii. 207; love for Dame Lioness put to the proof, xiii. 212; adventure with Sir Gringamore, xiii. 213; troth plight with Dame Lioness, xiii. 218; wins Dame Lioness in tournament, xiii. 222; the magic ring, xiii. 223; his prowess in tournament, xiii. 223; adventure with Sir Bendelaine, xiii. 229; adventure with the brown knight, xiii. 230; adventure with the Duke de la Rowse, xiii. 231; adventure with Gawaine, xiii. 232; marries Dame Lioness, xiii. 235; homage of his captives. xiii. 236.

Bedegraine, Castle. xiii. 32.

Beguines, religious order, services in "Black Death." v. 166.

Beleus, Sir, overthrown by Lancelot, xiii. 148; knight of the Round Table. xiii. 178.

Belgium, conquered by Cæsar. xi. 210.

Belgrade, besieged by Turks, and defended by Hunyades and Capistrano, v. 210; Turks defeated. v. 287.

Bellengerus le Beuse, son of Alexander, avenges his father's death. xiv. 115.

Bengt, and Sigrid the Fair, his wife, ix. 192; anger of Birger Jarl. ix. 193.

Benton, Colonel Thomas H., fight with Andrew Jackson. ii. 193.

Berkeley, Sir William, governor of Virginia, ii. 46, ii. 49; puts down Indian outbreak of 1643 and captures Opechancanough, ii. 46; rebuked by Opechancanough, ii. 47; tyranny provokes "great rebellion," ii. 50; opposed by Nathaniel Bacon, ii. 50; arrests Bacon, ii. 52; gives Bacon commission to put down Indian uprising, ii. 53; flees from Bacon, ii. 54; enlists help, ii. 55; second flight from Bacon, ii. 58; death of Bacon, ii. 59; executes Bacon's adherents, ii. 60; disfavor with king, ii. 60; dies in England. ii. 61.

Bernadotte, Jean, chosen heir to Swedish throne, ix. 350; early days and career under Napoleon, ix. 351; effect on Sweden's political policy, ix. 352; aids Russia in war with Napoleon, ix. 354; wrests Norway from Denmark, ix. 356; uprising of Norway, ix. 356; becomes ruler of two countries jointly. ix. 357.

Bernardo del Carpio, hero of Spanish cycle of legends. vii. 75.

Berreo, Spanish explorer, governor of Trinidad. iii. 140.

Bertarit, claimant for Lombard throne, v. 31; succeeds Grimoald. v. 36.
Bertha, queen of Ethelbert of England. iv. 11.
Bertrand du Guesclin. vi. 103.
Bevidere, returns Excalibur to the giver, xiv. 336; starts Arthur on voyage to Avilion, xiv. 338; serves the hermit, xiv. 339; lives and dies a hermit. xiv. 345.
Biarni, follows Eirek, i. 13; heroic death of. i. 24.
Bible, translated into German by Luther. v. 219.
Bilboa, Tomas Zumalacarregui killed. vii. 319.
Bille, Klass, holds fortress of Bohus against Christian II, ix. 278; letter to Ture Jönsson. ix. 278.
Bion, Sicilian lyric poet. x. 366.
Birch Creek, Alaska, gold find. i. 328.
Birchlegs. ix. 145.
Birger Jarl and the conquest of Finland. ix. 186.
Birger Jarl, famous warrior of Sweden, ix. 186; raises siege of Lübeck, ix. 187; crusade against pagan Finns, ix. 187; son Valdemar crowned king at death of Erik the Lame, ix. 189; treachery to Germany insurgent leaders, ix. 191; mightiest man in North, ix. 192; marries Mechtild, dowager queen of Denmark, ix. 192; Bengt, his brother, and Sigrid the Fair, ix. 192; makes wise laws, ix. 194; founds Stockholm. ix. 195.
Birger, king of Sweden, warfare with his brothers Erik and Valdemar, ix. 202; imprisons brothers by treachery, ix. 202; they die of starvation, ix. 207; rising of the people, and flight of Birger, ix. 207; dies. ix. 210.
Bishop's Wine-Casks, anecdote of Mediæval Germany. v. 100.
Black Death and the Flagellants. v. 162.
Black death in England. iv. 185.
Black, Green, and Red knights. xiii. 187.
Black Henry. See Henry, Count-Duke of Schwerin.
Black Knight, overthrown by Beaumains. xiii. 191.
Black Prince at Poitiers. iv. 174.
Blamor de Ganis, accuser of King Anguish, overthrown by Tristram. xiii. 261.
Bleise, writes record of Arthur's reign. xiii. 35.
Blennerhasset, Harman, settles on island in the Ohio River, i. 249; accomplishments, and style of living, i. 250; character of wife, i. 250; visit of Aaron Burr, i. 251; inveigled into supporting Burr's treasonable plans, i. 252; failure of the scheme, i. 254; house destroyed by the militia, i. 256; arrested, tried,

and acquitted of treason, i. 258; cotton planter at Natchez, i. 258; ruined and dies in poverty, i. 258; death of Mrs. Blennerhasset. i. 258.
Blockade Running during the Civil War. ii. 291.
Blondel, minstrel, and Richard Cœur de Lion. iv. 113.
Blood-Axe. See ERIK.
Blood bath of Stockholm. ix. 241.
Bloody Marsh, battle of. ii. 98.
Boabdil el Chico, king of Granada, vassal to Spain, vii. 125; war with Abdallah, rival king, vii. 126; aided by Spanish troops. vii. 130.
Boadicea, the Heroine of Britain—revolt of Icenians against arrogance and cruelty of Romans, defeated with great slaughter by Suetonius. xi. 250.
Bockelson (or Bockhold), John, Anabaptist leader, v. 246; called "John of Leyden," and monarch of the earth. v. 247.
Bohemia, madness of King Wenceslas, v. 176; Ziska, the Blind Warrior—successful resistance to Emperor Sigismund, and final subjugation, v. 198; during Thirty Years' War, v. 203; Fortunes of Wallenstein—contest between Catholic and Protestant. v. 252.
Bohio. See HAYTI.
Bokhara, Russians in, viii. 305; conquered by Genghis Khan. xii. 234.
Bolivar, the Liberator, and the conquest of New Granada. iii. 217.
Bolivar, Simon, unsuccessful warfare against Spanish in Venezuela, iii. 217; escapes assassination, iii. 217; invades New Granada, with aid of a British Legion, iii. 217; hardships in crossing the Andes, iii. 218; drives Barriero, Spanish commander, back, and captures Tunja, Boyacá, and Bogotá, iii. 221; president of republic of New Granada, iii. 225; aids Peruvians in expelling Spanish, made dictator and life president, iii. 225; republic of Bolivia founded. iii. 225.
Bolivia, republic founded and named after Bolivar. iii. 225.
Bonaparte, Joseph, placed on Spanish throne by Napoleon I. vii. 302.
Bonaparte, Napoleon. See NAPOLEON I.
Bonde, Sir Tord, prowess in defence of Charles VIII of Sweden, ix. 218; death. ix. 221.
"Book of Changes," Chinese classic. xii. 153.
"Book of History," by Confucius. xii. 145, xii. 153.

"Book of Odes," Chinese classic compiled by Confucius. xii. 153.
"Book of Rites," by Confucius. xii. 153.
"Books of Ancestry"—Theodore, czar of Russia, settles strife over precedence. viii. 110.
Books of the Sibyl—books said to contain prophecies of the Cumæan sibyl, enshrined in Rome, xi. 32; burned. xi. 34.
Boone, Daniel, explores Kentucky, i. 139; founds Boonesborough, i. 141; captured by Indians and rescued, i. 141; settlements attacked by Indians, i. 143; named "Great Long-Knife," i. 143; captured by Shawnees and adopted into tribe, i. 143; projected attack on Boonesborough, i. 146; flight of Boone, i. 147; puts garrison into state for defence, and defeats Indians, i. 150; subsequent life of exploration and adventure, i. 154; described by Audubon, i. 155; described by Washington Irving, i. 156; dies of old age. i. 156.
Boonesborough, first settlement in Kentucky, i. 141; attacked by Indians, i. 142; attack by Indians under French officers repulsed. i. 150.
Bors de Ganis, sees Sangreal, xiv. 120; adventure of the enchanted chamber, xiv. 120; great deeds prophesied, xiv. 125; vow of bread and water, xiv. 173; rescues the lady from Pridam le Noir, xiv. 175; dream of the birds and the flowers, xiv. 176; adventure of Lionel and rescue of the lady, xiv. 179; tempted of the foul fiend in many guises, xiv. 182; interpretation of adventures and dreams, xiv. 187; attacked by Lionel, xiv. 189; saved by Colgrevance, xiv. 191; the voice from heaven, xiv. 193; sails over sea with Percivale, xiv. 194; adventure of the magic ship, xiv. 195; joined by Galahad, xiv. 198; sacrament at Castle of Carbonek, xiv. 218; sails with Galahad and the Grail to the Holy Land, xiv. 222; death of Galahad and Grail taken to heaven, xiv. 224; Percivale a hermit, and dies, xiv. 224; Bors to Camelot, xiv. 224; champion of Guenever against Mador de la Porte, xiv. 231; fights with Lancelot in defence of Guenever, xiv. 300; saves Lancelot from Arthur, xiv. 301; sorely wounded by Gawaine, xiv. 302; becomes hermit with Lancelot and Bevidere, xiv. 344; death of Lancelot, xiv. 346; goes to Holy Land. xiv. 348.
Bors, King, allied with Arthur. xiii. 32.
Bosnia, harried by Turks. viii. 284.
Boston, British troops in previous to Revolution. i. 159.

Bourbon, Duke of, traitor to France, killed in assault on Rome. vii. 188.
Bowie, Colonel James, border fighter, duellist, and inventor of bowie-knife, ii. 221; murdered on sick bed at the Alamo. ii. 223.
Boyacá, decisive victory of Bolivar. iii. 223.
Boyhood of Peter the Great; education, tasks, and pursuits, foundation of future greatness. viii. 114.
Braemar, Scottish forest, meeting of Jacobite nobles, and plot in cause of James Francis Edward, iv. 315; plot to take Edinburgh. iv. 319.
Bragwaine, Isolde's chief gentlewoman. xiii. 269.
Brant, Indian leader, joins St. Leger in attack on Fort Schuyler. i. 197.
Brazil, a Drama of Plunder, Murder and Revenge, iii. 163; repeatedly attacked by freebooters, iii. 163; capture and sack of Rio de Janeiro by French, iii. 164; seat of Portuguese court, iii. 257; John VI deposed, iii. 259; reign of Pedro I, iii. 261; reign of Pedro II, iii. 263; deposed, and republic organized, iii. 263; civil warfare. iii. 265.
Brennus, Gaulish invader of Italy, driven from Rome. xi. 94.
Breuse Sans Pité, adventure with Gawaine and Tristram, xiii. 314; overcome by Tristram, xiii. 351; adventure with Tristram and Palamides. xiv. 57.
Breunor, lord of the castle Pleure, killed by Tristram. xiii. 272.
Briseis, Latin maiden, captured by Achilles. x. 11.
Britain, invaded by Cæsar. xi. 210.
British at New York. i. 180.
Broussel, councillor, arrest causes revolt in Paris. vi. 233.
Bruce at Bannockburn—Robert Bruce, champion of Scotland, defeats Edward II at Bannockburn. iv. 149.
Brunehild, marries Sigebert, king of Austrasia, vi. 30; death of Sigebert and flight of Brunehild from Fredegonde, vi. 31; marries Merovée, son of Chilperic, vi. 31; returns to Austrasia, vi. 32; beneficent reign, vi. 36; dissensions in her court, vi. 37; taken by Clotaire II and dashed to pieces by a wild horse. vi. 39.
Brunke, cruel chancellor of Birger, beheaded at Stockholm. ix. 209.
Brutus. See Lucius Junius Brutus, Marcus Junius Brutus.

Bryant, W. C., "Song of Marion's Men." i. 235.
Bryatesson, Mans, nominated by Gothland insurgents king of Sweden. ix. 289.
Brydon, Dr., survivor of slaughter of Elphinstone's army by Afghans. iv. 350.
Buccaneers—Morgan the freebooter, and the raid on Panama, iii. 151; wonderful march of the freebooters, iii. 173; buccaneers. vii. 206.
Buckingham, Marquis of, romantic ride with Prince Charles of England to Paris and Madrid, iv. 241; negotiations in the match between Charles and the Infanta Maria, iv. 251; made duke. iv. 261.
Buddhism, introduced into Japan from Corea and becomes state religion, xii. 35; rise of Christianity in Japan. xii. 97.
Buddhists, dissolute character in Japan, xii. 75; destroyed by Nobunaga, xii. 75; monasteries of Hiyeizan destroyed and Houguanje surrendered. xii. 76.
Buffooneries of the Russian court. viii. 174.
Bulgaria, harried by Turks. viii. 284.
Burgoyne, failure of expedition against Fort Schuyler. i. 195.
Burgundy, tributary to France, vi. 28; ceded to Germany by Francis I of France, vii. 188; nobles refuse to ratify the treaty, vii. 190; ravaged by Danes. ix. 45.
Burislav, king of Wendland, friendship to Olaf. ix. 94, ix. 102.
Burita, Countess, deeds of mercy and daring at Saragossa. vii. 305.
Burning of Moscow. vi. 316.
Burning of the Summer Palace—Europeans penetrate Peking. xii. 315.
Burr, Aaron, inveigles Harman Blennerhasset into his treasonable schemes, i. 252; hoped to establish independent empire in Southwest, i. 253; suspicions of Jefferson roused, inquiries set on foot, and steps to frustrate him, i. 254; Ohio militia seize and destroy Blennerhasset's house, i. 256; project abandoned, Burr arrested, tried for treason, and acquitted, i. 257; Blennerhasset ruined. i. 258.
Bushnell, inventor of the "American Turtle," first torpedo. i. 180.

Cabot, Sebastian, explores South America for Spain, iii. 109; discovers Rio de la Plata. iii. 109.
Cadiz, Spain, legend of Greek king's daughter. vii. 13.

Cæsar and Pompey. xi. 208.
Cæsar and the Pirates. xi. 204.
Cagliostro, Count, vi. 277; acquitted in case of the Diamond Necklace. vi. 279.
Caius Cassius, conspirator against Cæsar, xi. 220; defeated and dies at Philippi. xi. 226.
Caius Cæsar, surnamed Caligula, mad rage for cruelty and blood, xi. 236; killed. xi. 242.
Caius Gracchus. See GRACCHI AND THEIR FALL.
Caius Marius, ousts Metellus from command and leads army that finally defeats Jugurtha, xi. 176; Sulla becomes his lieutenant, xi. 177; enters Rome in triumph, xi. 179; defeats invasion of Germans, xi. 180; jealousy of Sulla, xi. 181; open break over leadership against Mithridates, and Marius forced to flee, xi. 183; adventures in flight to Africa, xi. 184; abetted by Cinna, a consul, returns to Rome and gives it over to the outrage of his army, xi. 188; elected consul, and dies of dissipation. xi. 190.
Caius Marcius Coriolanus, noble Roman youth, wins oaken wreath at battle of Lake Regillus, xi. 60; exploits before Corioli, in Volscian war, xi. 60; surnamed Coriolanus, xi. 61; offends plebeians by pride and haughtiness, and flees into land of Volscians, xi. 62; leads Volscians against Rome, xi. 62; spares Rome through pleadings of Volumnia, his mother, xi. 65; dies in exile. xi. 67.
Caius Mucius, Roman patriot, attempts to assassinate Lars Porsenna, xi. 47; fortitude, xi. 48; surnamed Scævola, xi. 49; rewarded by Romans. xi. 49.
Calais, besieged by Edward III of England and beset by famine, iv. 162; ludicrous relief expedition of King Philip, iv. 164; surrender of the six burgesses, iv. 169; wrath of the king and mercy of Queen Philippa, iv. 171; Calais as an English possession. iv. 173.
Calendar, reformed by Cæsar and Gregory XIII. xi. 218.
Caligula. See CAIUS CÆSAR.
Callias, Argonaut, rescues Phineus from Harpies. x. 25.
Calmar Union, ix. 215; unsatisfactory to Sweden. ix. 217.
Calmuck. See KALMUCK.
Calverley, Sir Hugh, leader of English Free Companies in Spain. vii. 156.
Calydonian boar, killed by Theseus. x. 35.
Calypso and Ulysses. x. 21.
Camden, South Carolina, Gates defeated. ii. 166.

Camillus at the Siege of Veii. xi. 87.
Campbell, William, at battle of King's Mountain. ii. 169.
Campeachy, sacked by Lewis Scott, buccaneer. vii. 268.
Campos, Martinez, Spanish governor-general in Cuba. iii. 329.
Canada, attempt of Sir William Phips to wrest from France, i. 67; expedition of Ethan Allen fails, i. 178; gold found in the Klondike, i. 330; captured by England from France. ii. 149.
Canterbury, Saint Martin's church. iv. 11.
Canute the Great, king of six nations. ix. 121.
Canute, son of Sweyn Forkbeard, conquers England, ix. 67; bribes Norwegian chiefs, and dethrones Olaf the Saint, ix. 116; driven from England by Ethelred, ix. 122; invades England, ix. 123; death of Edmond and accession of Canute, ix. 123; king of Denmark, ix. 124; establishes Christianity in Denmark, ix. 124; good rule of England, ix. 124; incident of the seashore, ix. 126; greatest sovereign of his day, ix. 127; kills Ulf, ix. 128; dies. ix. 130.
Caonabo, Carib cacique, captured by Ojeda and sent to Spain. iii. 19.
Capaneus, Argive chief, killed before Thebes. x. 44.
Capistrano, Giovanni da, in defence of Belgrade against Turks, v. 210; dies. v. 216.
Capitol, temple on Capitoline Hill at Rome. xi. 33.
Captain Gordon and the Raccoon Roughs. ii. 252.
Captain Robert E. Lee and the Lava-Beds. ii. 231.
Captivity of Captain Golownin, Russian officer who penetrated Japan. xii. 113.
Captivity of Richard Cœur de Lion. iv. 107.
Carados, king of, defeated by Arthur. xiii. 38.
Carados, Sir, adventure with Gawaine, xiii. 129; tournament at the Castle of Maidens. xiii. 322.
Career of a Desert Chief—rise and fall of Galdan, Kalmuck chief. xii. 290.
Career of a knight errant. vi. 133.
Career of Bishop Hatto. v. 58.
Career of Grimoald. v. 28.
Caribs, massacre garrison at La Navidad, Cuba. iii. 17.
Carlion, Arthur's court at. xiii. 28.
Carlism in Spain, history of. vii. 313.
Carlos, prince of the Asturias, madness and death. vii. 213.
Carlotta, empress of Maximilian of Mexico, insane through grief. iii. 320.

Caroni River, explored by Raleigh. iii. 145.
Carpenter Peter of Zaandam—Peter the Great works in Holland and England to get knowledge. viii. 123.
Carpini, Friar John, mission to Tartars, xii. 239; first European to approach China. xii. 240.
Carthage, defeated in Sicily by Timoleon, x. 280; first war with Rome, xi. 126; defeated at sea, xi. 128; invasion and defeats by Regulus, xi. 130; Regulus defeated by Xanthippus, xi. 131; terms of peace refused, and Regulus dies in Carthage, xi. 133; Sicily, Sardinia, and Corsica lost to Rome, xi. 135; Spain conquered by Hamilcar, Hasdrubal, and Hannibal, xi. 136; Hannibal invades Italy, and harries it for fifteen years, xi. 139; Hasdrubal, his brother, killed, xi. 147; Scipio captures Spain, invades Carthage, and defeats Hannibal at Zama, xi. 148; rehabilitated by Hannibal during seven years of peace, xi. 149; Hannibal driven out by enemies, xi. 149; Rome's jealousy of her powerful rival, xi. 158; Cato preaches that Carthage must be destroyed—"delenda est Carthago," xi. 158; beset by Numidia, Carthage asks aid from Rome, xi. 159; submission made, and arms given up, xi. 159; popular fury and outbreak, xi. 161; Scipio, young Roman general, forces terms of peace, and destroys Carthage, xi. 162; new city built on site by Augustus, important in the Christian era, and destroyed by Arabs. xi. 164.
Carthagena (or New Carthage), founded by Hamilcar in Spain. xi. 137.
Casca, conspirator against Cæsar. xi. 222.
Cassius. See CAIUS CASSIUS.
Castle Dangerous. xiii. 204.
Castle of Maidens, tourney at. xiii. 322.
Castor and Pollux, in search for the Golden Fleece, x. 23; aid Romans in battle of Lake Regillus. xi. 50.
Catharine, Livonian girl, prisoner of war, married by Peter the Great, viii. 171; character, viii. 172; usurps throne, viii. 173; Mentchikof her prime minister, viii. 173; death of Catharine. viii. 173.
Catharine the Great, empress of Russia, marries Peter III, viii. 184; gross conduct of Peter, viii. 185; usurps the throne, viii. 187; poltroonery and abdication of Peter, viii. 191; Peter murdered, viii. 193; building of Kherson by Potemkin, viii. 220; friendship with Voltaire. viii. 220.
Cathay. See CHINA.

Catherine, peasant queen of Erik, retires to Finland, and much loved by peasantry. ix. 309.
Catiline, appears in proscription of Sulla. xi. 195.
Catulus, Roman consul with Sulla against Germans. xi. 181.
Caudine Forks—the Samnite wars, disastrous defeat of Roman army in the pass of Caudium, bad faith of the Romans. xi. 116.
Caupolican, chief of the Araucanians. iii. 118.
Causes of Spain's decadence. vii. 246.
Cave of Covadonga—victory of Spanish under Pelayo starts the reconquest of Spain from the Moors. vii. 60.
Celer, kills Remus, xi. 13; derivation of "celerity." xi. 13.
Cerignola, Italy, Spanish victory over French. vii. 179.
Cerro Gordo, Mexico, taken by General Scott. iii. 299.
Cervantes, author of "Don Quixote," wounded at battle of Lepanto. vii. 233.
Chæronéa, battle between Thebes and Sparta, x. 261; Greeks decisively defeated by Macedonians under Philip. x. 294.
Châlons, defeat of Attila. vi. 15.
Chambersburg, Pennsylvania, raided by J. E. B. Stuart. ii. 261.
Champe, John, detailed by Washington to capture Benedict Arnold, i. 211; apparent desertion and flight, i. 214; welcomed in New York, i. 218; plan to capture Arnold, i. 219; failure of plan, i. 221; forced to serve in the South under Arnold, i. 221; escapes, and welcomed by old comrades, i. 222; rewarded by Washington and discharged. i. 222.
Champlain and the Iroquois. i. 34.
Champlain, Samuel de, governor at Quebec, joins Hurons and Algonquins against the Iroquois, i. 34; discovery of Lake Champlain, i. 41; battle between the Algonquins and Iroquois, i. 43; execution of firearms, i. 44; returns to Quebec, i. 45; joins Montagnais and Algonquins against Iroquois, i. 45; wounded, i. 47; defeat of the Iroquois, i. 48; subsequent explorations. i. 49.
Chancellorsville, battle of, ii. 319; Stonewall Jackson's flank attack on Hooker, ii. 319; described by Heros von Borcke, ii. 320; rout of the eleventh corps Federal troops, ii. 323; described by Lossing, ii. 324; Stonewall Jackson wounded and dies, ii. 329; battle won for Confederates. ii. 330.

Chang Chikie, Chinese patriot, last defence against Tartar invasion, xii. 249; death by drowning. xii. 253.
Chang Keen, Chinese councillor, search for Yuchi, and exploration of Asia. xii. 190.
Changchun, Chinese soldier, heroic death in siege of Sianyang and Fanching. xii. 244.
Changkone, Chinese soldier, heroic death in siege of Sianyang and Fanching. xii. 244.
Changsungchi, wife of Taitsong the Great. xii. 222.
Chapel Perilous. xiii. 164.
Chapultepec, Mexico, stormed and taken by General Scott. iii. 304.
Charge of the Light Brigade. viii. 267.
Charilaus, king of Sparta. x. 51.
Charlemagne and the Avars. vi. 47.
Charlemagne, invades Germany, resisted by Wittekind, v. 37; lays country waste, v. 42; surrender of Wittekind, v. 44; invades Spain, vi. 41; defeated by Saracens at Saragossa, vi. 41; retreat, and death of Roland at Roncesvalles, vi. 41; service to Europe, vi. 47; conquers Saxons, Italians and Moors in Spain, vi. 48; incursion and defeat of the Avars (Hunnish tribes), vi. 49; invasion on Avars, vi. 51; country of Avars, vi. 52; victories, followed by pestilence and retreat, vi. 54; Avars defeated by Margrave Eric and King Pepin of Italy, vi. 55; spoils distributed by Charlemagne, vi. 56; Avars vassals of Frankish kings, vi. 57; reigns over western Europe, vi. 58; services to civilization, vi. 58; crowned "Emperor of the West and Augustus." vi. 64.
Charles, duke of Lorraine, reinforces Vienna in Turkish siege, v. 281; defeats Turks at Mohacz. v. 287.
Charles I of England, romantic ride with Buckingham to Paris and Madrid, iv. 241; sees Henrietta Maria, iv. 246; woos Infanta Maria of Spain, iv. 248; difficulties in way of the match, iv. 252; returns without bride, iv. 258; joy of the English people at failure of the match, iv. 260; marries Henrietta Maria. iv. 261.
Charles I, king of Spain, defeats Francis I of France at Pavia, vii. 183; holds Francis prisoner, vii. 186; releases him by treaty, vii. 188; entertained by Francis in Paris. vii. 191.
Charles II of England, romantic escape after battle of Worcester. iv. 276.
Charles IV, imbecile king of Spain. vii. 292.

Charles V, king of Spain and emperor of Germany, disastrous attack on Algiers, vii. 198; abdicates in favor of Philip II, and retires to monastery of Yuste, vii. 202; habits and pastimes, vii. 206; fondness for watches, vii. 211; dies. vii. 212.
Charles VII of France, crowned at Rheims. vi. 131.
Charles VIII. See KARL KNUTSON.
Charles IX of France, massacre of Saint Bartholomew. vi. 188.
Charles X, and the invasion of Sweden. ix. 319.
Charles X, succeeds to throne of Sweden, ix. 319; Denmark and Austria attack Sweden, ix. 319; abandons Poland and invades Denmark, ix. 319; crosses the sea on the ice, ix. 321; captures Copenhagen, ix. 322; forces treaty of peace, ix. 322; breaks treaty and attacks Denmark, ix. 322; defeated by Dutch fleet, ix. 323; dies. ix. 325.
Charles XII, "the Firebrand of Sweden." ix. 326.
Charles XII of Sweden, ancestry and boyhood, ix. 326; warlike character, ix. 326; Sweden at his accession, ix. 327; coronation, ix. 328; extravagance and misrule, ix. 328; attacked by Denmark, Poland, and Russia, ix. 329; forces Denmark to peace, ix. 332; defeats Russia in battle of Narva, ix. 333; defeats Poland and takes Warsaw, ix. 336; invades Russia, and defeated, ix. 337; flees to Turkey, ix. 340; dies, ix. 342; Sweden loses all her conquests. ix. 342.
Charles XIII of Sweden. ix. 350.
Charles XIV. See BERNADOTTE.
Charles Augustus, heir to Swedish throne, dies. ix. 350.
Charles Edward, the Young Pretender, flight after Culloden, with services of Flora McDonald. iv. 324.
Charles John. See BERNADOTTE.
Charles of Anjou, wars against Ghibellines, v. 131; loses Sicilian possessions in "Sicilian Vespers." v. 137.
Charles of Bourbon, Constable of France, defection from France, vi. 176; general of Italian army, vi. 178; killed at Rome. vi. 186.
Charles the Bold and the Swiss. vi. 158.
Charles the Bold of Burgundy, adventure with Louis XI of France, vi. 147; invades Switzerland and defeated by Swiss, vi. 158; killed at Nancy. vi. 165.
Charles the Fat, emperor of France, v. 53; cowardly behavior in Norseman raids. ix. 44.
Charleston, South Carolina, attacked by Spanish. ii. 95.
Charter Oak. i. 85.

Cherokee Indians, bribed by British to attack settlers. ii. 167.
Cherusci, German tribe, repel invasion of Romans. v. 8.
Chevalier La Salle, the explorer of the Mississippi. ii. 62.
"Chevalier of the Cart." xiv. 260.
Chickahominy Indians, capture Captain John Smith, ii. 29; defeated by Sir William Berkeley. ii. 46.
Chili, Araucanians and the Spanish invaders, iii. 116; Santiago and Concepcion founded by Valdivia, iii. 118; Araucanians defeated by Villagrau, iii. 126; Spanish rule broken by San Martin and O'Higgins at Santiago and Maypo. iii. 247.
China, legendary migration to Japan, xii. 10; Mongol emperors Genghis Khan and Kublai Khan defeated in invasion of Japan, xii. 67; how the empire of China arose and grew, xii. 142; legendary early history, origin, and culture, xii. 143; early kings, xii. 144; "Book of History" of Confucius, xii. 145; boundaries in early history, xii. 148; Confucius, the Chinese sage, xii. 150; literary classics, xii. 153; founder of the Chinese empire, Hoangti, first emperor of China, destroys internal enemies and welds empire, xii. 156; Hoangti suppresses literature and burns all the books in the empire, xii. 166; Kaotsou and the dynasty of the Hans, xii. 172; empress poisoner of China—Liuchi, empress, poisons all opponents and rules China, xii. 180; invasion of the Tartar steppes—effective campaigns against Tartars, prowess of Emperor Vouti, xii. 186; "Crimson Eyebrows"—Fanchong and his rebel army, xii. 192; conquest of Central Asia by Chinese under Panchow, able general, xii. 197; peaceful character of Chinese, xii. 197; invasion of Japan under Kublai Khan, Tartar emperor, xii. 198; commerce with Romans opened by Panchow, xii. 200; siege of Sinching, heroic defence by Chante, xii. 202; end of Han dynasty and China divided into three kingdoms, xii. 202; kings of Wei conquer whole country and found dynasty of Tsin, xii. 202; from the shoemaker's bench to the throne, career of Lieouyu, xii. 202; decrepitude of China, incursions of Tartars, xii. 205; imperial cap, xii. 211; three notable women—Mongchi, defender of Chanyang; Houchi, queen of Wei; and Lieouchi, defender of Tsetong, xii. 212; reign of Taitsong the Great, xii. 217; imperial library and college founded, xii. 222; a female Richelieu—Princess Wou rules

China as real empress, xii. 222; Tartars and Genghis Khan—conquest of China and the civilized world, xii. 228; how the Friars fared among the Tartars, xii. 236; siege of Sianyang, heroic defence against Kublai Khan, xii. 242; death struggle of China—succumbs to invasion of Tartars, heroic deeds of Chang Chikie, xii. 249; palace of Kublai Khan, described by Marco Polo, xii. 255; great canal dug by Kublai Khan, xii. 259; expulsion of the Mongols, xii. 264; rise of the Manchus, xii. 272; Manchu conquest of China, xii. 281; career of a desert chief—rise and fall of Galdan, Kalmuck chief, xii. 290; China in the seventeenth century, xii. 290; raid of the Goorkhas—invasion of Thibet and subjugation of Goorkhas by Chinese troops, xii. 299; how Europe entered China, xii. 306; opium war, xii. 308; Amoy, Ning-po, Shanghai, Nanking, and Canton taken, xii. 311; burning of the Summer Palace—Europeans penetrate Peking, loot and burn Summer Palace in the Opium war, xii. 315; a great Christian movement and its fate—Tai-Ping rebellion, xii. 323; ethical ideas of Chinese, xii. 323; war with Japan over Corea, xii. 330; loses decisive naval battle in the Yellow Sea, xii. 339; Boxer outbreak, xii. 352; progressive outlook for new century. xii. 354.

Chinai, mikado of Japan, husband of Jingu, killed in Kinshin. xii. 29.

Chinese Wall, started by Hoangti. xii. 158.

Chen-nung, Chinese king, invents the plough. xii. 145.

Chlidon, actor in the rescue of Thebes from Sparta. x. 250.

Chlopicki, leader of Polish revolt, viii. 249; killed. viii. 250.

Choo Yuen Yang, Chinese soldier and emperor, birth and childhood, xii. 264; drives out Mongols and ascends throne as Hongwou, xii. 265; institutes Ming dynasty, xii. 269; able and enlightened rule, xii. 269; dies. xii. 271.

Chopart, French governor, affronts Natchez Indians, ii. 79; attacked by Natchez Indians, ii. 84; killed. ii. 84.

Christian I, king of Denmark, short rule over Sweden, ix. 223; invades Sweden and defeated by Sten Sture. ix. 226.

Christian II, king of Denmark, crowned king of Sweden, ix. 241, ix. 271; wholesale murder of Swedish patriots, ix. 241; promulgates progressive laws for Denmark, ix. 272; discontent throughout Scandinavia, ix. 272; secession of Jutland, ix. 273; flees from Denmark, and reaches Antwerp, ix. 275; wanderings during exile, ix. 276; invades Norway, and proclaimed king, ix. 277; defeated in Sweden, captured, and imprisoned. ix. 279.

Christian IV, king of Denmark, defeated by Tilly. v. 256.

Christianity carried to New World, i. 14; introduced into Japan by Francis Xavier, xii. 101; spread of, xii. 102; decline and fall in Japan—faults of Europeans disgust Japanese, and lead to proscription of Christianity and exclusion of foreigners, xii. 106; Christianity favored by Nobunaga, xii. 107; proscribed by Hideyoshi, xii. 107; put down under Iyeyasu and successors, xii. 108; tortures and death endured by converts. xii. 109.

Christians, persecution under Nero. xi. 260.

Christina, princess of Hesse, sought in marriage by Erik of Sweden. ix. 300.

Christmas Day on the Plantation. ii. 241.

"Chronicle of the Cid." vii. 82.

Chungwan, Chinese soldier, defends Ningyuen against Manchus. xii. 279.

"Church's Worm." See GORM.

Churubusco, Mexico, taken by General Scott. iii. 299.

Cicero, saved from proscription of Sulla, xi. 196; orations against Verres and Catiline, xi. 208; killed in proscription by second triumvirate. xi. 225.

Cid, valiant champion of Spain, vii. 81; birth and boyhood, vii. 82; quarrel with King Alfonso, vii. 85; exiled, vii. 86; joins Moors at Saragossa, vii. 88; rejoins Alfonso, vii. 88; recaptures Valencia, and defends it against Moorish attacks, vii. 89; death and burial. vii. 93.

Cimber, conspirator against Cæsar. xi. 223.

Cimmerians. viii. 7.

Cimon, Athenian aristocratic leader, x. 191; brilliant soldier, controversy with Pericles, and ostracized. x. 191.

Cincinnatus and the Æquians. xi. 68.

Cineas, counselor of Pyrrhus of Epirus. x. 326.

Cinna. See CORNELIUS CINNA.

Cinq-Mars, duke, favorite of Louis XIII of France, vi. 225; executed for conspiracy against Louis XIII. vi. 231.
Circassia, description, viii. 258; Schamyl, Circassian chief, defies Russian troops for twenty-five years, viii. 258; Schamyl captured and Circassia absorbed by Russia. viii. 266.
Circe, enchantress in the Odyssey, x. 20; purifies Medea of murder. x. 29.
Circle City, Alaska. i. 328.
Civil War, battle between *Monitor* and *Merrimac*, i. 295; stealing a locomotive, i. 285; an escape from Libby prison, i. 298; ironclads in, i. 314; Cushing sinks the Confederate *Albemarle*, i. 316; enthusiasm in Southern States, ii. 252, ii. 258; attitude on secession, ii, 260; ends with home-coming of General Lee. ii. 345.
Clark, George Rogers, captures Kaskaskia, ii. 153; finds papers implicating British in Indian raids, ii. 155; takes Vincennes, ii. 157; hardships in second journey to Vincennes, ii. 158; crossing drowned lands, ii. 159; recapture of Vincennes, ii. 163; exploits win country north of the Ohio River. ii. 164.
Cleisthenes, king of Sicyon, marries his daughter Agaristé to Megacles of Athens, whence Cleisthenes and Pericles of Athens. x. 86.
Cleisthenes, Athenian law-giver, son of Megacles and Agaristé, x. 92; services in making Athens a democratic city, x. 175; "ostracism" established. x. 176.
Clement III, archbishop of Ravenna, elected pope. v. 89.
Cleombrotus, Spartan king, defeated by Thebans at Leuctra. x. 264.
Cleon, Athenian demagogue. x. 201.
Cleopatra, queen of Egypt, bewitches Antony, xi. 227; Antony defeated by Octavius at Actium, xi. 232; suicide of Antony and death of Cleopatra. xi. 233.
Cleveland, Colonel, at battle of King's Mountain. ii. 169.
Clinton, Sir Henry, pursuit of Israel Putnam delayed by Mrs. Murray. i. 187.
Clœlia, hostage of Romans to Etruscans, xi. 49; statue erected by Romans. xi. 49.
Clotaire, son of Chilperic and Fredegonde, vi. 33; kills Brunehild. vi. 39.
Clotilde, beautiful princess of Burgundy, vi. 18; parents and brothers murdered by Gondebaud, king of Burgundy, vi. 18; sought by Clovis in marriage, vi. 18;

flight from Gondebaud and marriage to Clovis, vi. 22; converts Clovis to Christianity. vi. 25.
Clovis, king of the Franks, marries Clotilde, princess of Burgundy, vi. 18; converted to Christianity by Clotilde, vi. 25; baptized with his warriors, vi. 27; makes France a nation, vi. 27; Burgundy tributary to France. vi. 28.
Coifi, pagan priest, converted to Christianity. iv. 16.
Colgrevance, saves Bors and killed by Lionel. xiv. 192.
Colgrevance, slain by Lancelot. xiv. 286.
Coligny, Admiral, killed on Saint Bartholomew's Day. vi. 192.
Colonna, commander of Papal ships at battle of Lepanto. vii. 226.
Colony, Empire, Republic; Revolution in Brazil. iii. 257.
Colorado River. Grand Cañon discovered by Coronado. iii. 105.
Colosseum. xi. 273.
Columbus, Christopher, discovery of San Salvador, iii. 7; discovery of Bahama Islands, iii. 9; discovery of Cuba, iii. 12; discovery of Hayti, iii. 15; discovery of Jamaica, iii. 195; Indians and the eclipse, iii. 196; brings word of his discoveries, vii. 151; episode of the egg, vii. 153; sails on second voyage, vii. 154; ruined by treachery, vii. 155; dies. vii. 155.
Columbus, Ohio, John H. Morgan, Confederate general, imprisoned. ii. 343.
Combat of Arthur and Accolan. xiii. 102.
Commodus, Roman emperor, fights in the arena. xi. 277.
Commune of Laon. vi. 81.
Commune of Paris. vi. 337.
Concepcion, Chili, founded by Valdivia. iii. 118.
Concord, Paul Revere's ride, i. 157; fight between militia and British troops, i. 166; opening of the Revolution. i. 168.
Confucius, Chinese sage, "Book of History," xii. 147; early history, becomes mandarin, xii. 150; moral teacher, xii. 151; descendants hereditary nobles, xii. 152; services in preserving early literature, xii. 153; "Book of History," "Book of Odes," "Book of Rites," "Spring and Autumn Annals." xii. 153.
Congress, Federal frigate, surrendered to the *Merrimac*, and burned. i. 278.
Congress, ends slave trade, ii. 208; embargo act. ii. 208.
Connecticut, Sir Edmund Andros governor general of New England, i. 80; Andros attempts to wrest char-

ter from Connecticut, i. 81; charter saved and hidden in Charter Oak, i. 84; Governor Fletcher made chief of Connecticut Militia, i. 87; foiled by Captain Wadsworth. i. 88.
Conquest of Central Asia, by Chinese under Panchow, brilliant general. xii. 197.
Conquest of Siberia. viii. 80.
Conrad II, succeeds Henry II as emperor of Germany, v. 64; rebellion of Duke Ernst. v. 65.
Conradin of Swabia, heads Ghibellines, v. 133; temporary success, defeat and execution by Charles of Anjou. v. 134.
Constantine, Roman emperor, embraces Christianity, and proclaims it state religion, xi. 319; "in hoc signo vinces," xi. 320; founds Constantinople as new capital of empire. xi. 321.
Constantinople, put to ransom by Oleg, Varangian king of Russia, viii. 18; incursions of Igor, son of Oleg, viii. 21; taken by Russians in campaign in behalf of Balkan states, viii. 284; founded by Constantine, capital of Roman empire, xi. 321; beauty. xi. 322.
Consuls, first established in Rome. xi. 41.
Contest of the Four Queens. xiii. 143.
Contréras, Mexico, taken by General Scott. iii. 299.
Convention of the French people during the French Revolution, controversy with Robespierre, vi. 307; Robespierre guillotined. vi. 314.
Cook, Captain, visits Hawaiian Islands, i. 338; killed. i. 339.
Copenhagen, Denmark, taken by Charles X of Sweden, ix. 322; again attacked and saved by Dutch fleet, ix. 323; bombardment and capture of. ix. 347.
Corcyra, island, Jason and Medea married. x. 29.
Corday, Charlotte, stabs Marat. vi. 307.
Cordova, captured by Moors and gallant defence by Pelistes, vii. 47; withstands attack by Pedro the Cruel and Moorish allies. vii. 167.
Corea, conquered by Jingu, the Japanese Amazon, xii. 27; conquest of importance to Japanese civilization, xii. 35; Wani, Corean schoolmaster, introduces writing into Japan, xii. 35; silk culture introduced into Japan, xii. 35; Buddhist missionaries go to Japan, xii. 35; reconquered by Japanese under Hideyoshi, xii. 85; resists invasion of Chinese emperor Taitsong, xii. 222; Corea and its neighbors—opening of Corea to foreign ideas, xii. 330; first step taken by Japan,

xii. 333; Fusan and Chemulpo made open ports, xii. 333; Japan's ascendency in Corea, xii. 333; agreement of neutrality between China and Japan, xii. 334; insurrection, leading to war between China and Japan over sovereignty. xii. 334.
Corinth, tyrants of the Bacchiadæ family overthrown by Cypselus, son of Aëtion and Labda, x. 93; downfall of Periander, x. 96; story of Timoleon and his wonderful campaign in Sicily, x. 271; captured and destroyed by Romans under Lucius Mummius, x. 346; plunder and destruction of priceless works of art, x. 348; rebuilt by Julius Cæsar. x. 348.
Coriolanus. See Caius Marcius Coriolanus.
Cornelia, noble Roman matron, mother of the Gracchi. xi. 165.
Cornelius Cinna, Roman consul, opposes Sulla, xi. 188; murdered on return of Sulla. xi. 191.
Cornell, Ezra, founder of Cornell University, i. 267; invents pipe-laying machine to lay Morse's telegraph wires, i. 268; failure of underground wires, i. 270; invents insulator, and success of overhead line, i. 271; gains wealth in telegraphic enterprises. i. 274.
Cornwallis, Lord, plans to win South for British, ii. 166; harries South Carolina, ii. 167; begins march north, ii. 167; forced to give up attempt on South, ii. 173; campaign to subdue South, ii. 178; Tarleton defeated at Cowpens, ii. 179; pursues Morgan, ii. 180; forces passage of Catawba River, ii. 180; pursues Williams, ii. 182; battle of Guilford Court-House, ii. 183; retreats to Charleston, South Carolina, ii. 183; campaign in Virginia, ii. 184; defeated at Yorktown. ii. 184.
Coronado and the Seven Cities of Cibola. iii. 97.
Coronado, Francisco Vasquez de, governor of New Galicia (country north of Mexico), iii. 97; search for the fabled seven cities of Cibola, iii. 99; discovers Grand Cañon of the Colorado, iii. 105; penetrates to Quivira (region of Kansas), iii. 107; returns empty handed. iii. 107.
Corsica, Carthaginian colony, taken by Rome. xi. 135.
Cortez, Hernando, parentage and early days, iii. 23; first voyage to America, iii. 24; conspiracy against Velasquez, iii. 25; leader of expedition to Yucatan. iii. 29.
Corvinus, Matthias, son of Hunyades, becomes king of Hungary. v. 216.
Corvus, Roman family, origin. xi. 107.

Cotton, ii. 185; "cotton is king," ii. 185; first export to England, ii. 185; progress of industry, ii. 186; extracting seed, ii. 187; Eli Whitney befriended by Mrs. Greene, ii. 188; cotton-gin invented by Eli Whitney, ii. 190; cotton industry founded by Whitney. ii. 192.

Cotton-Gin, invented by Eli Whitney, ii. 190; principle of, ii. 191; pirated, ii. 191; Whitney's perfected patents, ii. 192; patent lapsed. ii. 192.

Country of Strange Adventures. xiii. 120.

Courting by Proxy—anecdote of Mediæval Germany. v. 99.

Covadonga, decisive victory over Moors by Pelayo. vii. 60.

Cowpens, battle of. ii. 179.

Crassus, Roman soldier, with Sulla in victory over Samnites, xi. 193; defeats Spartacus and his gladiators with great slaughter, xi. 200; member of the triumvirate, killed in campaign in Parthia. xi. 211.

Creek Indians, ii. 77; side with British, ii. 194; massacre at Fort Mimms, ii. 194; defeated by Andrew Jackson at Tallushatches, ii. 198; defeated at Talladega, ii. 199; defeated at Tohopeka, and the Creek nation broken, ii. 203; cede half lands to United States. ii. 205.

Creon, king of Thebes. x. 43.

Crevecoeur, fort built by La Salle on site of Peoria. ii. 63.

Crime and Punishment of King Birger. ix. 202.

Crimean War, charge of the Light Brigade, viii. 267; fall of Sebastopol. viii. 276.

Crimessus, Sicily, decisive victory of Timoleon over Carthaginians. x. 283.

"Crimson Eyebrows"—Fanchong and his rebel army. xii. 192.

Croatan, connection with fate of second Raleigh colony. ii. 28.

Crockett, Colonel David, personality of, ii. 217; joins Texas revolt, ii. 217; killed at the Alamo. ii. 223.

Crœsus, king of Lydia, visited by Solon, x. 74; conquests, and growth of Lydian power, x. 77; death of Atys, his son, x. 79; defeated by Cyrus, Persian king, x. 82; saved from death by burning. x. 85.

Crommyonian sow, killed by Theseus. x. 35.

Cromwell and the Parliament—Oliver Cromwell overturns the "Rump Parliament." iv. 297.
Cronberg, naval battle of. ix. 344.
Crowning of Charlemagne. vi. 58.
Crown Point, fort captured by Colonel Seth Warner. i. 177.
Cruelty of the Spaniards to the Indians. iii. 186.
Crusade of Frederick II. v. 118.
Crusades—crusade of Frederick Barbarossa, v. 113; crusade of Frederick II, v. 118; preached by Peter the Hermit and Pope Urban II, vi. 69; Walter the Penniless and band cut up in Bulgaria, vi. 73; Peter the Hermit and band unsuccessful, vi. 73; Peter joins Godfrey de Bouillon, vi. 75; Nicæa and Antioch taken, vi. 75; crusaders besieged in Antioch, vi. 76; dream of Peter Bartholomew, and finding of sacred spear-head, vi. 76; Turks defeated, vi. 77; Jerusalem besieged and taken. vi. 78.
Cuba, discovery of by Columbus, iii. 12; Governor Tacon and Marti the smuggler, iii. 280; last insurrection in, iii. 325; Gomez, Maceo, and Marti return from exile and lead insurgents, iii. 327; unsuccessful defence of Weyler and Campos, Spanish governors-general, iii. 329; Lieutenant Hobson and the sinking of the *Merrimac*, iii. 336; battle of Santiago. vii. 327.
Cudjoe, the negro chief, and the Maroons of Jamaica. iii. 195.
Culloden, battle of. iv. 329.
Culpeper, "Minute Men" of. ii. 137.
Culpeper, Lord, granted Virginia estate, ii. 104; estate inherited by grandson, Lord Fairfax. ii. 105.
Cumberland, Federal frigate, sunk by the *Merrimac*, i. 277; heroic defense of. i. 277.
Curatii. See Horatii and Curatii.
Curtian Gulf—Curtius devotes himself to death to save Rome. xi. 105.
Cushing, Lieutenant William B., sinks Confederate ironclad *Albemarle*, i. 314; escape. i. 321.
Cuzco, Inca capital of Peru, splendor of. iii. 81.
Cycnus and the Trojan war. x. 7.
Cypselus, son of Aëtion and Labda, x. 92; saved from assassins, x. 95; tyrant of Corinth and father of Periander, x. 96; dies, x. 96; dynasty ended by death of Lycophron. x. 99.
Cyrus, Persian king, overthrows Crœsus. x. 82.

Cyrus, Persian satrap, attempts to wrest kingdom from Artaxerxes, his brother, x. 231; death in battle, x. 234; retreat of the ten thousand Greeks. x. 237.
Czar of Russia, only autocrat of Europe, viii. 64; meaning of autocracy, viii. 64; causes of autocracy. viii. 65.

Dædalus, builder of Cretan labyrinth, x. 34; escapes from the labyrinth by wings of his own making. x. 39.
Dagmar, Queen. See Margrete of Bohemia.
Dagonet, adventure with Tristram. xiii. 296.
Daimios, feudal position of, xii. 94; released from residence at Yedo, xii. 135; deprived of power. xii. 147.
Damas, false knight, oppresses Ontzlake his brother, xiii. 97; Arthur forced to become his champion, xiii. 98; judgment against him by Arthur. xiii. 108.
Daniel Boone, the Pioneer of Kentucky. i. 138.
Dannebrog, Danish national standard, tradition of. ix. 178.
Dannevirke, Danish wall against German attack. ix. 46.
Danton, guillotined during Reign of Terror. vi. 306.
Dare, Virginia, first English child born in America. ii. 27.
Darien, explored by Balboa. iii. 34.
Darius, Persian king, repulsed by Scythians, viii. 7; seats Syloson in rule of Samos, x. 107; cured of sprain by Democedes, rewards him richly but refuses permission to return to Greece, x. 110; incited by Democedes, plans invasion of Greece, x. 113; escape of Democedes by stratagem, x. 114; unsuccessfully invades Scythia, x. 117; saved from destruction by selfishness of Ionians, x. 121; unsuccessful revolt of the Greeks, x. 123; defeated at Marathon by Athenians under Miltiades, x. 126; death. x. 135.
Darius Codomannus, Persian king, defeated by Alexander the Great at Issus and Arbela, x. 296; death. x. 304.
Darrah, Lydia, i. 189.
Datis, Persian general, leads invasion of Greece, defeated at Marathon. x. 129.
Davies, buccaneer, sacks Nicaragua and Saint Augustine, Florida. vii. 268.
Dawson. i. 331.
De Ayllon. See Ayllon.
De Castro, cowardly governor of Rio de Janeiro. iii. 163.
De la Motte Valois, Madame, adventuress, dupes Cardinal de Rohan, vi. 273; whipped, branded and imprisoned. vi. 279.

De Narvaez. See NARVAEZ.
De Soto and the "Father of Waters." ii. 13.
De Soto, Hernando, expedition to America, ii. 13; lands at Tampa Bay, Florida, ii. 14; opposed by Indians, ii. 14; misfortunes of, ii. 16; maltreatment of Indians, ii. 16; costly victory over Indians at Mavilla (Mobile), ii. 17; discovers the Mississippi River, ii. 19; explores beyond Mississippi, ii. 20; expedition attacked by disease, ii. 21; dies, ii. 21; buried in Mississippi River, ii. 22; survivors of expedition land in Mexico, ii. 22; with Pizarro in Peru. iii. 73.
De Vinces, Peter, said to have invented the sonnet. v. 12.
Death of Lancelot and Guenever. iv. 339.
Death of the Red King. iv. 77.
Death Struggle of China—succumbs to invasion of Tartars. xii. 249.
Death Struggle of Greece—conquest of Greece by Rome, capture and destruction of Corinth, and capture of Athens. x. 345.
Death Struggle of Poland. viii. 248.
Decatur, Lieutenant, captures and destroys the frigate *Philadelphia*. i. 237.
Decemvirs, institution, xi. 75; tool of oppression of the Plebeians, xi. 77; misdeeds of Appius Claudius, xi. 77; popular uprising, expulsion of Decemvirs, and death of Appius Claudius. xi. 84.
Decimus Brutus, conspirator against Cæsar. xi. 221.
Declaration of Independence, Mecklenburg, ii. 54, ii. 134; of 1776, North Carolina first accession to. ii. 134.
Decline of the Mikados. xii. 35.
Decline and Fall of Christianity in Japan. xii. 106.
Deeds of Balin—Book II. xiii. 55.
Deeds of Constantine—embraces Christianity, and founds Constantinople. xi. 319.
Deeds of the Three Chosen Knights. xiv. 217.
Delaplace, Captain, commander at Fort Ticonderoga, surrenders to Ethan Allen. i. 176.
Delphi, miraculous rescue from invasion of Xerxes, x. 155; temple of Apollo inviolate, x. 288; seized by Phocis in retaliation for action of Amphictyonic Council, x. 289; robbed by Phocians, x. 291; invasion of Philip of Macedonia, temple restored to Delphians, x. 294; invasion of Locrians. x. 294.
Democedes, born in Crotona, becomes skilful surgeon, honored in cities of Greece, x. 109; made slave by

Orœtes, captured and sent as slave to Darius, x. 110; cures Darius of sprain, and in high favor, x. 110; cures Atossa, wife of Darius, of tumor, x. 113; escapes back to Crotona by stratagem, x. 114; marries daughter of Milo, the wrestler. x. 116.

Demosthenes, the world's greatest orator, x. 305, x. 364; sickly youth and education, x. 305; oration against Æschines, x. 311; revolt against Macedonia (Lamian War), proscribed as traitor, and suicide. x. 312.

Denia, Spain, stronghold against Moorish pirates. vii. 40.

Denmark. See SCANDINAVIA.

Destruction of Pompeii—eruption of Vesuvius. xi. 301.

Dewey, Commodore, defeats Spanish fleet at Manila. vii. 323.

Diagoridæ, illustrious family, descended from Aristomenes, Messenian hero. x. 65.

Diamond Necklace. vi. 271.

Diaz, Porfirio, Mexican patriot, war against Maximilian, iii. 322; becomes president. iii. 322.

Dido and Æneas. x. 19.

Diet of Worms. v. 224.

Dinadan, companion of Tristram, takes Tristram to Camelot, xiii. 302; adventures in Tristram's company, xiii. 304; jest against King Mark, xiv. 9; lay deriding King Mark, xiv. 17; befooled by Tristram, xiv. 23; adventure with Epinegris, xiv. 25; adventure with Tristram. xiv. 33.

Dinant, rescued by Tristram from Tauleas. xiii. 299.

Dinocrates, Messenian general, poisons Philopœmen, x. 344; suicide to avoid punishment. x. 344.

Dinwiddie, Governor, sends Washington to demand withdrawal of French from English ground, i. 98; their refusal, followed by French and Indian war. i. 104.

Diomedes and the Trojan war. x. 7.

Dionysia, festivals in honor of Bacchus, contests of tragic drama held in Athens. x. 322.

Dionysius, tyrant of Sicily, surrenders to Timoleon and exiled to Corinth, x. 278; unsuccessful competitor at Olympic games. x. 321.

Ditmarshers, warlike independence, ix. 236; defeat the invasion of King Hans of Denmark. ix. 237.

Dismemberment of Denmark. ix. 358.

Dixwell, Colonel, signer of death-warrant of Charles I, flees to New England on Restoration, i. 73; life in New England, i. 79; descendants. i. 79.

Dmitri, son of Ivan the Terrible, killed, viii. 85; guilt of Boris Godunof, viii. 86; death of Feodor and accession of Godunof, viii. 87; appearance of pretended Dmitri, and civil war against Godunof, viii. 91; death of Godunof, viii. 95; accession, viii. 96; mild rule, and indiscretions, viii. 96; dramatic death. viii. 98.
Dmitri Donskoi, ruler of Moscow, subjugates all Russia, viii. 55; breaks Tartar power. viii. 57.
Dole, Sanford B., president of Hawaiian Islands. i. 348.
Dolorous Stroke, prophesied by Merlin, xiii. 65; how Balin gave the Dolorous Stroke, xiii. 72; Pellam slain by Balin. xiii. 80.
Don Carlos. See CARLISM IN SPAIN.
Don John of Austria, commander of Spanish fleet at Lepanto. vii. 224.
"Don't Tread On Me." ii. 137.
Doom of Nero. xi. 262.
Doria, Andrew, Venetian admiral, at battle of Lepanto. vii. 225.
Douglas, Sir William, adherent of William Wallace. iv. 142.
Douglas Island, Alaska, gold find. i. 328.
Downfall of Rome—falls before invasions of Goths and other barbarians. xi. 331.
Draco, Athenian law-giver, severe laws. x. 73.
Drake, the Sea-King, and the Spanish Treasure-Ships. iii. 127.
Drake, Sir Francis, rescues Virginia colonists, ii. 26; raids the Spanish colonies of the Pacific, iii. 127; captures Spanish galleons and raids Valparaiso, iii. 128; sails northward in the Pacific and enters Golden Gate, iii. 135; circumnavigates the globe, iii. 136; knighted by Queen Elizabeth, iii. 138; raids Cadiz harbor, vii. 237; captures treasure-ship of armada. vii. 241.
"Draught of Love." xiii. 267.
Drevlians, kill Igor, Russian king, viii. 23; revenge of Olga, queen of Igor. viii. 23.
Dublin, taken by vikings. ix. 64.
Duclerc, French buccaneer, captures Rio de Janeiro, iii. 164; murdered by Portuguese. iii. 166.
Du Guesclin, Bertrand, early days, vi. 103; captured by the Black Prince, held captive, and ransomed, vi. 104; Constable of France, vi. 112; recovers French provinces from England, vi. 114; dies, vi. 115; leader of French free companions in Spain. vii. 156.

Duke de la Rowse, overthrown by Beaumains, xiii. 231; made knight of the Round Table. xiii. 236.
Dunmore, Lord, seizes gunpowder in Williamsburg magazine, ii. 135; indignation of people and uprising of colony, ii. 136; Patrick Henry leads volunteers against, ii. 138; pays for powder, ii. 138; proclaims Henry as traitor, ii. 138; lands British soldiers, ii. 138; flees from Williamsburg, ii. 139; takes possession of Norfolk, ii. 139; defeated by Colonials in first battle of Revolution in the South, ii. 140; bombards and burns Norfolk, ii. 142; ravages Chesapeake Bay, ii. 142; fortifies Gwyn's Island, defeated, and flees. ii. 142.
Dutch, allowed to trade in Japan. xii. 108.
Dyea, Alaska. i. 331.
Dynasty of the Tarquins. xi. 26.

Earl Haakon and the Jomsvikings. ix. 78.
Earle, Captain, escape from Libby prison. i. 305.
Early Days of a Famous Cavalier—Hernando Cortez. iii. 23.
Eastern Turkestan. See TURKESTAN.
Ecnomus, Roman fleet victorious over Carthaginians. xi. 129.
Edgar, king of England, treachery of Athelwold in wooing Elfrida, iv. 36; kills Athelwold and marries Elfrida. iv. 44.
Edinburgh, futile Jacobite attempt on castle. iv. 319.
Edmond, king of England, forced to divide kingdom with Canute, ix. 123; dies. ix. 123.
Edward the Martyr, king of England, succeeds Edgar, iv. 45; murdered by Elfrida, iv. 46; surnamed "Martyr." iv. 48.
Edward, Sir, killed by Uwaine. xiii. 735.
Edward III of England, besieges Calais, iv. 162; surrender of the six burgesses. iv. 169.
Edward, the Black Prince, defeats French at Poitiers, vi. 174; aids in setting Pedro the Cruel on his throne. vii. 163.
Edwin, earl of Mercia, insurrection against William the Conqueror. iv. 68.
Edwin, king of Northumbria, converted to Christianity. iv. 15.
Egil, son of Bald Grim, deeds of violence against Erik, ix. 53; viking career, ix. 54; ravages Norway, ix. 55; wrecked in Erik's Northumberland province, ix. 57; ransoms himself by his song, "Ransom of the Head,"

ix. 58; song, "Loss of the Son," ix. 59; dies in his bed. ix. 59.
Eirek the Red, early days, i. 12; discovers Greenland, i. 12; colonizes Greenland, i. 12; evil omen, i. 14; governor of Greenland Colony, i. 14; dies. i. 19.
El Dorado, Raleigh's search for. iii. 139.
Elaine, rescued by Lancelot from enchantment, xiv. 118; love for Lancelot, and wedded through enchantment, xiv. 119; deserted by Lancelot, xiv. 119; heals Lancelot of madness through the Sangreal, xiv. 127; Lancelot at Joyous Isle, xiv. 127; again deserted by Lancelot, xiv. 128; dies, xiv. 129; mother of Galahad. xiv. 136.
Elaine le Blank, "Lily Maid of Astolat," love for Lancelot, xiv. 241; gives him her token, xiv. 242; grief at his wounding, xiv. 248; seeks Lancelot and nurses him, xiv. 249; dies of grief at his parting, xiv. 254; black barge sails to Astolat, xiv. 257; buried by Lancelot. xiv. 259.
Eleuths, horde of Kalmuck Tartars. xii. 291.
Elfrida, beautiful daughter of Olgar of Devonshire, iv. 35; treachery of Athelwold to King Edgar, iv. 36; marries Athelwold, iv. 39; anger at deceit of Athelwold, iv. 42; murder of Athelwold, iv. 44; marries Edgar, iv. 44; death of Edgar, iv. 45; murders Edward, his successor, iv. 46; accession of Ethelred the Unready, her son. iv. 47.
Eli Whitney, the inventor of the cotton-gin. ii. 185.
Elizabeth, queen of England, defeat of "Invincible Armada," vii. 235; sought in marriage by Erik of Sweden. ix. 296.
Elizabeth Farnese and Alberoni. vii. 275.
Ellsworth, Miss Annie G., brings Morse news of appropriation by Congress to aid in experimenting with the telegraph, i. 266; chooses first message over telegraph, i. 273; "What hath God wrought!" i. 273.
Elphinstone, General, commander of British army in Afghanistan, forced to retreat, iv. 349; dies in captivity. iv. 356.
Ely, Island of, refuge of Hereward and Saxon patriots. iv. 65.
Elyata, Moorish princess, driven on Spanish coast by storms, vii. 40; wooed and won by Roderic, Gothic king, vii. 42; baptized Christian as Exilona, vii. 42; death of Roderic and rule of Moors, vii. 43; weds Abdul-Aziz, Moorish emir, vii. 44; ambition ruins Abdul-Aziz. vii. 45.

Embargo act. ii. 208.
Empress Poisoner of China—Liuchi. xii. 180.
Enchanted Castle of King Pellam. xiv. 117.
Enchanted Palace—legend of Toledo. vii. 17.
Enciso, expedition to Yucatan, iii. 34; seized and sent to Spain by Balboa. iii. 35.
End of Saxon England. iv. 49.
End of the Terror. vi. 306.
End of two Great Soldiers. v. 265.
England, explorations in North America, i. 98; Washington demands withdrawal of France from English ground, i. 98; refusal, followed by French and Indian war, i. 104; captures Canada from France, ii. 149; ceded Florida by Spain, ii. 149; Drake, the sea-king, and the Spanish treasure-ships, iii. 127; Sir Walter Raleigh and the quest for El Dorado, iii. 139; maroons of Jamaica, iii. 193; how England became Christian, iv. 9; King Alfred and the Danes, iv. 19; treaty of Wedmore frees England from Danish attack, iv. 34; wooing of Elfrida, iv. 35; end of Saxon England—invasion of England by Normans, iv. 49; Hereward the Wake, iv. 62; death of the Red King—William Rufus, iv. 77; Henry I seizes throne, iv. 83; how the white ship sailed, iv. 86; a contest for a crown—war between Stephen and Maud, iv. 93; anarchy and misrule, iv. 93; captivity of Richard Cœur de Lion, iv. 107; Robin Hood and the Knight of the Rueful Countenance, iv. 121; Wallace, the Hero of Scotland, iv. 136; siege of Calais, iv. 162; Black Prince at Poitiers, iv. 174; Wat Tyler and the men of Kent, iv. 185; Black Death, iv. 185; labor troubles after the Black Death, and Wat Tyler insurrection, iv. 186; effect of the insurrection, iv. 195; White Rose of England, iv. 196; Wars of the Roses, iv. 196; Field of the Cloth of Gold, iv. 213; story of Arabella Stuart, iv. 228; Love's Knight-Errant—escapades of Prince Charles Stuart and Marquis of Buckingham, iv. 231; taking of Pontefract castle, iv. 262; adventures of a royal fugitive, iv. 276; Cromwell and the Parliament, iv. 297; relief of Londonderry, iv. 305; hunting of Braemar, iv. 315; flight of Prince Charles, iv. 324; Trafalgar and the death of Nelson, iv. 339; "England expects every man to do his duty," iv. 339; massacre of an army, iv. 349; royal and diamond jubilees of Queen Victoria, iv. 358; former jubilees in English history,

iv. 358; attempted invasion by Philip II, vii. 235; "Invincible Armada" defeated by Lord Howard and shattered by storms, vii. 240; Gibraltar ceded by Spanish, vii. 286; invaded by vikings, ix. 62, ix. 66; conquered by Canute, ix. 67; invaded by Sweyn, ix. 122; retaken by Ethelred, ix. 122; invaded by Canute and divided between Edmond and Canute, ix. 123; death of Edmond and accession of Canute, ix. 123; reign of Harold and Hardicanute, ix. 130; invasion and death of Tostig, ix. 142; death of Harold at Hastings, ix. 144; invades Denmark, ix. 336; bombards Copenhagen, and confiscates Danish fleet. ix. 347.

"England expects every man to do his duty." iv. 339.

English Invaders and the Danish Fleet. ix. 343.

Envoys of Life and Death—revolt of Lesbos, and saving of the people from revenge of Athens. x. 200.

Enzio, son of Frederick II, unhappy fate. v. 125, v. 129.

Epaminondas, able leader of Thebans, x. 259; defeats Sparta at Leuctra, x. 264; invades Sparta, x. 267; builds Megalopolis, capital of Arcadians, x. 269; restores Messenia, x. 269; impeached and acquitted. x. 270.

Ephialtes, Grecian traitor at Thermopylæ. x. 150.

Ephors, Spartan civil rulers. x. 53.

Epigoni, warriors victorious over Thebes. x. 49.

Epinegris, Sir, adventure with Dinadan, xiv. 25; succored by Palamides. xiv. 87.

Epirus, country of Greece, birthplace of Pyrrhus. x. 324.

Episodes in the Life of a Traitor. vi. 176.

Eponina, wife of Sabinus, accompanies him in wanderings, and executed with him. xi. 289.

Era of the Impostors—civil war in Russia, leading to accession of the Romanof dynasty. viii. 101.

Eratosthenes, Greek astronomer. x. 365.

Eric, duke of Friuli, invades and defeats Avars. vi. 55.

Ericsson, John, builds *Monitor*. i. 280.

Erik, king of Upsala, ix. 9; Torborg, his daughter, ix. 9; winning of Torborg in marriage by King Rolf of Gothland. ix. 11.

Erik, son of Harold Fair-Haired, named overlord of Norway, ix. 49; viking boyhood, ix. 49; surnamed Blood-Axe, ix. 49; kills his brothers, ix. 50; king of Norway, ix. 50; marries Gunhild, the sorceress, ix. 50; puts down uprising and kills two more brothers, ix. 51; fighting with Egil, ix. 53; driven out by

Haakon, ix. 56; lord of Northumberland province. ix. 57; Egil's "Ransom of the Head," ix. 58; dies in battle. ix. 59.
Erik, earl of Norway, defeated by Olaf. ix. 109.
Erik, warfare with Birger, his brother, king of Sweden. ix. 202.
Erik, eldest son of Gustavus Vasa, unsuccessfully seeks hand of Elizabeth of England, Mary Stuart, Renata of Lotringen, and Christina of Hesse, ix. 296; accession to crown on death of Gustavus, ix. 296; suspicion and oppression of John, his brother, ix. 304; imprisons John, ix. 305; marries a peasant woman, and has her crowned, ix. 306; rebellion headed by John and Charles, his brothers, ix. 308; imprisoned, ix. 308; dies of poison. ix. 309.
Erik Blood-Axe and Egil the Icelander. ix. 49.
Ernst, Duke, rebellion against Conrad II, v. 65; arrested, imprisoned, and reduced to beggary, v. 66; becomes robber and killed, v. 67; legends. v. 68.
Ervigio, Gothic king of Spain. vii. 11.
Eskimo, seen by Frobisher, i. 29; hostility to Frobisher. i. 30.
"Et tu, Brute!" xi. 223.
Eteocles. See POLYNIKES.
Ethelbert, king of Kent, converted to Christianity. iv. 9.
Ethelred, king of England, imprisons and kills Ragnar Lodbrok, ix. 30; tortured to death by sons of Ragnar. ix. 30.
Ethelred the Unready, king of England, ascends English throne, iv. 47; surnamed "Unready," iv. 47; defeated by Sweyn Forkbeard and flees from England, ix. 122; reconquers England from Canute, ix. 122; dies. ix. 122.
Etruscans, under Lars Porsenna, aid Tarquin in attempt to regain throne. xi. 44.
Ettard, beloved by Pelleas, xiii. 129; flouts Pelleas, xiii. 130; loves Gawaine, xiii. 131; brought by Nimue's enchantment to love for Pelleas, xiii. 133; dies in lovelorn sorrow. xiii. 135.
Euclid, Greek mathematician. x. 365.
Eugene, prince of Savoy, defeats Turks at Belgrade, Mohacz, and Zeuta. v. 286.
Eumæus, swineherd of Ulysses. x. 22.
Euripides, Greek tragic poet. x. 363.
Eurybiades, admiral of Grecian fleet at Salamis. x. 159.

Evelake and the perilous shield, xiv. 145; story of, xiv. 160; healed by Galahad and dies. xiv. 217.
Excalibur, xiii. 45; again returns to Arthur, xiii. 105; Morgan le Fay throws scabbard into lake. xiii. 115.
Exile and revenge of Marius. xi. 180.
Exploits of a Blockade Runner. ii. 291.
Expulsion of the Mongols—rise of Choo Yuen Chang. xii. 264.

"Fabian policy." xi. 146.
Fabius Maximus, Roman dictator, harries Hannibal by the "Fabian policy," xi. 145; displaced by Varro, xi. 146; crushing defeat of Varro, and Fabius recalled. xi. 146.
Fairfax, Lord, inherits Virginia estate, ii. 105; wrote for *Spectator*, ii. 105; comes to live in Virginia, ii. 105; friends with George Washington, ii. 106; Greenway Court, his hunting lodge, ii. 107; life at Greenway Court, ii. 111; loyalist during Revolution. ii. 112.
Faithful Eponina. xi. 289.
Faithful Miranda and the Lovers of Argentina. iii. 109.
Falkirk, Scotland, defeat of William Wallace. iv. 145.
Fall of a Favorite—Emanuel Godoy, favorite of Charles IV of Spain. vii. 292.
Fall of a Reckless Prince—Carlos, son of Philip II of Spain. vii. 213.
Fall of Christian II, the tyrant. ix. 271.
Fall of Novgorod the Great—Novgorod and other free cities crushed by autocracy under Ivan II. viii. 64.
Fall of Sebastopol. viii. 276.
Fall of the Bastille. vi. 281.
Fall of the Ghibellines. v. 129.
Fall of the Strelitz—insurrection against Peter the Great put down with bloody severity. viii. 139.
Famous retreat of Cortez and the Spaniards. iii. 58.
Fanching, China, heroic defence against Kublai Khan, xii. 242; taken and destroyed. xii. 247.
Fanchong, Chinese rebel, leads "Crimson Eyebrows" and deposes and kills Wang Mang, xii. 194; defeated and surrenders. xii. 196.
Fannin, Colonel, slaughtered at Goliad by Santa Anna. ii. 225.
Farnese, Alexander, prince of Parma, at battle of Lepanto. vii. 233.
Farnese, Elizabeth, second wife of Philip V of Spain, vii. 278; able grasp of affairs, vii. 279; intrigues bring war with Germany. vii. 281.

Fatal Expedition of Colonel Rogers. ii. 145.
Fate of Balin and Balan. xiii. 81.
Fate of Carthage. xi. 158.
Fate of Regulus—episodes in the first Punic war. xi. 126.
Fate of the *Philadelphia*. i. 237.
Father of Waters. See Mississippi River.
Ferdinand, succeeds to throne of Germany on abdication of Charles V. vii. 206.
Ferdinand II, emperor of Germany, and the Thirty Years' War. v. 254.
Ferdinand and Isabella, war to occupy Granada, the last foothold of the Moors, vii. 106; Granada surrendered. vii. 143.
Ferguson, Major Patrick, British partisan leader, gathers South Carolina Tories, ii. 167; defeats Macdowell's North Carolina militia, ii. 168; stand on King's Mountain, ii. 170; surprised and defeated by patriots, ii. 171; killed. ii. 172.
Fernando I, king of Spain. vii. 84.
Ferré, Big, peasant defender of Longueil, vi. 94; feats of arms, vi. 98; dies of fever. vi. 101.
Fersen, Count, killed on suspicion of poisoning Charles Augustus. ix. 350.
"Field of the Cloth of Gold"—gorgeous tournament of amity between Henry VIII of England and Francis I of France. iv. 213.
Finland captured by Russia. ix. 349.
Finley, John, first explorer of Kentucky. i. 138.
Finns, crusade against, ix. 187; pagan deities of. ix. 196.
Firearms, interchangeable parts first made by Eli Whitney. ii. 192.
First of the mikados. xii. 5.
First war between Sweden and Russia. ix. 196.
Flagellants, religious order, origin of, v. 130; activity during "Black Death." v. 166.
Fletcher, governor of New York colony, commander of Connecticut militia, i. 87; foiled by Joseph Wadsworth. i. 88.
Flight of Prince Charles. iv. 324.
Flight of the Kalmucks—migration from Russia. viii. 202.
Flight of the King. vi. 298.
Florence, Italy, besieged by barbarians. xi. 334.

Florida, Ponce de Leon lands in, ii. 7; De Soto lands at site of Saint Augustine, ii. 14; invaded by Oglethorpe, ii. 96; causes of Spain's loss of, ii. 103; ceded to England by Spain. ii. 149.
Fongy, Chinese general, defeats Fanchong, rebel leader. xii. 196.
Fontain, the scout, and the besiegers of Vicksburg. ii. 302.
Fontain, Lamar, Confederate scout, ii. 302; lame, ii. 302; sent by Johnston to penetrate Federal lines around Vicksburg, ii. 303; runs Federal blockade on Mississippi River, ii. 306; reaches Vicksburg, ii. 306; runs Federal lines and escapes capture. ii. 307.
Forrest's Chase of the Raiders. ii. 277.
Forrest, General Nathan B., Confederate cavalry leader, ii. 277; pursuit and capture of Streight's raiders. ii. 277.
Fort Edward, twice saved by Israel Putnam. i. 111.
Fort Henry, gallant defence against attack of Simon Girty, i. 128; heroism of Elizabeth Zane. i. 133.
Fort Mimms, Indian massacre of. ii. 194.
Fort Motte, captured by Marion and Lee, i. 233; heroism of Mrs. Motte. i. 233.
Fort Schuyler, important position in defence of New York and New England, i. 195; attacked by St. Leger, with Tory and Indian allies, i. 197; help brought by Herkimer, i. 197; Herkimer's force cut up, i. 199; flight of Indians, i. 203; sortie of Colonel Willett, i. 204; Arnold to aid of Fort Schuyler, i. 207; ruse of Hon-Yost Schuyler, and flight of besiegers. i. 209.
Fort Ticonderoga, i. 111; captured by Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold. i. 172.
Fort William Henry. i. 111.
Fortune of Crœsus. x. 77.
Fortunes of Henry the Fourth. v. 77.
Fortunes and Misfortunes of Valdemar II. ix. 176.
Fortunes of Wallenstein. v. 252.
Forty-Mile Creek, Alaska, gold find. i. 328.
Founder of the Chinese Empire—Hoangti, first emperor of China. xii. 156.
Founder of Yedo and of Modern Feudalism—deeds of Iyeyasu in war and peace. xii. 86.
Fountain of Youth, search for by Ponce de Leon and De Ayllon, ii. 7; Robertson on. ii. 12.
Four Famous Men of Athens—Cleisthenes, Miltiades, Themistocles, and Aristides. x. 177.

France, exploration in North America, i. 98; Washington demands withdrawal from English territory, i. 98; refusal, followed by French and Indian war, i. 104; cedes land west of Mississippi River to Spain, ii. 147; loses Canada to England, ii. 149; siege of Calais, iv. 162; Black Prince at Poitiers, iv. 174; fleet defeated by Nelson at Trafalgar Bay, iv. 339; raids of the sea-rovers, v. 47; Paris and Tours taken by Hasting, a viking, v. 48; invaded by Otho II, v. 70; Lorraine declared forever part of Germany, v. 71; Napoleon decisively defeated and dethroned, v. 347; empire of Napoleon III destroyed at Sedan, v. 347; republic proclaimed, v. 347; Huns at Orleans, vi. 7; Attila's invasion frustrated, vi. 17; wooing of Clotilde, vi. 18; France made a nation by Clovis, vi. 27; Burgundy a tributary to France, vi. 28; rival queens (Brunehild and Fredegonde), vi. 29; marriage of a Frankish princess, vi. 34; Clotaire II rules over all Franks, vi. 39; Roland at Roncesvalles, vi. 40; Charlemagne and the Avars, vi. 47; crowning of Charlemagne, vi. 58; Peter the Hermit, vi. 69; commune of Laon, vi. 81; how Big Ferré fought for France, vi. 94; Bertrand du Guesclin, vi. 103; Joan of Arc, the Maid of Orleans, vi. 116; career of a knight errant, vi. 133; Louis the Polite and Charles the Bold, vi. 147; Charles the Bold and the Swiss, vi. 158; Bayard, the good knight, vi. 166; episodes in the life of a traitor, vi. 176; Saint Bartholomew's Day, vi. 188; King Henry of Navarre, vi. 197; murder of a king, vi. 210; Richelieu and the conspirators, vi. 218; Parliament of Paris, vi. 233; a martyr to his profession, vi. 251; Man with the Iron Mask, vi. 257; Voltaire's last visit to Paris, vi. 264; Diamond Necklace, vi. 271; fall of the Bastille, vi. 281; story of the Sainte Ampoule, vi. 287; flight of the king, vi. 298; end of the Terror, vi. 306; burning of Moscow, vi. 316; Napoleon's return from Elba, vi. 327; Prussian war and the Paris commune, vi. 337; ruin brought by ambition of Napoleon III, vi. 337; France proclaimed a republic, vi. 340; driven out of Italy in battle of Pavia, vii. 183; Rolf the Norseman, ruler over Normandy, ix. 40; plundered by Gorm the Old, ix. 44; cowardice of Emperor Charles the Fat, ix. 44; invaded by vikings, ix. 62; exploits of Hasting, ix. 63; Gauls under Brennus invade Rome, defeated by Camillus, xi. 101; Gaul conquered by Cæsar. xi. 209,

Francia the Dictator, the Louis XI of Paraguay. iii. 269.
Francis, bishop of Waldeck, retakes Münster and stamps out Anabaptist sect. v. 248.
Francis I of France, at Field of Cloth of Gold, iv. 213; captured at battle of Pavia, iv. 227, vii. 183; imprisoned in Spain, vii. 186; cedes Burgundy to Germany, vii. 188; released by treaty, vii. 188; entertains Charles V in Paris. vii. 191.
Franklin, Benjamin, narrative of his first coming to Philadelphia, i. 90; meeting with Voltaire. vi. 267.
Franks, under Charlemagne invade Germany. v. 37. See FRANCE.
Fredegonde, peasant adventuress, marries Chilperic of Neustria, vi. 30; persecutes Brunehild, vi. 31; imprisonment and suicide of Merovée, vi. 32; murder of Clovis and Queen Andovere, vi. 33; murder of Chilperic, vi. 33; able and unscrupulous rule, vi. 33; marriage of Rigouthe, her daughter, vi. 34; dies. vi. 39.
Frederick, duke of Holstein, offered crown of Sweden, ix. 273; dissatisfaction with his rule, and proclamation of Christian II as king, ix. 277; imprisons Christian at Sanderberg. ix. 281.
Frederick II of Germany, early days, learning, and character, v. 118; forced by Pope Gregory IX to make crusade, v. 119; excommunicated, v. 120; Jerusalem surrendered to him, v. 122; quarrels with the pope, peace made, and excommunication removed, v. 122; wise and enlightened government, v. 124; renewed quarrels with the pope, v. 124; death, v. 126; learning, and services to Italian language, v. 127; governmental reforms. v. 124, v. 127.
Frederick III of Denmark, war with Charles X of Denmark. ix. 319.
Frederick Barbarossa and Milan. v. 105.
Frederick Barbarossa, invades Italy, v. 105; long defiance of Milan, v. 105; Milan humiliated, pillaged, and ruined, v. 109; final triumph of Milan, v. 112; makes a crusade, and drowned, v. 113; legends. v. 116.
Frederick the Great, youth of, v. 288; coarse and brutal character of Frederick William, v. 288; studious and artistic tastes, v. 294; attempted flight, v. 295; reconciliation with Frederick William, v. 304; accession to throne, v. 304; relations with Voltaire, v. 305; scenes from the Seven Years' War, v. 315; beset by

all Europe, v. 315; defeats French at Rossbach, v. 319; defeats Austrians at Leuthen, v. 321; defeats Austrians at Liegnitz, v. 322; end of Seven Years' War, and founding of German Empire. v. 327.
Frederick William, first king of Prussia, coarse and despotic character, v. 288; brutal treatment of children and subjects, v. 289; regiments of tall soldiers. v. 292.
Free Companies, French and English freebooters, invade Castile. vii. 156.
French and Indian War, opening movements of, i. 98; Ohio Company. i. 99.
French of Louisiana and the Natchez Indians. ii. 76.
French Soldier becomes King of Sweden and Norway. ix. 349.
Friar of Ayr's Blessing. iv. 141.
Friends and Foes of a Boy Prince. ix. 160.
Fritigern, Gothic king. xi. 328.
Friuli, Italy, besieged by Avars, v. 28; surrendered by treachery of Romilda, its duchess. v. 28.
Frobisher and the Northwest Passage. i. 26.
Frobisher, Sir Martin, and the Northwest Passage, i. 26; sails with three ships, i. 28; sights Greenland, i. 29; sees Eskimo, loses five men, and returns to England with fool's gold, i. 29; second voyage, aided by Elizabeth, i. 29; discovery of Frobisher Strait, i. 30; hostility of Eskimo, i. 30; discovers more fool's gold, i. 30; honored by Elizabeth, i. 32; sails on third voyage, i. 32; sails up Hudson Strait, i. 32; returns disappointed of Northwest Passage, i. 33; discovery of worthless character of fool's gold, i. 33; subsequent career, and death. i. 33.
Frobisher Strait, discovery of. i. 30.
From the Hovel to the Throne—rise of Mentchikof and of Empress Catharine. viii. 165.
From the Shoemaker's Bench to the Throne—career of Lieouyu. xiii. 202.
Fuh-he, Chinese king, discovers iron. xii. 145.
Fujiwara, Japanese noble family, become power behind throne, xii. 38; rivalry of the Sugawara family, xii. 39; deposed by warlike Taira family. xii. 41.
Fuller, exciting pursuit of Andrews and the stolen locomotive. i. 285.
Furies, punish Œdipus. x. 42.
Fürst, Walter, Swiss patriot. v. 149.

Gage, General, attempts to seize colonial ammunition, i. 160; fighting at Lexington and Concord, i. 166; opening of Revolution. i. 168.

Gahalatine, overthrown by Lancelot. xiii. 152.

Gaheris, rescued by Lancelot, xiii. 155; weds Linet, xiii. 235; adventure with Tristram and Dinadan, xiii. 308; brings to King Mark news of Tristram's prowess, xiii. 339; rides with Kay, and achieves adventure of the Perilous Lake, xiii. 340; overthrow of King Mark and Sir Andred, xiii. 342; oath of King Mark, xiii. 343; they ride with Lancelot in quest of Tristram, xiii. 343; attacks Lamorak, xiv. 14; punished by Tristram, iv. 27; slain by Lancelot, xiv. 293.

Galahad, reputed son of Breunor, attacks Tristram, xiii. 272; sends him to Lancelot, xiii. 273; knighted by Lancelot, xiv. 129; takes the Seat Perilous, xiv. 135; son of Lancelot and Elaine, xiv. 136; withdraws floating sword, xiv. 137; prophecy that he shall heal King Pellam of Dolorous Stroke, xiv. 137; prowess in tournament, xiv. 139; Sangreal appears to Knights of Round Table, xiv. 140; knights vow quest of the Grail, xiv. 140; how Galahad got his shield, xiv. 141; wins the Perilous Shield, xiv. 145; knights Melias de Lile, xiv. 147; adventure with the deadly sins, xiv. 149; adventure of the Castle of Maidens, xiv. 151; unhorses Lancelot and Percivale, xiv. 157; rescues Percivale from the robber men at arms, xiv. 161; adventure of the magic ship, xiv. 195; prowess at tournament, xiv. 195; on the ship with Bors and Percivale, xiv. 197; adventure of the marvellous sword, xiv. 199; story of the two swords and three spindles, xiv. 202; achieves the sword with the strange girdle, xiv. 206; adventure of the sick lady and death of Percivale's sister, xiv. 207; joins Lancelot on ship with body of Percivale's sister, xiv. 211; leaves the ship, xiv. 212; heals Evelake, xiv. 217; joins Bors and Percivale, xiv. 217; the sacrament in the castle of Carbonek, xiv. 218; heals King Pellam, xiv. 220; sails with Bors and Percivale for the Holy Land, taking the Grail, xiv. 221; healing of the cripple, xiv. 221; imprisoned by Estorause, freed, and made king of Sarras, xiv. 222; dies, and Sangreal taken visibly to heaven. xiv. 224.

Galba, named emperor by the Prætorian Guards, xi. 266; overthrown by Otho. xi. 280.

Galdan, Kalmuck chieftain, defeated and slain by Manchus. xii. 291.
Galehodin, overthrown by Palamides. xiv. 58.
Galitzin, Prince, degraded to office of court page and buffoon, viii. 179; palace of ice. viii. 179.
Gallatin, Kentucky, raided by General John H. Morgan. ii. 332.
Galsuinthe, second queen of Chilperic, murdered. vi. 30.
Ganalon, secret foe to Roland. vi. 43.
Gansevoort, Colonel, defends Fort Schuyler against British and Indian attack. i. 196.
Gareth. See BEAUMAINS.
Garlon, the invisible knight, slays Herleus, xiii. 73; slays Perin de Mountbeliard, xiii. 74; slain by Balin. xiii. 78.
Garloth, king of, defeated by Arthur. xiii. 28.
Gates, General, defeat of, i. 223; joined by Marion's force, i. 223; conceit of, i. 224; defeated by British at Camden, South Carolina, ii. 166; effect on American cause in South. ii. 178.
Gaudri, bishop of Laon, France, vi. 84; violent deeds of, vi. 84; killed by people of Laon. vi. 90.
Gaul. See FRANCE.
Gawaine, son of Lot, knighted by Arthur, xiii. 49; adventure of the white hart, xiii. 53; goes with Uwaine into banishment, xiii. 119; country of strange adventures, xiii. 120; adventure with Sir Marhaus, xiii. 122; chooses youngest damsel and parts from Uwaine and Marhaus, xiii. 126; saves Tristram from trickery of Morgan le Fay, xiii. 312; adventure with Breuse Sans Pité, xiii. 314; kills Margause, his mother, and Lamorak, xiv. 13; overthrown by Palamides, xiv. 59; gives up quest, xiv. 155; kills Uwaine, xiv. 156; rage at death of Gareth and Gaheris, xiv. 295; incites Arthur to besiege Joyous Gard, xiv. 296; enmity to Lancelot, and stirs up wrath of Arthur, xiv. 297; sorely wounded by Bors, xiv. 302; incites Arthur to carry war into Lancelot's realm, xiv. 314; twice fights with Lancelot and overthrown, xiv. 318; dies in battle of Arthur against Mordred, xiv. 326; letter to Lancelot. xiv. 327.
Geese, save capitol of Rome from Gauls. xi. 100.
General Greene's Famous Retreat. ii. 175.
Genghis Khan, Tartar leader, demands tribute of Japan, xii. 67; birth, xii. 231; Temujin, personal name, xii. 231; career and conquests through bloody wars, xii. 232; death. xii. 235.

Geoffrey of Monmouth, chronicle of legendary British history. xiii. 9.
Georgia, invaded by Spanish, ii. 95; saved by Oglethorpe, ii. 96; British masters of. ii. 166.
Gepidæ. v. 20.
Germanicus, unsuccessful invasion of Germany. v. 15.
Germanna, Virginia, first iron furnaces at, ii. 90; country seat of Governor Spotswood at, ii. 91.
Germans, invasion of Italy defeated by Marius and Sulla. xi. 180.
Germany, "Hermann, the Hero of Germany"—Romans expelled from Germany, v. 7; Alboin and Rosamond, v. 19; career of Grimoald, v. 28; Wittekind, the Saxon patriot, v. 37; raids of the sea-rovers, v. 47; career of Bishop Hatto, v. 58; invaded by Magyars, v. 62; misfortunes of Duke Ernst, v. 64; reign of Otho II, v. 69; Lorraine declared forever part of Germany, v. 71; fortunes of Henry the Fourth, v. 77; anecdotes of Mediæval Germany, v. 92; Frederick Barbarossa and Milan, v. 105; crusade of Frederick II, v. 118; fall of the Ghibellines, v. 129; tribunal of the holy Vehm, v. 138; William Tell and the Swiss patriots, v. 148; Black Death and the Flagellants, v. 162; Swiss at Morgarten—Austria driven out of Switzerland, v. 170; a mad emperor—Wenceslas, emperor of Germany and king of Bohemia, v. 176; Ziska the blind warrior—reformation in Bohemia, v. 198; siege of Belgrade, v. 210; Luther and the Indulgences, v. 217; Solyman the Magnificent at Guntz, v. 229; peasants and the Anabaptists, v. 238; fortunes of Wallenstein, v. 252; end of two great soldiers—death of Wallenstein and the Catholic cause, v. 265; siege of Vienna, v. 277; youth of Frederick the Great, v. 288; Voltaire and Frederick the Great, v. 305; scenes from the Seven Years' War, v. 315; end of Seven Years' War, and founding of German Empire, v. 327; patriots of the Tyrol, v. 328; old empire and the new—dissolution of German Empire of Charlemagne, and formation of new German Empire, v. 343; William, king of Prussia, first ruler of new empire, v. 348; ceremony at Versailles, v. 348, vi. 341; Franco-Prussian war, vi. 337; France defeated, and Paris surrendered. vi. 340.
Gessler, tyrant over the Swiss, v. 149; killed by William Tell. v. 158.

Ghibellines, v. 92; Fall of the Ghibellines. v. 129.
Gibraltar, romantic history. vii. 281.
Gingalin, son of Gawaine, overthrown by Tristram. xiii. 293.
Girty, Simon, renegade, savage Seneca leader, attacks Fort Henry and repulsed, i. 129; heroism of Elizabeth Zane. i. 133.
"Give me liberty or give me death." ii. 123.
Gladiators, origin of exhibitions, xi. 198; revolt under Spartacus, xi. 198; sports of the amphitheatre, xi. 272; last combat. xi. 333.
Glauce, second wife of Jason, killed by Medea by magic robe. x. 31.
Go-Daigo, mikado, rebels against the Hojo, xii. 62; restored to throne, and again deposed. xii. 66.
Go-Shirawaka, mikado of Japan. xii. 42.
Godebert, claimant for Lombard throne, v. 31; slain by Grimoald. v. 32.
Godfrey de Bouillon, leads crusading army. vi. 74.
Godoy, Emanuel, made duke of Alcudia and prime minister to Charles IV of Spain, vii. 293; degraded state of Spain, vii. 293; persuades king and queen to flee the country, vii. 296; popular uprising, and Godoy falls. vii. 297.
Godunof, Boris, Russian prime minister, murders Dmitri, son of Ivan the Terrible, viii. 85; rules as power behind the throne, viii. 86; destroys Uglitch, where Dmitri was killed, viii. 87; makes enemies, viii. 88; death of Feodor and accession of Godunof, viii. 89; vigorous rule, viii. 90; pretended Dmitri comes to light, viii. 91; civil war, viii. 92; death of Godunof. viii. 95.
Goetz von Berlichingen ("Goetz of the Iron Hand"), leader of peasant revolt. i. 241.
Goffe, General, signer of death warrant of Charles I, flees to New England on Restoration, i. 73; settles in Cambridge, i. 73; pursued by king's proclamation, i. 73; goes to New Haven, i. 74; in hiding, i. 75; narrow escapes from capture, i. 77; leads defence of Hadley against Indians, i. 78; place of burial unknown. i. 79.
Gokenin, Japanese feudal vassals. xii. 95.
Gold, in Alaska. i. 327.
Golden Fleece, Jason and the Argonauts. x. 23.
Goliad, Texas, garrison slaughtered by Mexicans. ii. 225.

Golownin, Captain, Russian officer, imprisoned in Japan. xii. 113.
Gomez, Maximo, Cuban patriot leader. iii. 328.
Gondebaud, murders brother and seizes throne of Burgundy, vi. 18; Clotilde, his niece, marries Clovis, vi. 18; defeated by Clovis, and Burgundy tributary to France. vi. 28.
Gonsalvo de Cordova, "the great Captain," victories over French in Italy, vii. 172; decisive victory at Barleta, vii. 177; victory at Cerignola, and Duke de Nemours killed, vii. 179; conquers kingdom of Naples, vii. 181; jealousy of King Ferdinand. vii. 182.
Gonzalo Pizarro and the Land of Cinnamon. iii. 86.
Good King Wamba. vii. 7.
Goorkhas, Asiatic warlike clan, invade Thibet, xii. 300; defeated and reduced to vassalage by Chinese troops under Sund Fo, xii. 302; relations with England. xii. 304.
Gordon and the Bayonet Charge at Antietam. ii. 311.
Gordon, "Chinese Gordon," puts down Tai-Ping rebellion. xii. 328.
Gordon, John B., Confederate soldier, living in three states, ii. 252; gathers volunteers, ii. 252; refused for service in Georgia, ii. 254; Raccoon Roughs, ii. 256; accepted by Alabama, ii. 257; repulses four bayonet charges at Antietam, ii. 311; wounded at Antietam, ii. 316; had seemed invulnerable. ii. 316.
Gordon, Lady Catharine, beautiful wife of Perkin Warbeck. iv. 204.
Gore, king of, defeated by Arthur. xiii. 28.
Gorm the Old, Denmark's First King. ix. 42.
Gorm, surnamed the Old, descendant of Ragnar Lodbrok, ix. 42; becomes king of Lejre and chief priest of Odin, ix. 42; Lejre sacred to Odin, and seat of chief sacrifices, ix. 43; gains control of all Denmark, ix. 43; viking cruises, ix. 44; plunders Aix-la-Chapelle, ix. 44; cowardice of Emperor Charles the Fat, ix. 44; besieges Paris, ix. 45; escapes from the defeat at Louvaine, ix. 45; Thyra, his wise queen, ix. 46; oppression of Christian subjects, ix. 47; "church's worm," ix. 47; Knud and Harald, his sons, ix. 47; death of Knud, ix. 47; death of Gorm. ix. 48.
Goths Cross the Danube—permitted to cross Danube, Goths spread all over Thrace, and defeat Emperor Valens. xi. 325.

Gourdon, Bertrand de, kills Richard Cœur de Lion. iv. 118.
Gourko, Russian general, captures Turkish fortress of Sophia. viii. 287.
Gouvernail, tutor of Tristram of Lyonesse. xiii. 240.
Governor Tacon and Marti the Smuggler. iii. 280.
Governor Tryon and the Carolina Regulators. ii. 124.
Gracchi and their Fall—Tiberius and Caius Gracchus espouse the cause of the commons against the patricians, their work and their death, enactment of the Sempronian Laws, the Gracchi killed by their enemies. xi. 165.
Gracchus, chief of the Æquians, breaks peace with Rome, xi. 68; insolence to Roman deputies, xi. 69; defeated by Cincinnatus, and led in fetters in Roman triumph. xi. 71.
Grail. See SANGREAL.
Granada, Moorish kingdom and city, beauties of, vii. 106; palace of the Alhambra, vii. 107; warfare in the kingdom, vii. 108; truce broken by Muley Abul Hassan, Moorish king, vii. 109; Alhama, city and stronghold, "key of Granada," captured by Spanish, vii. 109; warfare between Boabdil and Abdallah, vii. 123; siege, vii. 132; feats of Perez del Pulgar, vii. 134; last foothold of the Moors, surrendered to Ferdinand by Boabdil, vii. 143; Morisco insurrection. vii. 257.
Grand Cañon of the Colorado, discovered by Coronado. iii. 105.
Grand Terre, island, haunt of Louisiana pirates, ii. 207; fortified by pirates, ii. 209; buildings destroyed and defeat of pirates. ii. 214.
Great Bridge, Virginia, first battle in Revolution in South. ii. 140.
Great Captain, Gonsalvo de Cordova. vii. 172.
Great Long Knife. See BOONE.
Great Rebellion in the Old Dominion. ii. 49.
Great Rebellion, first American rebellion against England, ii. 49; caused by Berkeley's tyranny, ii. 49; influence of Nathaniel Bacon, ii. 50; first American declaration of independence, ii. 54; ends with death of Bacon and execution of his adherents. ii. 59.
Great Wolf, Governor Tryon. ii. 124.
Greece, possessions in southern Italy, v. 72; Constantinople put to ransom by Oleg, Varangian king of Russia, viii. 18; how Troy was taken, x. 7; voyage of the Argonauts—Jason searches for the Golden

Fleece, x. 23; Theseus and Ariadne—killing of the Minotaur, x. 33; Seven against Thebes—stories of Œdipus and Antigone, and of the two sieges of Thebes, x. 41; Lycurgus and the Spartan laws, x. 50; Aristomenes, the hero of Messenia—wars between Messenia and Sparta, x. 60; Solon, the lawgiver of Athens, x. 67; extent of Greek territory, x. 77; fortune of Crœsus, x. 77; suitors of Agaristé, x. 86; tyrants of Corinth, x. 92; ring of Polycrates, x. 100; adventures of Democedes, x. 107; Darius and the Scythians, x. 117; Athenians at Marathon—Persian invasion defeated with great loss, x. 126; Xerxes and his army, x. 135; how the Spartans died at Thermopylæ, x. 144; services of Themistocles, x. 144; Thespians at Thermopylæ, x. 152; Wooden Walls of Athens—glorious victory over Persians at Salamis, x. 154; Platæa's famous day—defeat of a Persian army under Mardonius, x. 165; last Persian army to invade Greece, x. 172; Ionians freed from Persian rule at Mycale, x. 173; Four Famous Men of Athens—Cleisthenes, Miltiades, Themistocles, and Aristides, x. 177; how Athens rose from its ashes—rebuilt and beautified under Pericles after burning by Persians, x. 186; glories of reconstructed Athens, x. 187; Peloponnesian Confederacy (league of Sparta and other Peloponnesian States), x. 189; League of Delos (league of Greek cities under Athens) changes gradually into Athenian dominion, x. 189; active life in Athens under Pericles, x. 191; wars between Athens and Sparta for supremacy in Greece, x. 194; plague in Athens—inhabitants die by thousands, and death of Pericles, x. 194; fruitless revolt of Lesbos, x. 200; defence of Platæa—valiantly defended from Spartan attacks, and garrison escapes, x. 205; fatal blunders of Athens, and defeat at Ægospotami, x. 213; Spartan power declines, and Persians aid Athens, x. 220; Socrates and Alcibiades, x. 221; invasion of Persia, and famous retreat of the ten thousand under Xenophon, x. 231; rescue of Thebes—Thebes captured and held by Sparta, freed by seven exiled patriots, x. 245; humiliation of Sparta—rise of Thebes under Pelopidas and Epaminondas, x. 259; invasion of Sparta by Thebans, x. 267; building of Megalopolis, Arcadian capital, x. 269; restoration of Messenia, x. 269; impeachment and acquittal of Epaminondas, x. 270; Timoleon, the

favorite of fortune, x. 271; Sacred War—acts of the Amphictyonic Council lead to war with Phocis, to rifling the temple of Apollo at Delphi, and to the subjugation of Greece by Philip of Macedonia, x. 288; decisive defeat of Greeks by Macedonians at Chæronêa, x. 294; destruction of Thebes by Alexander the Great, x. 295; conquest of Persia by Alexander the Great at Issus and Arbela, and death of Darius Codomannus, x. 296; death of Alexander, x. 304; World's Greatest Orator—story of Demosthenes, x. 305; Olympic games, x. 315; Dionysia, festival in honor of Bacchus, contests of tragic drama held in Athens, x. 322; character of Greek drama, x. 323; Pyrrhus and the Romans, x. 324; political condition, and warfare of the cities, x. 334; Philopœmen and the fall of Sparta, x. 334; Achæan League, x. 339; death struggle of Greece—conquest by Rome, destruction of Corinth, and capture of Athens, x. 345; Zenobia and Longinus—empire of Palmyra destroyed by Romans under Aurelian, x. 351; literary glory of Greece, x. 360; Greek drama. x. 362.

Greek King's Daughter, legend of Cadiz. vii. 13.

Green Knight, overthrown by Beaumains. xiii. 193.

Green Mountain Boys. i. 172.

Greene, General Nathanael, commander of American forces in South, ii. 175; American forces defeated, ii. 176; helped by Mrs. Steele, ii. 177; "Hide thy face, George, and blush," ii. 177; situation before famous retreat, ii. 178; retreat, ii. 180; salvation of South, ii. 183; battle of Guilford Court House, ii. 183; shuts up British in Charleston, South Carolina. ii. 183.

Greene, Mrs. (widow of General), befriends Eli Whitney. ii. 188.

Greenland, discovered by Eirek, i. 12; colonized and governed by Eirek, i. 12; governed by Leif, i. 19; sighted by Frobisher. i. 29.

Gregory VII, pope, contest with Henry IV, emperor of Germany. v. 84.

Gregory IX, pope, quarrels with Frederick II, emperor of Germany. v. 119.

Gregory the Great, pope, sends Augustine and missionaries to England. iv. 9.

Griflet, Squire, adventure against King Pellinore. xiii. 39.

Grijalva, Juan de, first explorer of Yucatan. iii. 29.

Grimoald, son of Romilda, peril at hands of Avars, v. 29; adopted by Arigil of Benevento, v. 30; becomes duke of Benevento, v. 30; internal warfare in Lombardy, v. 30; death. v. 36.
Guadalete, battle of, defeat of Roderic fixes Moorish rule in Spain. vii. 23.
Guay-Trouin, French naval officer, captures and sacks Rio de Janeiro. iii. 166.
Gudrid, widow of Thorstein, marries Thorfinn, i. 23; birth of Snorri Thorfinnson. i. 23.
Guelphs and Ghibellines, v. 92; triumph of. v. 129.
Guenever and the Round Table—Guenever, daughter of Leodegrance, married to Arthur. xiii. 46.
Guenever, love of Lancelot again rises, xiv. 226; scandal thereat, xiv. 226; anger against Lancelot, xiv. 227; Lancelot leaves Camelot, xiv. 228; poisoning of Sir Patrise, and peril of Guenever, xiv. 229; saved from death at the stake by Lancelot, xiv. 236; Nimue reveals truth of poisoning, xiv. 238; Lancelot and Elaine le Blank, xiv. 239; Lancelot wounded, and nursed by Elaine le Blank, xiv. 250; death of Elaine, xiv. 256; Black Barge, and burial of Elaine, xiv. 257; asks forgiveness of Lancelot, xiv. 259; Lancelot wears Guenever's token at tournament, xiv. 260; kidnapped by Meliagrance, xiv. 262; rescued by Lancelot, xiv. 269; accused by Meliagrance, and in peril of death, xiv. 269; rescued by Lancelot, and death of Meliagrance, xiv. 275; Lancelot known as the "Chevalier of the Cart," xiv. 278; scandal raised by Agravaine and Mordred, xiv. 280; Lancelot trapped in Guenever's chamber, xiv. 284; Lancelot kills Colgrevance and Agravaine, but Mordred escapes, xiv. 286; rage of Arthur, xiv. 290; condemned to death at stake, xiv. 290; rescued by Lancelot and taken to Joyous Gard, xiv. 293; siege of Joyous Gard, xiv. 297; battle rages, and Arthur forced to withdraw, xiv. 300; papal bull in defence of Guenever and Lancelot, xiv. 303; Guenever returns to court, xiv. 304; Lancelot banished, goes to France, xiv. 310; besieged in the tower by Mordred, xiv. 324; Mordred killed, and Arthur wounded to death, xiv. 333; becomes nun, and farewell to Lancelot, xiv. 341; death and burial. xiv. 344.
Guerrero, Mexican revolutionary leader. iii. 235.
Guiana, Spanish and English exploration in. iii. 139.

Guilford Court House, battle of, ii. 183; Cornwallis retreats. ii. 183.
Guise, Duke of, treachery. vi. 188.
Gunhild, the sorceress, wife of Erik Blood-Axe, ix. 50; trouble caused by her wicked arts, ix. 50; sons become vikings, ix. 72; with Harold Bluetooth they twice invade Norway, and are repulsed by Haakon the Good, ix. 72; death of Haakon by bewitched arrow, and succession of Gunhild's sons, ix. 77; killed by Haakon, ix. 78; seeks to kill Aastrid and Olaf. ix. 89.
Gunpowder introduced into Japan by Portuguese. xii. 99.
Guntz, Hungarian fortress, defeats invasion of Solyman the Magnificent. v. 229.
Gustavus IV, loses Finland for Sweden, and forced to abdicate. ix. 349.
Gustavus Adolphus on the Field of Leipsic. ix. 310.
Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden, invades Germany in Protestant cause, v. 262; wins back northern Germany, v. 266; besieged at Nuremberg, v. 267; defeated and slain by Wallenstein at battle of Lützen, v. 268; buried at Stockholm, v. 273; ablest king of Sweden, ix. 310; ascends throne, ix. 310; saves Protestantism at battle of Leipsic. ix. 311.
Gustavus Vasa, birthplace, ix. 252; boyhood and education at court of Sten Sture, ix. 252; made captive by Christian II, ix. 253; breaks parole and escapes, ix. 254; protected by Lübeck, ix. 255; lands in Sweden, ix. 256; dangers and adventures in seeking to arouse the people against the Danes, ix. 256; frees Sweden and chosen king, ix. 271; West Gothland insurrection. ix. 283.
Guthrum, Danish chief, invades England, iv. 20; Alfred forced to flee, iv. 21; overruns southern England, iv. 26; defeated at Ethandune, iv. 32; treaty of Wedmore, iv. 33; embraces Christianity, iv. 33; leaves England. iv. 34.
Gyda, daughter of King Erik of Hördaland, wooing and wedding of Harold Fair-Haired. ix. 34.
Gyda, marries Olaf. ix. 95.
Gyllestierna, Magnus, holds Aggerhus against Christian II. ix. 277.

Haakon, grandson of Sverre, ix. 160; brought up in hostile court, ix. 160; stormy path to the throne, ix. 161; wise and just ruler, ix. 168; dies. ix. 168.

Haakon VII, king of Norway. ix. 368.
Haakon the Earl, drives out Gunhild's sons and rules Norway as vassal of Harald Bluetooth, ix. 78; defies Harald, and ravages his kingdom, ix. 79; Harald enlists the Jomsvikings, ix. 80; battle with the Jomsvikings, ix. 81; miraculous storm, ix. 81; slaughter of the captives, ix. 83; Haakon's shameful deeds and death by treachery. ix. 85.
Haakon the Good and the sons of Gunhild. ix. 69.
Haakon the Good, drives Erik Blood-Axe out of Norway, and reigns, ix. 56; succeeds Erik Blood-Axe, ix. 69; wise and just rule, ix. 69; tries to introduce Christianity, ix. 70; repulses two attacks by sons of Gunhild, ix. 72; wounded by bewitched arrow and dies, ix. 77; sends for sons of Gunhild to succeed him. ix. 77.
Haavard the Hewer, Jomsviking, heroic death of. ix. 82.
Hadley, Massachusetts, Indian attack during King Philip's war, i. 69; hiding place of Whalley, Goffe and Dixwell. i. 77.
Hæmon, son of Creon, lover of Antigone, pleads in vain for her, and kills himself on her tomb. x. 47.
Hakodate, Japan, opened to foreign commerce. xii. 131.
Halfdan the Swarthy, prophetic dream of, ix. 32; birth and exploits of Harold Fair-Haired, ix. 32; dies. ix. 33.
Half-King, Indian chief, speech to French commanders. i. 101.
Hamilcar, Carthaginian general in Spain, xi. 136; father of Hannibal, xi. 137; killed in battle. xi. 137.
Hamilton, Captain, starts tunnel from Libby Prison. i. 300.
Hamilton, Colonel, English commander at Detroit, retakes Vincennes, ii. 158; defeated at Vincennes by George Rogers Clark, ii. 163; implicated in Indian raids during Revolution, ii. 164; prisoner at Williamsburg, Virginia. ii. 164.
Han, second Chinese dynasty, xii. 172; ended by usurper Wang Mang. xii. 192.
Hand of Destiny—Book XI. xiv. 280.
Hannibal, Carthaginian soldier, son of Hamilcar, pledge of hostility to Rome, xi. 136; siege and capture of Saguntum, xi. 137; crosses the Alps into Northern Italy, xi. 139; harries Italy for fifteen years, xi. 145; victorious at Lake Trasimenus, xi. 145; attacked by wearing campaign of Fabius Maximus, xi. 145; de-

feat of Varro and slaughter of his army, xi. 146; Hasdrubal defeated and slain with reinforcements, xi. 147; recalled to Carthage and defeated by Scipio at Zama, xi. 148; peace made and Hannibal reorganizes Carthaginian forces, xi. 149; forced to flee, pursued by enemies, and commits suicide at Libyssa. xi. 149.

Hannibal of the Andes and the freedom of Chili. iii. 247.

Hanno, archbishop of Cologne, influence in affairs of Henry IV of Germany. iv. 77.

Hans, king of Denmark, defeated in attempt to subjugate Ditmarshers, ix. 237; dethroned by Swedish nobles under Sten Sture, and threatened by Norway, ix. 239; subjugates Lübeck, ix. 240; dies. ix. 240.

Hans Hardy, scout, gets evidence against conspirators in West Gothland insurrection. ix. 286.

Harald, son of Canute, reigns in England. ix. 130.

Harald, son of Gorm, favors Christians, and baptized, ix. 47; death of Knud, ix. 47; succeeds Gorm. ix. 48.

Hardegon, conquers kingdom of Lejre, ix. 42; dies, and succeeded by Gorm. ix. 42.

Hardicanute, son of Canute, reigns in England. ix. 131.

Harold, king of England, defeats Danes under Harold Hardrada, and Tostig at Stamford Bridge, iv. 49, ix. 142; defeated and slain by Normans at Senlac, iv. 51; end of Saxon England, iv. 60; buried at Waltham Abbey. iv. 61.

Harold Bluetooth, king of Denmark, invades Norway, ix. 72; enlists Jomsvikings against Haakon, unruly vassal, ix. 78; story similar to that of William Tell, ix. 121; said to have been killed by Sweyn, his son. ix. 122.

Harold Fair-Haired founds the kingdom of Norway. ix. 31.

Harold Fair-Haired, son of Halfdan, birth, ix. 32; saves Finnish sorcerer, and goes to Finland, ix. 33; succeeds Halfdan as king, ix. 33; love for Gyda starts him on conquest of Norway, ix. 34; vow of Harold, ix. 34; Harold Lufa, ix. 35; conquers petty kings and unifies Norway, ix. 35; Thorolf Rafnista enters Harold's service, ix. 36; puts down rebellion and accomplishes vow, ix. 36; cutting of Harold's hair, ix. 37; weds Gyda, ix. 37; faults of Harold, ix. 37; jealousy and ill-treatment of Thorolf, ix. 37; killing of Thorolf, ix. 38; Rafnista's and other chieftains

leave Norway, ix. 39; rules and dies in peace and splendor. ix. 41.
Harold Hard-ruler, king of Norway, story of his boyhood, ix. 111; prowess of his early days, ix. 134; co-ruler with Magnus over Norway and Denmark, ix. 136; death of Magnus, ix. 136; stern rule of, ix. 137; warfare with Sweyn, ix. 137; gives up Denmark to Sweyn, ix. 141; invades England with Tostig, brother of Harold of England, ix. 141; killed at Stamford Bridge. iv. 49, ix. 143.
Harpies. x. 25.
Hartha Knud. See HARDICANUTE.
Hasdrubal, brother of Hannibal, killed by Romans. xi. 147.
Hasdrubal, Carthaginian general, killed in battle in Spain. xi. 137.
Hasting, viking, takes Paris and Tours, v. 48; invades Italy and loots Lucca, v. 48; baptized, becomes vassal of Charles the Bald, and made Count of Chartres, v. 51; again becomes sea-rover, v. 55; viking exploits of. ix. 63.
Hatamoto, Japanese feudal vassals. xii. 94.
Hatto, bishop of Mayence, kingmaker and ruler in France and southern Germany, v. 58; treachery to Adalbert, v. 59; execrated by populace, v. 60; legends of his death. v. 61.
Hawaii, early history of, i. 338; visit of Captain Cook, and his death, i. 338; subjugated by Kamehameha, i. 339; arrival of missionaries, i. 340; constitution granted by Kamehameha III, i. 340; reigns of Lunalio and Kalakaua, i. 340; revolt against Kalakaua and new constitution, i. 340; accession of Liluokalani, i. 341; debt, lotteries and opium, i. 341; reactionary constitution promulgated by Liliuokalani, i. 343; not ratified by cabinet, i. 344; provisional government formed, i. 345; revolution and queen dethroned, i. 347; interference of President Cleveland, i. 348; revolution by supporters of Liliuokalani, i. 350; final defeat of Liliuokalani, i. 351; annexation to United States, i. 352; made Territory. i. 352.
Hayti, discovery by Columbus, iii. 15; called Hispaniola, iii. 15; repulses English attack under Admiral Penn, iii. 177; history of, iii. 205; negro slaves in, iii. 205; negroes under Toussaint L'Ouverture sweep the island of whites, iii. 207; wise rule of L'Ouverture, iii. 209; Hayti ruled as French dependency, iii. 210; anger

of Napoleon, and punitive expedition under Leclerc, iii. 211; L'Ouverture captures San Domingo, iii. 211; L'Ouverture surrenders to French, and dies in French prison, iii. 215; uprising of Haytian blacks and final defeat of French under Rochambeau. iii. 215.
Hector and the Trojan war, x. 7; parting of Hector and Andromache. x. 14.
Hector de Maris, Sir, rides knight-errant, xiii. 140; overthrown by Sir Turquine, xiii. 142; rescued from Turquine by Lancelot, xiii. 159; overthrown by Tristram, xiii. 260; gives up quest of the Grail. xiv. 155.
Heimer, saves Aslög in a harp frame. ix. 23.
Hekatomphonia, ancient Greek sacrifice. x. 62.
Helen of Troy. x. 7.
Heligoland, ceded to England. ix. 348.
Helluland, landing of Leif. i. 15.
Helmichis, Lombard noble, aids in murder of Alboin, marries Rosamond, and poisoned. v. 24.
Helots, Spartan slaves. x. 53.
Hemison, lover of Morgan le Fay, jealousy of Tristram, xiii. 346; overthrown by Tristram and dies. xiii. 347.
Hennepin, Father, explores Mississippi River. ii. 62.
Henry, Count, duke of Schwerin, enmity to Valdemar II. ix. 179.
Henry I of England, seizes throne on death of William Rufus. iv. 83.
Henry II of Castile, warfare with Pedro the Cruel over throne. vii. 156.
Henry IV of France, proclaimed king, vi. 197; wins France from the League, vi. 198; battle of Ivry, vi. 202; conversion to Catholicism, vi. 209; crowned, vi. 212; assassinated by Ravaillac. vi. 214.
Henry IV of Germany, youth and training, v. 77; bad character, v. 81; grave insults to Bertha, his wife, v. 83; contest with Pope Gregory VII, v. 84; placed under interdict and declared deposed, v. 85; humiliation before Gregory, v. 87; wars with aspirants to throne, and with pope, v. 89; abdication and death. v. 91.
Henry VII of England, intrigues of Perkin Warbeck. iv. 196.
Henry VIII of England, at Field of Cloth of Gold, iv. 213; alliance with Charles V. iv. 227.
Henry Morgan and the buccaneers. vii. 266.

Henry, Patrick, unsuccessful early life, ii. 115; wins lawsuit of people vs. the clergy, ii. 115; doctrine of rights of colonists against the king's commands, ii. 118, ii. 121; member of House of Burgesses, ii. 119; speech against Stamp Act, ii. 120; "If this be treason make the most of it," ii. 122; speech before the Revolution, ii. 122; "Give me liberty or give me death," ii. 123; Thomas Jefferson on, ii. 123; forces Lord Dunmore to pay for Williamsburg gunpowder, ii. 138; proclaimed traitor, ii. 138; chosen governor of Virginia. ii. 144.
Herculaneum, destroyed by eruption of Vesuvius. xi. 308.
Hercules and the search for the Golden Fleece. x. 23.
Hereward the Wake, iv. 62; turbulent early days, iv. 62; prowess in battle, iv. 63; marries Torfrida in Flanders, iv. 63; exploits in insurrection against William the Conqueror, iv. 65; makes peace with William, iv. 74; stories of last days. iv. 75.
Herkimer, General, brings aid to Fort Schuyler, i. 197; force cut up by Indians, i. 199; wounded, i. 200; dies. i. 203.
Herleus de Berbeus, slain by Garlon. xiii. 73.
Hermance, slain, and avenged by Palamides. xiv. 46.
Hermann, German patriot, defends Germany against Roman invasion, v. 7; marries Thusnelda, daughter of Segestus, v. 9; slaughter of the legions of Varus, v. 10; robbed of Thusnelda, v. 14; battles with Germanicus, v. 15; murdered. v. 18.
Hero of the Carlists—Tomas Zumalacarregui. vii. 313.
Herodotus, quoted on Scythians, viii. 7; life and work. x. 364.
Heroes of the Alamo. ii. 217.
Herröd, Jarl, daughter Tora weds Ragnar Lodbrok. ix. 19.
Herzegovina, harried by Turks. viii. 284.
Hesiod, Greek epic poet of home and field. x. 361.
Hicetus, tyrant of Sicily, defeated by Timoleon. x. 276.
Hidalgo the Patriot, and the Grito de Dolores. iii. 226.
Hidalgo, Miguel, Mexican farmer patriot, iii. 226; unsuccessful revolution against Spanish rule, iii. 227; shot. iii. 234.
"Hide thy face, George, and blush." ii. 177.
Hideyoshi, Japanese general, nicknamed "Cotton," xii. 74; birth and peasant parentage, xii. 80; becomes general under Nobunaga, xii. 81; kills murderer of Nobunaga, xii. 81; quells insurrection of Shibata, xii.

81; becomes premier and is ennobled, xii. 83; works of peace, xii. 83; invades and conquers Corea, xii. 84; dies. xii. 85.
Hildebrand. See Gregory VII.
Hipparchus, Greek astronomer. x. 365.
Hippias, son of Pisistratus, banished from Athens, traitorously counsels Darius in invasion, and killed at Marathon. x. 127.
Hippoclides, unsuccessful suitor for Agaristé, x. 86; "What does Hippoclides care?" x. 91.
Hippocrates, Greek father of medicine. x. 365.
Hirado, Japan, open to foreign trade. xii. 109.
Hispaniola. See Hayti.
Histiæus, despot of Miletus, leader of Ionian Greeks in Darius's invasion of Scythia, x. 121; urges revolt against Persia, x. 123; becomes pirate. x. 125.
Hiyeizan, Buddhist monastery in Japan, destroyed. xii. 76.
Hlade, ancient temple of Norse gods, destroyed by Olaf. ix. 98.
Hoangti, Chinese ruler, first emperor, regulates calendar, and builds roads and ships, xii. 145; birth and early days, xii. 156; conquers and welds dismembered empire, xii. 157; defeats Tartar tribes, xii. 157; starts Chinese wall, xii. 158; puts down internal enemies and completes conquest of China, xii. 160; builds great palace and constructs good roads throughout empire, xii. 164; suppresses literati and burns all the books in the empire, xii. 166; death, and extinction of dynasty. xii. 171.
Hobson, Richmond P., sinks *Merrimac* in the channel of Santiago harbor, iii. 336; captured by Spanish and imprisoned in Morro Castle. iii. 343.
Hofer, Andrew, Tyrolese patriot, exploits against Bavarians, v. 330; rules after expulsion of Bavarians and French, v. 336; captured and shot. v. 339.
Hohenstauffen dynasty, extermination of. v. 129.
Hojo Tyranny. xii. 59.
Hojo, vassals of the shoguns, rise to supreme power, xii. 60; Tokimasa, first Hojo, xii. 60; decline of power. xii. 61.
Home-coming of General Lee and his Veterans. ii. 345.
Homer, Greek epic poet. x. 360.
Honduras, invaded by William Walker, iii. 315; Walker shot. iii. 315.
Hongwou. See Choo Yuen Yang.

Honorius, cowardly Roman emperor of the West. xi. 333.
Hooker, General Joseph, at battle of Chancellorsville, ii. 319; flanked by Stonewall Jackson, ii. 319; panic of eleventh corps Federal troops, ii. 323; defeated at Chancellorsville. ii. 330.
Horatii and Curatii. xi. 22.
Horatius Cocles, Roman soldier, dèfends bridge over Tiber against Etruscan army, xi. 45; rewarded by Romans. xi. 47.
Horn, Gustav, at battle of Leipsic. ix. 316.
Houchi, queen of Wei, ability in statecraft, xii. 213; killed. xii. 215.
Houguanji, Buddhist monastery in Japan, surrendered to government. xii. 78.
Houston, General Samuel, leader of Texas war for independence, ii. 226; defeats Santa Anna, ii. 226; "Remember the Alamo," ii. 226; wounded, ii. 227; captures Santa Anna, ii. 229; wins Texas independence, ii. 230; first president Texas republic, ii. 230; senator, and governor of Texas State. ii. 230.
How a Peasant Boy Became a Premier—rise of Hideyoshi. xii. 80.
How a Woman Dethroned a Man—career of Catharine the Great of Russia. viii. 184.
How Arthur Triumphed over the Kings. xiii. 65.
How Arthur Won the Throne. Book I, xiii. 19.
How Athens Rose from its Ashes—rebuilt and beautified under Pericles after burning by Persians. x. 186.
How Balin Gave the Dolorous Stroke. xiii. 72.
How Balin Won and Used the Enchanted Sword. xiii. 55.
How Beaumains Won his Bride. xiii. 212.
How Big Ferré Fought for France. vi. 94.
How Brave Horatius Kept the Bridge. xi. 43.
How Civilization Came to Japan. xii. 12.
How Colonel Clark Won the Northwest. ii. 153.
How Elaine died for Love. xiv. 251.
How Europe Entered China. xii. 306.
How Franklin Came to Philadelphia. i. 90.
How Galahad Got his Shield. xiv. 141.
How Hannibal Fought and Died. xi. 145.
How Hawaii Lost its Queen and Entered the United States. i. 338.
How Houston Won Freedom for Texas. ii. 225.
How King Rolf Won his Bride. ix. 9.
How Lancelot and Turquine Fought. xiii. 153.
How Lancelot Saw the Sangreal. xiv. 207.

How Morgan Cheated the King. xiii. 110.
How Oglethorpe Saved Georgia from Spain. ii. 95.
How Olaf, the Slave Boy, won the Throne. ix. 89.
How Old Hickory Fought the Creeks. ii. 193.
How Palamides Fared at the Red City. xiv. 46.
How Rome was Founded. xi. 7.
How Sir Tord Fought for Charles of Sweden. ix. 217.
How the Charter was Saved. i. 80.
How the Ditmarshers Kept their Freedom. ix. 236.
How the Electric Telegraph was Invented. i. 259.
How the Empire of China Arose and Grew. xii. 142.
How the Friars Fared among the Tartars. xii. 236.
How the Spartans Died at Thermopylæ. x. 144.
How the Taira and the Minamoto Fought for Power. xii. 41.
How the White Ship Sailed. iv. 86.
How Tristram Befooled Dinadan. xiv. 23.
How Tristram Came to Camelot. Book VII, xiii. 304.
How Tristram was Knighted. xiii. 238.
How Trouble Came to Lionel and Hector. xiii. 137.
How Troy was Taken. x. 7.
Howard, Lord, admiral of English fleet, in victory over "Invincible Armada." vii. 240.
Howell, king of Brittany, aided by Tristram in his wars. xiii. 287.
Hue, Sir, of the Red Castle, overthrown by Uwaine. xiii. 135.
Huguenots, massacre of Saint Bartholomew. vi. 188.
Humiliation of Sparta. x. 257.
Hundred Years' War in France. vi. 94.
Hung Sew-tseuen, Chinese mystic, starts Christian movement that becomes Tai-Ping rebellion, xii. 325; proclaimed emperor, xii. 327; Tai-Pings defeated by foreign aid, and suicide of Hung. xii. 328.
Hungary, invaded by Magyars, v. 62; Belgrade defended against Turks by Hunyades and Capistrano, v. 210; freed of Turks by battle of Mohacz, v. 287. See Attila, Avars.
Huns at Orleans. vi. 7.
Hunter, James, North Carolina "Regulator," ii. 130; defeated by Governor Tryon at battle of Alamance, ii. 131; fugitive, flees to Tennessee. ii. 133.
Hunting of Braemar—Jacobite plot in cause of James Francis Edward, son of James II. iv. 315.
Hunting in the Highlands. iv. 315.

Hunyades, Hungarian patriot, defense of Belgrade against Turks, v. 210; dies. v. 215.
Husbands, Herman, persecution by Governor Tryon, ii. 125; fugitive, goes to Tennessee. ii. 132.
Huss, John, reformer, tried and burned. v. 182.
Hypatia, philosopher of Alexandria. x. 367.

Icarian Sea, named from Icarius, son of Dædalus. x. 39.
Icarus, son of Dædalus, drowned in the Icarian Sea. x. 39.
Iceland. See SCANDINAVIA.
Idanthyrsus, Scythian king, defeats army of Darius. x. 118.
"If This Be Treason Make the Most of It." ii. 122.
Igor, Russian king, bloody conquests in Asia Minor, viii. 21; killed in raid on the Drevlians, viii. 22; revenge of Olga, his wife, on Drevlians. viii. 23.
Igraine, Queen, mother of Arthur, xiii. 37; accused by Sir Ulfius. xiii. 37.
Ii, Tai Kun who signed treaty with Perry and led to fall of Shoguns. xii. 134.
Illinois, won for United States by George Rogers Clark. ii. 165.
"In hoc signo vinces." xi. 320.
India, "Massacre of an Army." iv. 349.
Indian Massacre in Virginia. ii. 40.
Indiana, won for United States by George Rogers Clark, ii. 165; raided by General John H. Morgan. ii. 331.
Indians, American, attitude to France and England previous to French and Indian War, i. 101; treatment by Spanish, British, and French explorers, ii. 76; difference between North and South, ii. 76; civilization of Southern, ii. 76; of Virginia, admitted to William and Mary College, ii. 90; cruelty of the Spaniards, iii. 186; insurrection of Peruvian natives. iii. 191.
Indulgences, sale of in Europe, and Martin Luther's preaching. v. 217.
Ingeborg, daughter of King Osten of Upsala, infatuation of Ragnar Lodbrok. ix. 28.
Ingerd, Queen, dreams before the coming of Rolf, ix. 11, ix. 15.
Intrepid, ketch used by Decatur in destroying the frigate *Philadelphia*. i. 237.
Introductory. xiii. 9.

Inquisition, Spanish. vii. 248.
Invasion of Africa—capture of Oran by Cardinal Ximenes. vii. 192.
Invasion of the Tartar Steppes—effective campaigns against Tartars, prowess of Emperor Vouti. xii. 186.
Invincible Armada defeated by English under Lord Howard, and shattered by storms. vii. 235.
Iona, monastery on. iv. 18.
Ionians, subjects of Persia, aid Darius in invasion of Scythia, x. 120; unsuccessful revolt against Darius. x. 123.
Iphigenia, daughter of Agamemnon, sacrificed to obtain fair weather. x. 10.
Ireland, conversion to Christianity, iv. 18; relief of Londonderry, iv. 305; incursions of vikings, ix. 64; Thorgisl captures Dublin, ix. 64; Thorgisl killed by the daughter of Maelsechnail, and Ireland freed of vikings, ix. 65; Olaf the White founds viking kingdom. ix. 65.
Ironside, second son of Ragnar and Aslög, named from his tough skin, ix. 27; invades England, avenges Ragnar's death, and rules over northern Britain. ix. 30.
Ironside, Sir. See Red Knight of the Red Lawns.
Iroquois, beginning of hostility to French, i. 34; under Brant, join Saint Leger in attack on Fort Schuyler. i. 197.
Irrigation, in Japan. xii. 15.
Irving, description of Daniel Boone. i. 156.
Isebrand, Wolf, leader of Ditmarshers. ix. 238.
Isles of Beauty Beyond the Seas. iii. 7.
Isolde, daughter of King Anguish of Ireland, xiii. 249; beloved by Tristram, xiii. 250; cures him of wound, xiii. 250; beset by love of Palamides, xiii. 250; loves Tristram, xiii. 254; parted from Tristram by queen's anger at death of Marhaus, xiii. 255; their troth-plight, xiii. 257; Tristram returns to Ireland, xiii. 267; "draught of love," xiii. 267; taken by Tristram to marry King Mark, xiii. 268; they drink the draught of love intended for King Mark, xiii. 269; their passionate love, xiii. 270; adventure of the castle of Pleure, xiii. 270; wedded to King Mark, xiii. 274; in Palamides' power, xiii. 277; rescued by Tristram, xiii. 280; jealousy of King Mark, xiii. 281; harbors Tristram in Tintagil, xiii. 290; love of

Kehydius, xiii. 290; madness of Tristram, xiii. 295; love-madness, xiii. 298; attempts her own death, xiii. 298; Tristram found by King Mark, xiii. 301; recognizes Tristram, xiii. 301; Tristram banished by King Mark, xiii. 301; flight with Tristram. xiv. 21; at Joyous Gard, xiv. 22; entertains Dinadan, xiv. 29; rebukes Palamides, xiv. 79; returns to Cornwall with Tristram, xiv. 115; dies of grief for death of Tristram. xiv. 116.

Isolde la Blanche Mains, daughter of King Howell of Brittany, heals Tristram's wound. xiii. 289.

Issus, battle in Asia Minor, Alexander the Great victorious over Darius Codomannus. x. 298.

Isthmian games, Greek athletic contests. x. 320.

Italy, invaded by Lombards, and kingdom of Lombardy founded, v. 19; invaded by Avars, v. 28; career of Grimoald, v. 28; Lucca looted by Hasting, a viking, v. 48; invaded by Otho II, v. 72; Milan and Frederick Barbarossa, v. 105; "Sicilian Vespers," v. 137; loss of temporal power of pope, vi. 340; new kingdom of Italy formed. vi. 340.

Ivan, the First of the Czars—overthrow of the Tartars. viii. 60.

Ivan III, first of the czars, cowardice in war, viii. 61; Tartars annihilated by allies of Russia, viii. 62; ability in statecraft, viii. 62; plans for autocracy, viii. 63; marriage with Sophia, Greek princess, brings him imperial eagle and title of czar, viii. 63; rise of the autocracy, viii. 65; Novgorod and other free cities subjugated. viii. 67.

Ivan the Terrible—Ivan IV of Russia, insane lust for cruelty and blood, viii. 74; peaceful reign under premiership of Adashef, viii. 75; death. viii. 79.

Iwar, eldest son of Ragnar and Aslög, bones never harden, ix. 26; kills the magic heifers of Hvitaby, ix. 28; invades England, avenges Ragnar's death, and rules over England. ix. 30.

Iyemitsu, able shogun, xii. 95; first Tai Kun (Tycoon). xii. 96.

Iyeyasu, Japanese general, defeats insurrection and Sekigahara and brings peace to Japan, xii. 86; romantic story of founding of Yedo, xii. 90; defeats insurrection and burns castle of Ozaka, xii. 93; becomes first great shogun, xii. 93; ancestor of Tokugawa family, xii. 93; establishes feudal system in Japan. xii. 93.

Jackson, Andrew, wounded in fight with Colonel Benton, ii. 193; major-general of volunteers, ii. 195; roused from sick bed by Indian massacre of Fort Mimms, ii. 196; agony on march, ii. 196; troops threatened with starvation, ii. 197; defeats Indians at Tallushatches; brings up Indian boy in his own family, ii. 198; defeats hostiles and rescues friendly Indians at Talladega, ii. 198; disaffection among men, ii. 200; new volunteers and supplies, ii. 202; defeats Creeks at Tohopeka and ends power of Creek nation, ii. 203; acts of mercy to Indians, ii. 205; half Creek lands ceded to United States, ii. 205; major-general in United States army. ii. 205.

Jackson, General Stonewall, flank attack on Hooker at Chancellorsville, ii. 319; descriptions by Von Borcke and Lossing, ii. 320; wounded and dies. ii. 329.

Jamaica, early history of, iii. 195; discovered by Columbus, iii. 195; taken by English, iii. 197; destruction of Port Royal by earthquake, iii. 198; Sir Henry Morgan, deputy governor, iii. 198; warfare with the maroons (fugitive negro slaves), iii. 199; treaty of peace. iii. 202.

James II of England, knights William Phips, i. 66; refuses to restore charter to Massachusetts, i. 66; attempts to curtail liberty of New England colonies, i. 80; How the Charter was Saved, i. 80; driven from throne, i. 86; dethroned, takes refuge in Ireland and besieges Londonderry. iv. 306.

James Francis Edward, son of James II, futile plots in favor of. iv. 315.

James River, explored by Captain John Smith. ii. 29.

Jamestown, Virginia, saved by Pocahontas, ii. 39; saved in massacre of 1622, ii. 43; burned by Nathaniel Bacon. ii. 58.

Japan, First of the Mikados, xii. 5; early history of, xii. 5; Chinese legends of settlement, xii. 10; How Civilization Came to Japan, xii. 12; pestilence stayed by piety of Sujin, xii. 13; mirror, sword, and ball, holy emblems of nation, xii. 13; how the mikados live, xii. 14; reforms and civilization introduced by mikado Sujin, xii. 15; irrigation introduced, xii. 15; military genius of Japanese, xii. 16; Yamato-Daké, a Hero of Romance, xii. 19; Jingu, the Amazon of Japan—conquers Kumaso and Corea, and gives birth to Ojin, the god of war, xii. 27; Decline of the Mikados, xii. 35; importance of conquest of Corea to

Japanese civilization, xii. 35; writing, silkworm culture, and Buddhism introduced from Corea, xii. 35; shoguns overshadow mikados, xii. 36; quarrels of noble families, xii. 38; How the Taira and the Minamoto Fought for Power, xii. 41; Bayard of Japan—Yoshitsuné breaks Taira power, xii. 50; Hojo Tyranny, xii. 59; Tartar Invasion of Japan—Tartars under Genghis Khan and Kublai Khan defeated, xii. 67; Nobunaga and the Fall of the Buddhists, xii. 73; How a Peasant Boy became a Premier—rise of Hideyoshi, xii. 80; Founder of Yedo and of Modern Feudalism—Iyeyasu brings peace to Japan, xii. 86; Progress of Christianity in Japan—firearms and European goods introduced by Portuguese, Francis Xavier, first missionary of Christianity, xii. 97; Decline and Fall of Christianity in Japan—faults of Europeans disgust Japanese, and lead to proscription of Christianity and exclusion of foreigners, xii. 106; Captivity of Captain Golownin—Russian officer who penetrated Japan, xii. 113; Japanese policy of isolation, xii. 113; Opening of Japan—Perry's epoch-making visit, xii. 123; Japan's situation with regard to other powers, xii. 124; ports opened to foreign commerce, xii. 131; Mikado Comes to His Own Again—fall of the shoguns, xii. 133; signing of treaty by Tai Kun (Tycoon) rouses mikado and leads to fall of shoguns, xii. 134; civil war followed by abolition of shogunate and fall of feudalism, with Mikado Mutsuhito in full power, xii. 137; welcome of foreign ideas, xii. 141; war with China over Corea, xii. 330; wins decisive naval battle in the Yellow Sea, xii. 339; Progress in Japan and China, xii. 347; war with Russia, xii. 351; destroys Russian fleet in Sea of Japan. viii. 329.

Jason, hunts for the Golden Fleece, x. 23; divorces Medea and marries Glauce, x. 31; death of Glauce, and of Jason. x. 32.

Jason of Pheræ, ally of Thebes. x. 266.

Jerusalem, taken by Crusaders, vi. 78; besieged, captured, and destroyed with great slaughter by Romans under Titus, xi. 293; temple burned. xi. 299.

Jews, persecution at time of Black Death, v. 165; driven from Spain, vii. 248; sufferings of, vii. 250; effect on Spain, vii. 251; Jerusalem taken and destroyed with great slaughter by Romans under Titus, xi. 293; temple burned. xi. 299.

Jimenez, Mexican revolutionary leader, shot. iii. 234.
Jimmu Tenno, first mikado of Japan, legends of birth, xii. 5; conquers aborigines, xii. 6; marries Princess Tatara, xii. 10; peaceful and civilizing rule, xii. 10; festival of. xii. 11.
Jingu, the Amazon of Japan, xii. 27; woman's position in early Japan, xii. 27; wife of Mikado Chinai, xii. 27; revelation as to conquest of land of Shiraki (Corea), xii. 28; conquers Kumaso after Chinai's death, xii. 29; sends expedition and conquers Corea, xii. 31; mother of Ojin, Japanese god of war. xii. 34.
Joan of Arc, the Maid of Orleans, vi. 116; early years, vi. 116; vision and mission to save France, vi. 117; rescues Orleans and saves France from the English, vi. 122; Charles VII crowned, vi. 131; captured, tried, and burned at the stake. vi. 131.
Jocasta, wife of Œdipus, hangs herself. x. 42.
John of England, brother of Richard Cœur de Lion, treachery of. iv. 107.
John of France, defeated and captured at Poitiers. iv. 174.
John, second son of Gustavus Vasa, presents Erik's suit to Queen Elizabeth, ix. 297; marries Catherine, princess of Poland, ix. 304; imprisoned by Erik, and released, ix. 305; heads rebellion against Erik, captures and imprisons him. ix. 308.
John of Leyden. See Bockelson.
John Morgan's Famous Raid. ii. 331.
Johnson's Greens, Tories in siege of Fort Schuyler. i. 202.
Joliet explores Mississippi River. ii. 62.
Jomsvikings (or Jomsborg vikings), enlist with Harald Bluetooth against Haakon, ix. 80; organized by Palnatoke. ix. 122.
Jönsson, Ture, plotter and traitor, ix. 271; letter from Klass Bille, ix. 278; dies. ix. 280.
Joyous Gard. xiv. 22.
Juarez, Benito, leader of Mexican patriots, breaks French rule in Mexico, iii. 316; president of Mexico, iii. 317; capture and execution of Maximilian. iii. 323.
Jugurtha. the Purchaser of Rome—buys the support of Rome in his usurpation of Numidian throne, xi. 173; loses favor, defeated by Metellus, Marius, and Sulla, xi. 175; betrayed into hands of Rome, and dies in prison. xi. 179.
Julian. Count, traitorous Spanish governor of Ceuta, aids Moors in invading Spain. vii. 24.

Julius Cæsar, saved from proscription of Sulla, xi. 196; captured and held for ransom by Mediterranean pirates, xi. 204; assails, defeats, and crucifies them, xi. 206; characteristics, xi. 208; triumvirate with Pompey and Crassus, xi. 209; elected consul, xi. 209; conquests in Gaul and Britain, xi. 209; jealousy and plots of Pompey, xi. 211; crosses the Rubicon, and advances on Rome, flight of Pompey and his party, xi. 213; conquers Spain, xi. 215; defeats Pompey at Pharsalia, xi. 215; Pompey killed in Africa, xi. 217; Cæsar conquers Africa, xi. 217; dictator and censor, clemency, and wise reforms, xi. 218; desire for royal crown, xi. 219; plots by jealous factions, xi. 220; "beware the Ides of March," xi. 221; assassinated in the Senate, xi. 222; "Et tu, Brute!" xi. 223; subsequent events to rule of Octavius, first emperor. xi. 224.
Julius Sabinus, chief of the Ligones, fruitless revolt against Romans, xi. 289; wanderings, capture, and execution with Eponina, his wife. xi. 290.
Jurissitz, Nicholas, Hungarian soldier, defeats invasion of Solyman the Magnificent at Guntz. v. 229.

Kachi, Japanese merchant, assists in rescue of Captain Golownin. xii. 120.
Kagoshima, Japan, Francis Xavier lands. xii. 101.
Kalakaua, reactionary king of Hawaiian Islands. i. 340.
Kalmucks, Tartar tribes, settle along the Volga, viii. 202; grievance of Zebek-Dorchi, and migration of Kalmucks into Asia, viii. 202; terrible sufferings during the march, attacked by Bashkirs and Kirghises, viii. 209; arrival in China, viii. 214; subjugated by Manchus. xii. 290.
Kamakura, capital of the mikados, founded by Yoritomo. xii. 48.
Kambalu, capital of Cathay (now Pekin, China). xii. 257.
Kamehameha, king of Hawaii, subjugates Hawaiian Islands. i. 339.
Kamehameha III, king of Hawaiian Islands, grants constitution. i. 340.
Kanghi, Manchu emperor of China, completes conquest of China, and subdues rebel hordes, xii. 290; campaign against Galdan and the Kalmucks. xii. 291.
Kansas, region of reached by Coronado. iii. 107.
Kaotsou and the Dynasty of the Hans. xii. 172.
Kaptchak, Golden Horde of Tartars. viii. 51.

Karelians. ix. 196.
Karl Knutsson, elected Charles VIII of Sweden, ix. 217; unsettled condition of realm, ix. 218; exploits and death of Sir Tord Bonde, ix. 218; uprisings against Charles, ix. 223; death. ix. 225.
Kashiwabara, capital of Jimmu, first mikado of Japan. xii. 9.
Kaskaskia, captured by George Rogers Clark. ii. 153.
Katamari, founder of the Japanese family Fujiwara. xii. 39.
Kay, Sir, made seneschal by Arthur, xiii. 27; rescued from Turquine by Lancelot, xiii. 159; flouts Beaumains, xiii. 181; overthrown by Beaumains, xiii. 185; overthrown by Tristram, xiii. 311; saves Uwaine from King Mark, xiii. 341; overthrown by King Mark at the Perilous Lake, xiii. 342; rides with Gaheris and Lancelot, questing Tristram. xiii. 343.
Kearney's Daring Expedition and the Conquest of New Mexico. iii. 288.
Keen Lung, able Manchu emperor of China, return of the Kalmucks, viii. 213; ascends throne, xii. 290; conquers Thibet and Mongolia, xii. 299; invasion of Goorkhas defeated and Goorkhas reduced to vassalage by Sund Fo, Chinese general. xii. 300.
Kehydius, loves Isolde, xiii. 290; jealousy of Tristram. xiii. 291.
Kentucky, "dark and bloody ground," i. 138; explored by John Finley, i. 138; explored by Boone and his associates, i. 139; settlement at Boonesborough, i. 141; other settlements, i. 142; Indian attacks on the settlements, i. 142; attack on Boonesborough repulsed, i. 150; raided by General John H. Morgan. ii. 331.
Kettilmundson, Matts, prowess of, ix. 199; administrator of Sweden after defeat of Birger. ix. 209.
Kexholm. ix. 197.
Key of Granada—conquest of Alhama by Spanish. vii. 106.
Khans. See TARTARS.
Kherson, Russia, built and populated by Potemkin for Catharine the Great, viii. 220; decay and present state. viii. 225.
Khiva, Russians in. viii. 305.
Khokand, Asia, occupied by Russians. viii. 305.
Kief, capital of the Varangian kings of Russia, viii. 16; autocratic government of. ix. 42.

King Abul Hassan and the Alcaide of Gibraltar. vii. 115.
King Alfred and the Danes. iv. 19.
King Henry of Navarre. vi. 197.
King Philip's War, i. 69; attack on Hadley, Massachusetts, repulsed. i. 69.
King Valdemar I and Bishop Absolon. ix. 169.
King's Mountain and the Patriots of Tennessee. ii. 166.
King's Mountain, Tennessee, ii. 170; battle of, ii. 170; patriot victory, ii. 172; effect on struggle for independence. ii. 173.
Kioto, capital of the shoguns, xii. 59; burned in revolution against shoguns. xii. 137.
Kip's Bay, New York, cowardice of garrison. i. 186.
Kirghis, come under Russian rule. viii. 302.
Kiyomori, leader of Japanese family of Taira. xii. 41. See TAIRA.
Klondike, Canada, gold in. i. 330.
Kniaz Papa. viii. 174.
Knight of the Exploits—feats of Perez del Pulgar. vii. 132.
Knight with the Covered Shield. xiii. 345.
Knighting of Kay's Kitchen Boy. xiii. 179.
Knights of the Golden Circle. ii. 333.
Knights of the Golden Horseshoe. ii. 88.
Knights of the Round Table, xiii. 48; oath of, xiii. 54; Pelleas, xiii. 136; Marhaus, xiii. 136; Persant, xiii. 236; Red Knight of the Red Lawns, xiii. 236; Tristram, xiii. 360; vow Quest of the Grail, xiv. 140; end of the fellowship. xiv. 333.
Knipperdolling, Anabaptist executioner, v. 249; killed by torture. v. 251.
Knud, son of Gorm, viking, ix. 47; killed by an arrow. ix. 47.
Knud, son of Valdemar I, succeeds to throne of Denmark, ix. 173; defies Barbarossa, and adds to Danish territory, ix. 173; dies. ix. 175.
Knud. See CANUTE.
Kojiki, Japanese "Book of Ancient Traditions." xii. 6.
Kolonitsch, Bishop, services in siege of Vienna by Turks. v. 277.
Kong-foo-tse. See CONFUCIUS.
Kosciusko and the Fall of Poland. viii. 226.
Kraka. See ASLÖG.
Krapotkin, Prince, killed by Nihilists. viii. 294.
Krechting, Anabaptist chancellor, killed by torture. v. 251.

Kublai Khan, Mongol emperor of China, invades Japan, xii. 67; landing parties repulsed, and fleet destroyed by typhoon, xii. 68; army destroyed, xii. 71; Marco Polo's story of invasion, xii. 72; five years' siege of Sianyang and Fanching, xii. 242; heroic and unavailing defence of Chinese, xii. 243; palace described by Marco Polo, xii. 257; digs great canal, xii. 259; methods of war. xii. 260.
Kusanagi. See Murakumo.
Kveld-Ulf Rafnista, and Bald Grim, his son, refuse to become Harold's vassals, ix. 35; death of Thorolf, ix. 38; leaves Norway for Iceland. ix. 39.

La Belle Isolde. xiii. 249.
L. Cornelius Sulla, Roman patrician, with Marius in campaign against Jugurtha, xi. 176; Jugurtha betrayed into his hands. xi. 179.
L. Papirius Cursor, dictator, controversy with Fabius. xi. 111.
La Navidad, Cuba, fort of Columbus, garrison murdered by Caribs. iii. 17.
La Noche Triste—retreat of Cortez. iii. 58.
La Salle, Robert, greatest explorer of Mississippi River, ii. 62; fur trader in Canada, ii. 63; first white man at Ohio River, ii. 63; launches first vessel in Great Lakes and explores them, ii. 63; descends Illinois River, ii. 63; builds fort (Crevecœur) on site of Peoria, ii. 63; starts on voyage down Mississippi, ii. 63; looks for short route to Pacific Ocean, ii. 65; stay with Arkansas Indians, ii. 67; attacked by Quinnepissa Indians, ii. 71, ii. 73; sails through delta of Mississippi to Gulf of Mexico, and takes possession of whole Mississippi valley for France. ii. 72.
Labda, wife of Aëtion, mother of Cypselus, and grandmother of Periander, tyrant of Corinth. x. 93.
Labyrinth of Crete. x. 34.
Lacedæmon. See Sparta.
Laconia, country of the Spartans. x. 60.
Lady of the Lake. xiii. 39.
Lady of the Lake, xiii. 43; gives Arthur the sword Excalibur, xiii. 43; demands Balin's head, xiii. 59; killed by Balin. xiii. 60.
Lady of the Rock, championed by Uwaine. xiii. 135.
Lafitte, Pierre and Jean, smugglers and pirates of Barataria Bay, ii. 206; come to New Orleans from Bordeaux, ii. 207; partnership with pirates, ii. 208; fire on revenue ships, ii. 210; Pierre arrested in New Or-

leans, ii. 210; price set on head of Jean, ii. 210; unsuccessful militia expedition against, ii. 210; Jean offered commission in British service, ii. 212; Pierre breaks jail, ii. 213; Jean offers services in war against British, ii. 213; brothers escape when pirate haunt is broken up, ii. 214; Jean serves under Jackson in defence of New Orleans, ii. 215; Jean pirate in Gulf of Mexico. ii. 216.

Lake Champlain, discovery of, i. 41; expedition of Allen and Arnold fails. i. 177.

Lake George, scene of war. i. 111.

Lake Trasimenus, Hannibal defeats Romans. xi. 145.

Lambert, General, Parliamentary leader, captures Pontefract Castle from Royalists. iv. 270.

Lamian war. x. 313.

Lamorak de Galis, overthrown by Tristram, xiii. 283; sends magic drinking horn in revenge, xiii. 284; tilts with knights of Morgan le Fay, xiv. 12; love for Margause, xiv. 12; attacked by her sons, and slain. xiv. 13.

Lancelot of the Lake—Book IV. xiii. 137.

Lancelot du Lake, with Arthur against Lucius, xiii. 137; love for Queen Guenever, xiii. 138; his prowess, xiii. 138; rides knight-errant, xiii. 139; sleeps under the apple-tree, xiii. 139; Contest of the Four Queens, xiii. 143; overthrows Northgalis, Mador de la Porte, Mordred, and Gahalatine, xiii. 152; adventure with Beleus, xiii. 148; prowess in tournament of King Bagdemagus against king of Northgalis, xiii. 151; fights and kills Turquine, xiii. 153; kills Peris de Forest Savage, false knight, xiii. 160; adventure of the porter and the two giants, xiii. 161; rides in Kay's armor, xiii. 165; adventure of the Chapel Perilous, xiii. 169; adventure of the Falcon, xiii. 174; returns to Camelot, xiii. 177; knights Beaumains, xiii. 186; rescued by Tristram and Dinadan, xiii. 305; overthrows Palamides, xiii. 321; puts twelve knights to flight, xiii. 321; wounds Tristram, xiii. 333; quest of Tristram, xiii. 336; rides with covered shield, xiii. 353; overthrows Tristram and Palamides, xiii. 353; Gawaine and Bleoberis, xiii. 354; equal combat with Tristram, xiii. 356; they swear brotherhood and ride to Camelot, xiii. 357; overthrows King Mark, xiv. 10; warning to King Mark, xiv. 16; welcomes Tristram and Isolde to Joyous Gard, xiv. 22; unhorses Tristram, xiv. 64;

fights Palamides, xiv. 67; adventure in defence of Arthur, xiv. 71; opposes Tristram in tournament, xiv. 77; rescues Elaine from enchantment, xiv. 118; sees Sangreal, xiv. 118; loved by Elaine, and wedded through enchantment, xiv. 119; deserts Elaine, xiv. 119; madness of, xiv. 125; Marvel of the Floating Sword, xiv. 125; healed by Sangreal, xiv. 127; abides at Joyous Isle with Elaine, xiv. 127; returns to Camelot, xiv. 128; knights Galahad, his son, xiv. 129; unhorsed by Galahad, xiv. 157; vision in the chapel, and repentance, xiv. 157; takes ship in obedience to a dream, xiv. 210; sails with body of Percivale's sister, xiv. 211; joined by Galahad, xiv. 211; left by Galahad, xiv. 212; adventure of the castle and the lions, xiv. 213; sees the Sangreal, xiv. 214; love for Guenever again rises, xiv. 226; scandal thereat, xiv. 226; anger of Guenever, xiv. 227; leaves Camelot, xiv. 228; poisoning of Sir Patrise and peril of Guenever, xiv. 229; saves Guenever, xiv. 236; returns to Camelot, xiv. 231; tournament at Camelot, xiv. 239; wears token of Elaine le Blank, xiv. 242; prowess at tournament, and wounded, xiv. 243; saved from his wound, and nursed by Elaine le Blank, xiv. 250; love of Elaine le Blank, xiv. 251; grief of Elaine at his parting, xiv. 254; death of Elaine, xiv. 257; Black Barge comes to Camelot, xiv. 257; buries Elaine, xiv. 259; humility of Guenever, xiv. 259; Lancelot fights, wearing Guenever's token, xiv. 260; rescues Guenever from Meliagrance, xiv. 267; accusation of Guenever by Meliagrance, and her peril of death, xiv. 269; imprisoned through treachery of Meliagrance, xiv. 270; escapes through favor of a damsel, xiv. 272; kills Meliagrance and frees Guenever, xiv. 275; called Chevalier of the Cart, xiv. 278; scandal raised by Agravaine and Mordred, xiv. 280; trapped in Guenever's chamber, xiv. 284; kills Colgrevance and Agravaine, but Mordred escapes, xiv. 286; rage of Arthur, xiv. 290; Guenever condemned to death at stake, xiv. 290; rescues Guenever, and kills Gaheris and Gareth, xiv. 293; takes Guenever to Joyous Gard, xiv. 294; rage of Gawaine, xiv. 295; forces gathered to besiege Joyous Gard, xiv. 296; enmity of Gawaine and wrath of Arthur, xiv. 297; siege of Joyous Gard, xvi. 297; battle rages, and Arthur compelled to withdraw, xiv. 300; papal bull in defence of Guenever and Lancelot,

xiv. 303; Guenever returns to Court, xiv. 304; penitence of Lancelot, xiv. 308; banished, Lancelot goes with his knights to France, xiv. 310; besieged by Arthur and Gawaine, xiv. 314; fights and twice overthrows Gawaine, xiv. 318; Gawaine killed in battle of Arthur against Mordred, xiv. 326; his letter to Lancelot, xiv. 327; hastens to succor of Arthur, xiv. 339; seeks Guenever, xiv. 341; farewell to Guenever, xiv. 342; becomes hermit with Bevidere, xiv. 343; joined by Bors, xiv. 344; death and burial of Guenever, xiv. 344; death of Lancelot. xiv. 346.

Lanceor, slain by Balin. xiii. 61.

Land of Cinnamon. iii. 86.

Landscrona, Swedish fort on Neva River in Russia, viii. 198; attacked by Russians, viii. 198; prowess of Matts Kettilmundson, viii. 199; provisions fail and fortress falls. viii. 201.

Lane, Ralph, governor of Virginia, maltreats Indians, ii. 25; hunts gold, ii. 25; attacked by Indians and rescued by Sir Francis Drake. ii. 26.

Lantaro, the Boy Hero of the Araucanians—defeats Spanish invaders, iii. 116; killed, iii. 126.

Laocoon, killed by serpents. x. 18.

Laon, commune of, vi. 81; in middle ages, vi. 82; Gaudri, bishop of, vi. 84; establishment of commune, vi. 85; commune revoked, and killing of Gaudri, vi. 86; new charter granted. vi. 93.

Laoutse, Chinese philosopher. xii. 150.

Lara, Alvar Nunez de, breaks Moslem ranks at Navas de Tolosa. vii. 96.

Lars Porsenna, aids Tarquin in attempt on Rome, xi. 44; Horatius keeps the bridge, xi. 45; escapes assassination, xi. 47; peace made with Romans, xi. 49; escape of Clœlia and other hostages. xi. 49.

Las Navas de Tolosa—decisive defeat of Moors. vii. 96.

Las Vegas, New Mexico, occupied by Kearney's expedition. iii. 293.

Last of a Royal Race—Aben Aboo, last Ommeyade Moorish king. vii. 257.

Last Sigh of the Moor—surrender of Granada to Ferdinand. vii. 143.

Last Triumph of Stonewall Jackson. ii. 319.

Latins, aid Tarquin against Romans, defeated at battle of Lake Regillus, xi. 50; defeated by Romans. xi. 108.

Lavaine, Sir, prowess with Lancelot in tournament, xiv. 243; saves Lancelot, xiv. 244; gains great honor in tournament, xiv. 260; champion of Guenever against Meliagrance, xiv. 274; made knight of the Round Table. xiv. 278.
Lawgiver of Russia—emperor Yaroslaf the Wise. viii. 41.
League of Delos, league of Greek cities under Athens, x. 189; changes gradually to Athenian dominion. x. 189.
Lee, Major Henry, amusing adventure with wolves, i. 231; with Marion, captures Fort Motte. i. 233.
Lee, Robert E., gallant crossing of lava-beds, ii. 231; greatest feat of physical and moral courage performed by any individual, ii. 236; reconnoitres Coyacan, ii. 237; services at Churubusco, ii. 237; at Chapultepec, ii. 238; General Scott's opinion of, ii. 238; brevet ranks for services, ii. 238; his character, ii. 240; returns home, ii. 345; incidents quoted from Carlton McCarthy. ii. 346.
Leif, lands on North American continent, i. 12; embraces Christianity in Norway, i. 14; sails southward from Greenland, i. 14; lands on Helluland, i. 15; lands on Markland, i. 15; lands and winters on Vineland, i. 15; Tyrker discovers grapes, i. 18; returns to Greenland, and governs Greenland colony. i. 19.
Lejre, in Sjölland Island, Denmark, seat of Odin's worship. ix. 43.
Lelaing, Jacques de, feats of knight-errantry. vi. 133.
Lemnos, island inhabited by women, visited by Argonauts. x. 24.
Leodegrance, King, father of Guenever, xiii. 46; gives Arthur the Table Round and one hundred knights. xiii. 48.
Leonidas, leader of Spartans at Thermopylæ. x. 149.
Leontiades, Theban traitor, x. 247; killed by patriots. x. 251.
Leopold, duke of Austria, defeated and slain by Swiss at Sempach. v. 187.
Lepanto, victory of fleet of Spain and allies over Turks, vii. 224; begins decline of Moslem empire. vii. 234.
Lepidus, in triumvirate with Antony and Octavius, xi. 225; rule in Africa. xi. 227.
Lesbos, revolts against Athenian rule, x. 200; saved from Athenian vengeance. x. 200.
Leuctra, victory of Thebes over Sparta. x. 259.
Leuthen, battle of. v. 321.

Lewis, Andrew, general, and Indian fighter, defeats Dunmore. ii. 143.
Lexington, Paul Revere's ride, i. 157; fight between militia and British troops, i. 166; opening of the Revolution. i. 168.
Li Hung Chang, progressive Chinese statesman. xii. 353.
Li Tseching, rebel chief, ravages China and destroys Ming dynasty, xii. 281; defeated and slain by Wou Sankwei, Manchu general. xii. 283.
Libby Prison, Union officers imprisoned, i. 298; description of, i. 298; plan of escape, i. 299; tunnel dug, i. 300; escape of one hundred and nine prisoners, i. 305; flight of Captains Earle and Rowan, i. 305; helped by friendly negroes, i. 308; rescued by Federal patrols, i. 312; fate of other fugitives. i. 312.
Lichimin. See TAITSONG.
Licinian Laws. xi. 168.
Liegnitz, battle of. v. 322.
Lieou Pang, Chinese emperor, founder of Han dynasty, xii. 172; rules as Kaotsou, xii. 172; continues civilizing work of Hoangti, and seeks to restore books, xii. 173; invasion of Tartars, and shameful peace, xii. 177; death. xii. 179.
Lieouchi, defender of Tsetong. xii. 214.
Lieouwen Hoan, Chinese governor, defends Sianyang and Fanching against Kublai Khan. xii. 242.
Lieouyu, shoemaker's apprentice, becomes soldier, xii. 205; defeats pirate Sunghen, xii. 206; commands army, and puts down rebellions, xii. 206; deposes emperor and assumes throne, xii. 209; dies. xii. 211.
Lieutenant Hobson and the sinking of the *Merrimac*. iii. 336.
Liliuokalani, queen of Hawaiian Islands, i. 341; reactionary tendencies and misrule, i. 341; debt, lottery, and opium, i. 341; reactionary constitution, i. 343; provisional government, i. 345; revolution, i. 346; interference of President Cleveland, i. 348; animus of Liliuokalani, i. 349; starts counter revolution, and defeated, i. 350; leaves Hawaiian Islands, i. 352; Hawaiian Islands annexed by United States, and made Territory. i. 352.
Lily Maid of Astolat. xiv. 239. See ELAINE LE BLANK.
Linet, seeks champion against Red Knight of the Red Lawns, xiii. 183; flouts Beaumains, xiii. 184; humility to Beaumains, xiii. 202; weds Gaheris. xiii. 235.

Lionel, Sir, rides knight-errant with Lancelot, xiii. 139; overthrown by Sir Turquine, xiii. 140; rescued from Turquine by Lancelot, xiii. 159; attacks Bors, and kills the hermit and Colgrevance, xiv. 189; voice from heaven. xiv. 193.
Lioness, Dame, besieged by Red Knight of the Red Lawns, xiii. 206; rescued by Beaumains, xiii. 209; homage of the red knight, xiii. 212; tests Beaumains's love, xiii. 213; troth-plight with Beaumains, xiii. 218; marries Beaumains. xiii. 235.
Literary glory of Greece. x. 360.
Litingchi, Chinese governor, heroic deeds in aid of Sian-yang and Fanching. xii. 244.
Littester, "King of the Commons." iv. 194.
Little, Captain, attacked by Indians, saved by Israel Putnam. i. 112.
Little Rock, Arkansas, site of De Soto's camp. ii. 20.
Liuchi, empress poisoner of China, poisons rivals for throne and seats her son, xii. 180; power behind the throne, xii. 181; poisons all opponents, xii. 181; death. xii. 185.
Locri, Greece, temple of Proserpine robbed of treasure by Pyrrhus. x. 332.
L'Olonnois, French buccaneer, torn in pieces by Indians. vii. 267.
L'Ouverture, Toussaint, Haytian patriot, sweeps British from island, iii. 207; wise rule as French colonial governor, iii. 209; anger of Napoleon and French invasion, iii. 211; surrenders to French, taken to France, and dies in prison. iii. 214.
Lombards, invade Italy, and found kingdom, v. 19; peaceful cultivation of land. v. 22.
Lombardy. See ITALY.
Lonazep, Tournament at. xiv. 36.
Londonderry, Ireland, refuge of English Protestant fugitives, besieged by Irish, iv. 305; famine and disease, iv. 307; siege raised and food brought in. iv. 310.
Lone Star Republic, Lone Star State. See TEXAS.
Long Beards. See LOMBARDS.
Longinus, Greek scholar, secretary and adviser of Zenobia, x. 352; advises defiance of Rome, and executed by Aurelian. x. 353.
Longobardi. See LOMBARDS.
Longueil, France, defended against English by peasants. vi. 94.

"Long Walls," joining Athens and Piræus, x. 190; razed, x. 219; rebuilt with Persian aid. x. 220.
Lopez, Carlos Antonio, president of Paraguay. iii. 278.
Lopez, Solano, president of Paraguay, killed in battle. iii. 278.
Lord Dunmore and the Gunpowder. ii. 135.
Lorraine, declared forever part of Germany. v. 71.
"Loss of the Son," song by Egil the Icelander. ix. 59.
Lost Colony of Roanoke. ii. 23.
Lot, king of Orkney, defeated by Arthur, xiii. 28; Gawaine, his son, knighted by Arthur, xiii. 49; attack on Arthur delayed by Merlin, xiii. 69; attacks Arthur, xiii. 70; killed by Pellinore. xiii. 70.
Lothian, king of, defeated by Arthur. xiii. 28.
Louis XI of France, adventures with Charles the Bold. vi. 147.
Louis XIII of France, services of Cardinal Richelieu. vi. 218.
Louis XIV of France, revolt in Paris. vi. 233.
Louis XVI of France, futile attempt at flight. vi. 298.
Louis Napoleon. See NAPOLEON III.
Louis the Polite and Charles the Bold. vi. 147.
Louisiana, taken for France by La Salle, ii. 72; French of, and the Natchez Indians, ii. 76; settled by French, ii. 79; French settlement destroyed by Natchez Indians, ii. 84; pirates of Barataria Bay. ii. 206.
Louvain, France, defeat of vikings by Emperor Arnulf, v. 57; Danes defeated. ix. 45.
Love Affairs of King Erik. ix. 296.
Love of Lancelot and Guenever—Book X. xiv. 226.
Love's Knight-Errant. iv. 241.
Lübeck, treaty of peace in Thirty Years' War. v. 260.
Lucca, Italy, looted by Hasting, a viking. v. 48.
Lucius Icilius, leader in revolt against decemvirs. xi. 78.
Lucius Junius, surnamed Brutus (the "Dullard"), feigns imbecility, xi. 36; leads insurrection against Tarquin dynasty, xi. 39; one of first Roman consuls, xi. 41; condemns his sons to death for treason, xi. 43; killed in battle. xi. 44.
Lucius Mummius, Roman destroyer of Corinth. x. 347.
Lucius Quinctius, surnamed Cincinnatus, called from plowing his lands to lead army against Æquians under Gracchus, xi. 68; Æquians defeated and compelled to go under the yoke, xi. 73; enters Rome in triumph, Gracchus and Æquian chiefs in fetters, xi. 74; returns to farm. xi. 74.

Lucius Tarquin, husband of Lucretia, avenged on Tarquin dynasty, xi. 36; one of first Roman consuls. xi. 41.
Lucius Tarquinius, first Tarquin king of Rome, wise and peaceful rule, xi. 26; murdered, xi. 27; succeeded by Servius Tullius. xi. 28.
Lucius Tarquinius (the younger), son of Lucius Tarquinius, kills Servius Tullius and usurps throne, xi. 29; evil rule as Tarquin the Proud, xi. 31; exiled, xi. 31; Books of the Sibyl, xi. 32; shameful treatment of Lucretia by Sextus, xi. 36; banished from Rome, xi. 39; attempts to win back his throne, with aid of Lars Porsenna, xi. 43; Horatius Cocles keeps the bridge, xi. 45; failure of attempt, xi. 49; third attempt to regain throne, with aid of Latins, xi. 50; Romans miraculously aided by Castor and Pollux, xi. 51; retires to Cumæ and dies. xi. 53.
Lucius Virginius, Roman centurion, daughter Virginia seized by Appius Claudius, xi. 78; kills her to save her, xi. 82; avenges her by death of Appius Claudius and expulsion of decemvirs. xi. 84.
Lucretia, wife of Lucius Tarquin, shameful treatment by Sextus, and suicide. xi. 36.
Lupicinus, Roman governor of Thrace. xi. 327.
Lunalio, king of Hawaiian Islands. i. 340.
Luther and the Indulgences. v. 217.
Luther, Martin, in Wartburg Castle, v. 217; translated Bible into German, v. 219; birth and early years, v. 219; abuse of indulgences, v. 220; Tetzel, v. 221; nails theses to Wittenberg church, v. 221; bull of excommunication, and sympathy of Germany, v. 223; Diet of Worms, v. 224; spreads reformation, v. 228; dies, v. 228; Anabaptist craze. v. 238.
Lützen, battle of. v. 268.
Lycophron, son of Periander, quarrel with his father, and exile, x. 97; killed in Corcyra, x. 99; end of dynasty. x. 99.
Lycurgus and the Spartan Laws, x. 50; death. x. 58.
Lydia, kingdom of Asia Minor, ruled by Crœsus, x. 77; conquests, x. 77; treaty with Athens, x. 78; overthrown by Cyrus, Persian king. x. 82.

M. Atilius Regulus, Roman consul, commands in first Punic war, xi. 129; defeats Carthaginian fleet at Ecnomus, xi. 129; invades Carthage, xi. 130; early victories, but defeated by Xanthippus, xi. 130; patri-

otically advises against terms of peace, and dies in Carthage. xi. 133.
Macbeth of Russia—Boris Godunof, murderer and usurper. viii. 85.
Macdowell, Colonel, defeated by Ferguson, ii. 168; joined by Tennessee and Virginia patriots, ii. 169; battle of King's Mountain. ii. 170.
Macedonia, invasion of Thessaly, and subjugation of all Greece by Philip and Alexander the Great, x. 292; victories over Darius at Issus and Arbela. x. 296.
Maceo and the Struggle for Cuban Independence, iii. 325; Maceo shot from ambush. iii. 334.
Machanidas, Spartan king, defeated and killed by Philopœmen at Mantinea. x. 340.
Maciejowice, Poland, Kosciusko defeated. ix. 229.
Madness of Sir Tristram. xiii. 289.
Mador de la Porte, overthrown by Lancelot, xiii. 152; accuses Guenever of poisoning Sir Patrise, xiv. 229; overthrown by Lancelot and Guenever freed, xiv. 236; forgiven by Guenever. xiv. 239.
Magic Sword. xiii. 19.
Magnus the Good and Harold Hardruler. ix. 132.
Magnus, son of Olaf, ruler over Norway and Denmark, ix. 132; revengeful spirit, ix. 133; defeats Sweyn, ix. 134; Harold becomes co-ruler, ix. 136; dies. ix. 136.
Magued, leader of Moorish conquerors of Cordova. vii. 47.
Magyars, invade Hungary and Germany. v. 62.
Mahomet II, sultan of Turkey, besieges Belgrade, and defeated by Hunyades and Capistrano. v. 210.
Mahomet Sirocco, viceroy of Egypt, Turkish commander at battle of Lepanto, vii. 227; killed. vii. 230.
Makaroff, Russian admiral, sunk in Sea of Japan. viii. 332.
Man with the Iron Mask. vi. 257.
Manassen, saved by Morgan le Fay and sent to Arthur. xiii. 116.
Manchu Conquest of China—ascendancy of Li Tseching. xii. 281.
Manchuria, occupied by Russia. xii. 352.
Manchus, China, ascendancy of, xii. 272; conquest of China, xii. 281; subjugation of rebel hordes, and welding of Chinese empire. xii. 290.
Manfred, king of Southern Italy, v. 129; glories of his court, v. 131; killed in battle with Guelphs, v. 132; fate of wife and children, v. 132; buried under "Rock of Roses." v. 132.

Manila and Santiago—destruction of Spanish fleets and end of Spanish colonial power. vii. 322.
Mansfeld, Count, Protestant leader in Thirty Years' War, v. 255; defeated by Wallenstein at Dessau, retreats, and dies. v. 256.
Mantinea, Arcadian city, wrecked by Spartans, x. 269; saved from Spartans by Philopœmen. x. 340.
Mar, earl of, Jacobite plotter. iv. 315.
Marat, stabbed by Charlotte Corday. vi. 307.
Marathon, Darius defeated by Athenians under Miltiades. x. 126.
Marathonian bull, kills Androgeos, x. 33; killed by Theseus. x. 35.
Marbodius, traitorous German chief. v. 17.
Marc Antony, partisan of Cæsar, xi. 220; stirs up Rome after Cæsar's assassination, xi. 224; master of Rome, xi. 224; with Octavius and Lepidus, forms second triumvirate, xi. 225; Brutus and Cassius defeated and killed, xi. 225; rules in the East, xi. 227; succumbs to the fascinations of Cleopatra, xi. 227; defeated at Actium by Octavius, flight, and suicide, xi. 232; death of Cleopatra. xi. 234.
Marco Polo, account of Tartar invasion of Japan, xii. 72; marvelous stories of Japan. xii. 97.
Marcus Furius Camillus, Roman dictator, takes Veii, xi. 87; triumph in Rome, xi. 92; legend of the siege of Falerii, xi. 92; banished by commons, xi. 93; recalled from exile and again dictator, xi. 98; defeats Gauls under Brennus, xi. 102; instigates rebuilding of Rome, xi. 102; again defeats Gauls. xi. 103.
Marcus Junius Brutus, conspirator against Cæsar, xi. 220; defeated and dies at Philippi. xi. 226.
Marcus Manlius, Roman soldier, defends capital from Gauls, xi. 100; honored by commons, but put to death by patricians. xi. 103.
Mardonius, Persian general, unsuccessful invasion of Greece, x. 128; defeated and killed at Platæa. x. 165.
Margaret, duchess of Burgundy, hatred of Tudor dynasty, abets Perkin Warbeck. iv. 196.
Margaret, queen of Haakon (grandson of Birger), ix. 211; defeats Duke Albrecht of Mecklenburg, and wins rule over all Scandinavia, ix. 214; Calmar Union formed. ix. 215.
Margrete of Bohemia, queen of Valdemar II. ix. 176.

Marhaus, adventures with Gawaine and Uwaine, xiii. 122; chooses second damsel and parts from Gawaine and Uwaine, xiii. 126; adventure with the giant Taulard, xiii. 136; comes to Camelot, and made knight of the Round Table, xiii. 136; champion of King Anguish of Ireland, xiii. 242; desperately wounded by Tristram and flees, xiii. 246; dies. xiii. 248.

Marie Antoinette and the Diamond Necklace, vi. 271; futile attempt at flight. vi. 298.

Marina, wife of Dmitri, pretender to Russian throne, eventful career. viii. 97, viii. 107, viii. 109.

"Marion, the Swamp-Fox." i. 223.

Marion, Francis, ragged band of volunteers, i. 223; commissioned brigadier, i. 224; exploits of, i. 225; conference with British officer, i. 226; defeat of Colonel Wemyss, i. 228; cuts up Tarleton's force, i. 229; defeats Colonel Watson, i. 230; heroism of Mrs. Motte, i. 232; with Henry Lee, captures Fort Motte, i. 233; in South Carolina, ii. 166; harries Cornwallis. ii. 167.

Marius. See CAIUS MARIUS.

Mark, king of Cornwall, championed by Tristram against King Anguish of Ireland, xiii. 241; envious of Tristram, tries to compass his death, xiii. 259; rage at news of Tristram's prowess, xiii. 340; attempts Uwaine's life, xiii. 341; adventure of the Perilous Lake, overthrown by Gaheris, xiii. 341; oath of Gaheris, xiii. 342; treachery of to Tristram, xiv. 9; cowardice of, xiv. 10; wager by battle with Sir Amant, xiv. 10; yields to Lancelot, xiv. 11; returns to Cornwall with Lancelot, xiv. 16; persecution of Tristram, xiv. 17; derisive lay of Dinadan, xiv. 17; delivered from siege by Tristram, xiv. 18; imprisoned by knight, xiv. 21; flight of Tristram and Isolde, xiv. 21; treacherous murder of Baldwin, his brother, xiv. 107; Alexander saved by Sir Sadok, xiv. 107; compact of enchantment with Morgan le Fay and Queen of Northgalis, xiv. 109; killed by Bellengerus, Alexander's son. xiv. 115.

Markland, landing of Leif. i. 15.

Maroons, fugitive negroes of Jamaica, warfare with British forces, iii. 198; treaty of peace, iii. 202; services in insurrection of 1865. iii. 204.

Marquette, Father, explores Mississippi River. ii. 62.

Marriage of Frankish princess Rigouthe. vi. 34.

Marshall, John, at battle of Great Bridge, Virginia. ii. 140.
Martha, queen of Valdemar of Sweden, ix. 203; treachery to Erik and Valdemar, ix. 203; flight to Sweden. ix. 210.
Marti, Cuban smuggler, "King of the Isle of Pines." iii. 280.
Marvel of the Floating Sword. xiv. 125.
Mary Stuart, sought in marriage by Erik of Sweden. ix. 299.
Masago, wife of Yoritomo, chief of Japanese Minamoto family. xii. 46.
Masistius, Persian cavalry leader, slain at Platæa. x. 168.
Massachusetts, issues the first treasury notes, i. 67; Sir William Phips, governor, i. 68; Indian attack on Hadley repulsed. i. 69.
Massacre of an Army—Elphinstone's army in Afghanistan slain in helpless retreat. iv. 349.
Master of the People, Roman dictator, Cincinnatus chosen in war with Æquians. xi. 10.
Matronalia, Roman festival. xi. 19.
Matsura, first day of fourth month, fishing custom. xii. 29.
Matthieson, John, Anabaptist leader, v. 246; killed in sortie. v. 248.
Maud, contest with Stephen for crown of England, iv. 93; defeated and fugitive. iv. 103.
Mavilla, Indian village on site of Mobile. ii. 17.
Maximilian of Austria and his empire in Mexico—Ferdinand Joseph Maximilian enthroned by Napoleon III, deserted by French, captured by Juarez, the Mexican patriot, and shot. iii. 316.
Maximin, peasant-emperor of Rome, xi. 309; violent career and death. xi. 313.
Maxtla, Aztec monarch, defeated and slain by Nezahualcoyotl. iii. 44.
Mayenne, duke of, defeated by Henry IV. vi. 197.
Maypo, Chili, decisive defeat of Spanish. iii. 252.
Mazalquivir, nest of Barbary pirates, destroyed by Cardinal Ximenes. vii. 193.
Mazarin, Cardinal, prime minister, misrule provokes revolt in Paris, vi. 233; flight, vi. 249; return and death in office. vi. 249.
Mazeppa, the Cossack chief, viii. 149; romantic story of his love and his wild ride, viii. 149; hetman of the

Cossacks, viii. 151; treason to Peter the Great, viii. 151; death. viii. 154.
McCullough, Major, remarkable escape at Fort Henry. i. 136.
McDonald, Flora, services in flight of Charles Edward. iv. 324.
McNaughten, Sir William, English envoy, murdered by Afghans. iv. 352.
Meaou-tsze, descendants of Chinese aborigines. xii. 144.
Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence. ii. 134.
Medea, daughter of Aetes, aids Jason, x. 27; flees with Jason and weds him, x. 28; kills Pelias, x. 30; Jason faithless, x. 31; kills Glauce, his new love, flees to Athens, and marries Ægeus, father of Theseus. x. 32.
Medici, Catherine de', instigator of Saint Bartholomew massacre. vi. 188.
Medici, Mary de', queen of Henry IV of France, vi. 210; contest with Richelieu. vi. 218.
Medina Sidonia, duke of, defeats Muley Abul Hassan at Alhama, vii. 114; admiral of "Invincible Armada." vii. 239.
Megacles, Athenian, marries Agaristé, and father of Cleisthenes of Athens. x. 86.
Megalopolis, Arcadian capital, built by Epaminondas, x. 269; invaded and captured by Spartans but restored, x. 337; exploits of Philopœmen, x. 338; beautified by spoils of Philopœmen's invasion of Sparta. x. 343.
Megara, loses Salamis to Athenians under Solon. x. 69.
Meliagrance, kidnaps Guenever, xiv. 262; Guenever rescued by Lancelot, cowardice of Meliagrance, xiv. 267; accuses Guenever, xiv. 269; treacherously imprisons Lancelot, xiv. 270; escape of Lancelot, xiv. 273; slain by Lancelot, xiv. 275; buried as recreant and traitor. xiv. 278.
Melias de Lile, knighted by Galahad and goes on quest of the Grail, xiv. 147; adventure of the golden crown. xiv. 148.
Meliot de Logres, saved by Lancelot from enchantment of Chapel Perilous. xiii. 170.
Melodias, king, birth of Tristram, xiii. 238; second marriage, xiii. 238; crime of his second wife, xiii. 238; saved by Tristram. xiii. 240.
Memmius, Roman tribune, opposes Jugurtha. xi. 174.
Memnon and the Trojan war. x. 7.
Menander, Greek dramatist. x. 365.

Mencius, follower of Confucius, xii. 153; descendants hereditary nobles. xii. 153.
Menelaus of Sparta and the Trojan war. x. 7.
Menenius Agrippa Lanatus, makes peace between plebeians and patricians. xi. 57.
Menœceus, son of Creon, sacrifices himself to Mars to save Thebes. x. 44.
Mentchikof, Russian pastry boy, rises to power with Peter the Great, viii. 165; general of Russian forces and defeats Swedes, viii. 169; prince of Holy Roman Empire, viii. 169; extortions and peculations, viii. 169; fall after the death of Peter. viii. 170.
Menteith, Sir John, treachery of. iv. 147.
Merida, Spain, captured by Moors. vii. 43.
Merlin's Folly and Fate. xiii. 89.
Merlin, magician, predicts miracle of the magic sword, xiii. 20; custodian of mystery of Arthur's birth, xiii. 25; helps Arthur against besieging kings, xiii. 29; reveals mystery of Arthur's birth, xiii. 35; prophesies Arthur's death, xiii. 36; and his own, xiii. 37; saves Arthur in fight with Pellinore, xiii. 40; the Lady of the Lake, xiii. 43; prophesies Dolorous Stroke, xiii. 65; helps Balin and Balan to capture King Ryons, xiii. 66; delays King Lot's attack on Arthur, xiii. 68; prepares a wondrous tomb for Arthur, xiii. 70; rescues Balin and Pellam from beneath Listeneise Castle, xiii. 81; besotted with Nimue, xiii. 89; teaches her secrets of necromancy, xiii. 89; wearies Nimue, xiii. 91; trapped in the cave by Nimue. xiii. 92.
Merovée, imprisoned by Fredegonde, and suicide. vi. 32.
Merrimac, Confederate ironclad, destroys the federal frigates *Cumberland* and *Congress*, i. 275; moves on the *Minnesota*, i. 279; met by the *Monitor*, i. 280; forced to give up fight, i. 282; effect of combat on naval construction. i. 284.
Messenia, country of the Greek Peloponessus, war with Sparta and ultimate defeat, x. 60; exploits of Aristomenes, x. 62; Tyrtæus, lame schoolmaster of Athens, incites Spartans to victory, x. 66; restored by Epaminondas, x. 269; saved from Spartans by Philopœmen, x. 341; revolts from Achæan League and attacked by Philopœmen, x. 343; poisoning of Philopœmen, x. 344; rage of Achæa and punishment of Messenia. x. 344.

Metellus, Roman general, defeats Jugurtha, xi. 176; ousted by Caius Marius. xi. 176.
Metz, Germany, taken by vikings, v. 52; destroyed by Attila. vi. 10.
Mexican War, Robert E. Lee's services in, ii. 231; battle of Contréras, ii. 236; battle of Churubusco, ii. 237; battle of Chapultepec. ii. 237.
Mexico, revolt of Texas, ii. 217; battle of the Alamo, ii. 221; romantic story of the Prince of Tezcuco—warfare of Aztec tribes, iii. 44; retreat of Cortez, iii. 58; revolutions against Spanish rule under Hidalgo, Moreles, and Yturbide, iii. 226; City of Mexico captured by General Scott, iii. 299; Maximilian enthroned by Napoleon III, iii. 316; desertion of French, Maximilian captured by Juarez, the patriot, and shot. iii. 319.
Michigan, won for United States by George Rogers Clark. ii. 165.
Mico, ruler of Creek Indians. ii. 77.
Mikado, the first, xii. 5; Sujin, the civilizer of Japan, xii. 13; manner of living, xii. 14; thrown into obscurity by shoguns, xii. 35; hedge of etiquette, xii. 37; become half-deities, occupy themselves with spread of Buddhism, and delegate affairs of state to shoguns, xii. 37; quarrels of noble families, xii. 38; completely subject to shoguns, xii. 94; Mikado comes to his own again—fall of the shoguns, xii. 133; signing of treaty by Tai Kun arouses mikado and leads to fall of shoguns, xii. 134; civil war, abolition of shogunate, and Mikado Mutsuhito in full power. xii. 137.
Milan, powerful city of Mediæval Italy, v. 105; besieged by Frederick Barbarossa and ruined, v. 108; eventual triumph. v. 109.
Miletus, sacked and burned by the Persians. x. 125.
Miltiades, leader of Greek army at Marathon, x. 130; victorious at Marathon, x. 178; insane invasion of Paros, and punishment by Athenians. x. 179.
Minamoto, noble Japanese family, rivals of the Taira family, xii. 40; warlike Japanese family, slain or driven into exile by Kiyomori, chief of the Taira, xii. 43; Yoritomo and Yoshitsuné saved, xii. 44; insurrection against Kiyomori, and ascendancy of Yoritomo, xii. 47; finally break Taira power in battle in Shimonoseki Straits, xii. 55; rule again in Iyeyasu and descendants. xii. 86.

Ming, Chinese dynasty, founded by Hongwou, xii. 265; falls before Li Tseching. xii. 287.
Minin, Kozma, Russian butcher, brings order to the empire. viii. 108.
Minos, king of Crete, siege of Athens, and the killing of the Minotaur by Theseus. x. 33.
Minotaur, x. 33; killed by Theseus. x. 36.
Minute Men of Culpeper. ii. 137.
Mir, Russian communal village. viii. 42.
Misfortunes of Duke Ernst. v. 64.
Mississippi River, De Soto on, ii. 13; explored by Father Marquette, ii. 62; explored by Joliet, ii. 62; explored by Father Hennepin, ii. 62; explored by Robert de la Salle, ii. 62; Father Membré quoted on. ii. 73.
Mithridates, defeated by Sulla. xi. 191.
Mitylene, capital of Lesbos, x. 200; fruitless revolt against Athens. x. 206.
Mobile, site of Indian village Mavilla. ii. 17.
Mohacz, Turks driven from Hungary. v. 287.
Mohammed An-Nassir, Almohade emperor, defeated at Navas de Tolosa. vii. 96.
Mohammedans. See Moors, Turks.
Molang, French partisan, saves Israel Putnam from torture. i. 125.
Molino del Rey, Mexico, taken by General Scott. viii. 304.
Mongchi, Chinese woman, directs defence of Chanyang. xii. 212.
Mongols. See China, Tartars.
Monitor and *Merrimac*. i. 275.
Monitor, "cheese-box on a raft," built by John Ericsson, i. 279; attacks and defeats the *Merrimac*, i. 280; wounding of Lieutenant Worden, i. 283; effect of the combat on naval construction. i. 284.
Montgomery, Alabama, cradle of the Confederacy. ii. 258.
Moorish invasion under Mohammed the Almohade emperor, decisively defeated at Navas de Tolosa. vii. 96.
Moors, defeat Roderic, king of Spain, at the battle of the Guadalete, vii. 23; Moorish rule fixed on Spain, vii. 26; defeated by Spanish under Pelayo at Covadonga, beginning of reconquest of Spain, vii. 60; driven from Valencia by the Cid, vii. 89; defeated decisively at Navas de Tolosa, vii. 96; Alhama, Granada, captured by Spanish, vii. 106; siege of Granada, vii. 132; surrender Granada to Ferdinand, vii. 143; Moorish civilization in Spain. vii. 148.

Moravians, absorb Avars. vi. 57.
Morcar, joins Hereward in insurrection at Ely. iv. 68.
Mordred, overthrown by Lancelot, xiii. 152; kills Lamorak, xiv. 14; hatred of Lancelot and Guenever, xiv. 280; raises scandal with Agravaine against them, xiv. 281; they trap Lancelot in Guenever's chamber, xiv. 284; Lancelot slays all but Mordred, xiv. 282; left regent in Arthur's absence, xiv. 314; usurps crown, xiv. 323; besieges Guenever in the tower, xiv. 324; Arthur comes to punish Mordred, xiv. 326; Gawaine killed in battle, xiv. 327; death of Mordred and fatal wounding of Arthur. xiv. 333.
Möre, temple and idols of Norse gods destroyed by Odun. ix. 100.
Moreles, Mexican revolutionary leader, shot. iii. 235.
Morgan, the Freebooter, and the Raid on Panama. iii. 151.
Morgan, Henry, English freebooter, boyhood, vii. 268; unsuccessful attack on Port au Prince, Hayti, vii. 268; sails for Panama, iii. 151; hardships of the overland trip, iii. 153; Panama taken, sacked, and burned, iii. 158, vii. 270; Porto Bello taken and burned, iii. 160, vii. 269; treachery and attempted flight of Morgan, iii. 161, vii. 273; settles in Jamaica and knighted, iii. 162, vii. 274; puts down buccaneering. iii. 198.
Morgan, General John H., Confederate partisan leader, ii. 331; invades Kentucky, ii. 331; raids through Indiana and Ohio, ii. 333; checked at Corydon, Indiana, ii. 335; pursued by Federal forces, ii. 336; collects horses and money, ii. 336; defeated and force dispersed, ii. 343; imprisoned at Columbus, Ohio, and escapes, ii. 343; again in the field, killed at Greenville, Kentucky. ii. 344.
Morgan, Revolutionary soldier, defeats Tarleton at Cowpens, ii. 179; retreats with prisoners and spoils. ii. 180.
Morgan le Fay, sister of Arthur, xiii. 37; treachery to Arthur with the scabbard of Excalibur, xiii. 71; love for Accolan, xiii. 71; plots death of Arthur through Sir Accolan, xiii. 94; the enchanted ship, xiii. 95; sends false Excalibur to Arthur, xiii. 102; treachery discovered by Arthur, xiii. 107; attempts murder of King Uriens, xiii. 110; stopped by Uwaine, her son, xiii. 111; receives Accolan's body, xiii. 112; leaves Arthur's court, xiii. 112; again takes scabbard of

Excalibur, xiii. 113; throws scabbard into lake, xiii. 115; pursued by Arthur, escapes by enchantment, xiii. 115; saves Manassen, and sends him to Arthur, xiii. 116; takes refuge in Gore, xiii. 117; sends Arthur the enchanted robe, xiii. 118; attempts Lancelot's honor, xiii. 143; sends magic drinking horn to King Mark, xiii. 284; treachery against Tristram, xiii. 312; aids King Mark against Alexander, xiv. 108; burning of La Belle Regard, xiv. 111; sails to Avilion with body of Arthur. xiv. 339.

Morganor, overthrown by Tristram. xiii. 260.

Morgarten, defeat of Austrians by Swiss. v. 170.

Moriscos, persecution by Spain, vii. 251; insurrection, vii. 252; effect on Spain, vii. 254; found independent kingdom after insurrection. vii. 257.

Morrice, Colonel, aids in Royalist capture of Pontefract Castle, iv. 262; capture and death of Rainsborough, Parliamentary leader, iv. 267; Pontefract besieged, iv. 270; Morrice escapes, captured, and executed. iv. 272.

Morse, Samuel F. B., artist and scientist, i. 260; thinks out the idea of the electric telegraph, i. 261; successful experiments, i. 263; difficulty in raising capital, i. 264; Congress appropriates money for a private line, i. 265; Cornell's pipe-laying machine, i. 268; failure of underground wires, i. 270; Cornell's insulator, and success of overhead wires, i. 271; transmits news of Henry Clay's nomination, i. 273; "What Hath God Wrought!" i. 273; trouble over his patents. i. 274.

Morte Darthur, of Sir Thomas Malory, xiii. 11; material used, xiii. 12; characterization of heroes, xiii. 13; the English epic, xiii. 13; characteristics. xiii. 13.

Moschus, Sicilian lyric poet. x. 366.

Moscow, burned by Russians in Napoleon's invasion, vi. 316; principality of Russia, becomes supreme under Dmitri Donskoi, viii. 55; burned by Tartars. viii. 76.

Moslems. See Moors, Turks.

Motte, Mrs., sacrifices her own house to defeat the British, i. 232; type of patriot women of the South. ii. 178.

Mou Wang, Chinese emperor, builder of palaces, fights with Tartars. xii. 146.

Moukden, Russians defeated by Japan, viii. 331; capital of Manchu conquerors. xii. 278.

Mukden. See Moukden.

Muley Abul Hassan, Moorish king of Granada, breaks truce and loses Alhama, Granada, vii. 106; raids Medina Sidonia, vii. 115; gallant attack by Pedro de Vargas, governor of Gibraltar. vii. 116.
Mülhausen, Thuringia, given over to Anabaptists. v. 244.
Munk, Magnus. ix. 274.
Münster, Westphalia, given over to Anabaptists. v. 246.
Münzer, Thomas, leader of German Anabaptists, v. 241; beheaded. v. 246.
Murakumo, sacred sword of Japan, xii. 13, xii. 21; name changed to Kusanagi. xii. 21.
Murder of a King. vi. 210.
Murder of an Empress—Agrippina killed by Nero, her son. xi. 243.
Murray, Mrs., delays Clinton and aids Putnam's retreat after battle of Long Island. i. 187.
Musa, Ibn Nasseyr, Moorish conqueror of Spain, vii. 24; jealousy of Tarik el Tuerto, vii. 32; convicted by evidence of the table of Solomon, vii. 36; punished and degraded by Soliman the caliph. vii. 37.
Müsa, stratagem to conquer Merida. vii. 43.
Mutsuhito, mikado of Japan, in full power at downfall of shogunate. xii. 140.
Mycale, battle that freed Ionians from Persian rule. x. 173.
Myklegaard. ix. 68.

Nabis, Spartan king, defeated at Messenia by Philopœmen. x. 341.
Nagasaki, Japan, open to foreign trade. xii. 109.
Nanking, taken by Hung Sew-tseuen, and made Tai-Ping capital. xii. 327.
Nanny Town, Maroon settlement in Jamaica. ii. 200.
Naples, kingdom, conquered from French by Spanish. vii. 172.
Napo River, Peru, discovered by Gonzalo Pizarro. iii. 88.
Napoleon's return from Elba. vii. 327.
Napoleon I, invasion of Hayti and treatment of Toussaint L'Ouverture, iii. 210; decisive defeat at battle of Leipsic, v. 345; France invaded by Germans, Paris taken and Napoleon sent to Elba, v. 347; returns, falls at Waterloo, and exiled to Saint Helena, v. 347, vi. 327; disastrous invasion of Russia, vi. 316, viii. 241; treatment of Spain, vii. 292; places Joseph Bonaparte on throne of Spain, vii. 302; burial in Paris. vi. 335.

Napoleon III, enthrones Maximilian in Mexico, iii. 316; forced to withdraw, iii. 319; defeated at Sedan, and dethroned. v. 347.
Narva, battle of. ix. 333.
Narvaez, de, seeks gold in America. ii. 13.
Natchez Indians, welcome La Salle, ii. 71; Natchez Indians and the French of Louisiana, ii. 76; affronted by Chopart, French governor, ii. 79; massacre French settlement, ii. 84; conquered and annihilated by French. ii. 86.
Nausicaa, rescues Ulysses. x. 21.
Navarro, Count Pedro, military leader of Cardinal Ximenes' expedition against Barbary pirates. vii. 195.
Nebogatoff, Russian admiral, surrenders to Japanese. viii. 339.
Nelson, Admiral, victory over French at Trafalgar Bay, and death. iv. 339.
Nemean Games, Greek athletic contests. x. 320.
Nemours, Duke de, French leader in Italy, defeated and killed at Cerignola by Gonsalvo de Cordova. vii. 179.
Neoplatonism. x. 367.
Neoptolemus and the Trojan war. x. 7.
Nero, murders Britannicus, and Agrippina, his mother, xi. 243; harps over the burning of Rome, xi. 255; Rome rebuilt, xi. 259; persecution of Christians, xi. 260; growing disaffection of people, and death of Nero. xi. 262.
Nero, Ryons' brother, attacks Arthur, and is defeated. xiii. 68.
Nestor and the Trojan war. x. 7.
New Carthage. See CARTHAGENA.
New England, Sir William Phips and the treasure ships, i. 53; issues the first treasury notes, i. 67; James II attempts to curtail liberties, i. 80; British troops in Boston previous to Revolution, i. 157; Paul Revere's ride, i. 157; fighting at Lexington and Concord, i. 166; opening of the Revolution. i. 168.
New Forest, made by William the Conqueror, iv. 77; fatal accident to William's descendants. iv. 77.
New Granada, Spanish expelled by Bolivar. iii. 217.
New Mexico, wrested from Mexico by expedition under Stephen W. Kearney. iii. 288.
New Orleans founded. ii. 79.

New York, claims against Green Mountain region resisted, i. 173; reward offered for Ethan Allen's capture, i. 174; opposes admission of Vermont as an independent state. i. 179.
Nezahualcoyotl, Aztec prince, pursued by enemies, iii. 44; defeats Maxtla and ascends throne, iii. 49; wise and magnificent rule. iii. 50.
Nicæa, taken by Crusaders. vi. 75.
Nicaragua, invasion of William Walker, iii. 310; war with Costa Rica, iii. 311; presidency of Walker, iii. 311; sacked by Davies the buccaneer. vii. 268.
Night-Wolf. See KVELD-ULF.
Nihilists and their Work—death of Alexander II and Russian officials. viii. 293.
Nihongi, Japanese book of legends. xii. 6.
Nimue, comes to Arthur's court, xiii. 52; rescued by Pellinore, xiii. 53; wearied with Merlin's love, xiii. 89; learns secrets of necromancy, xiii. 89; traps Merlin in cave, xiii. 92; saves Arthur from Accolan by enchantment, xiii. 115; saves Pelleas from fruitless love for Ettard, xiii. 133; marries Pelleas, xiii. 135; saves Arthur from enchanted robe, xiii. 118; accuses Pinel le Savage of poisoning Sir Patrise, xiv. 238; sails to Avilion with body of Arthur. xiv. 339.
Nitta Yoshisada, revolt against the Hojo. xii. 63.
Nobunaga and the Fall of the Buddhists. xii. 73.
Nobunaga, descendant of Kiyomori, deposes the Ashikaga from power, xii. 73; wise choice of men, xii. 74; puts down dissolute Buddhists, xii. 75; killed by treachery. xii. 79.
Nome, Alaska, gold discovery at. i. 334.
Noorhachu, Manchu conqueror, legendary early days, xii. 273; conquests on neighboring tribes, xii. 274; invades China, conquers Manchuria, and makes Moukden his capital, xii. 277; dies, xii. 279; conquests of his successors, xii. 279.
Norfolk, Virginia, bombarded and burned by Dunmore. xii. 142.
Normandy. See FRANCE.
North Carolina, under tyranny of Governor Tryon, ii. 124; Regulators in, ii. 124; Tryon victorious over Regulators, ii. 131; Tryon leaves, ii. 131; takes first step in impending struggle for American independence, ii. 133; Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence, ii. 134; first to accede to Declaration of Independence, ii. 134; patriots at battle of King's Mountain. ii. 169.

North Wales. See NORTHGALIS.
Northgalis, king of, tournament against Bagdemagus, xiii. 150; overthrown by Lancelot, xiii. 152; tournament at the Castle of Maidens. xiii. 322.
Northwest, captured for the United States by George Rogers Clark. ii. 153.
Northwest Passage, attempts to find, i. 26; quotation from "Purchas his Pilgrimage." i. 27.
Norway, Christianity in, i. 14; breaks away from Sweden, ix. 362. See SCANDINAVIA.
Novgorod, the great powerful city and republic before Russian empire founded, viii. 14; saved by Varangians, viii. 15; Rurik the Varangian chosen king, viii. 15; Oleg succeeds Rurik, makes Kief his capital, viii. 16; conquers Greek empire, and forces Constantinople to ransom, viii. 18; legends of his death, viii. 19; republican government of, viii. 41; laws established by Yaroslaf the Wise, viii. 44; brought under autocracy by Ivan III, viii. 67; loss of commerce, viii. 72; harried by Ivan the Terrible. viii. 76.
Numidia. See JUGURTHA.
Numitor, descendant of Æneas, deposed by Amulius. xi. 8.
Numitorius, leader in revolt against decemvirs. xi. 80.
Nymphidius, instigates revolt against Nero. xi. 263.

Octavius, grandnephew to Cæsar, forms triumvirate with Antony and Lepidus after Cæsar's death, xi. 224; proscription of enemies, xi. 225; defeat and death of Brutus and Cassius, and Octavius founds dynasty of emperors, xi. 225; ruler of the West, defeats Antony at Actium, xi. 229; death of Antony and Cleopatra, xi. 233; rules wisely as Cæsar Augustus. xi. 235.
Odenathus, victorious king of Palmyra, husband of Zenobia, x. 352; assassinated. x. 352.
Odin, worship of in Lejre. ix. 43.
Odoacer, barbarian king of Rome. xi. 340.
Odun, Saxon chief, defeats Danish raid of Ubbo. iv. 28.
Œdipus, frees Thebes from the Sphinx, x. 42; sins in carrying out his destiny, blinds himself and wanders pursued by the furies, x. 41; pardoned by the gods, and dies in exile. x. 43.
Oglethorpe, General, proprietor of Georgia, invades Florida, ii. 96; defends Georgia against Spanish invasion. ii. 96.
O'Higgins, Bernardo, Chilian patriot. iii. 249.

Ohio, won for United States by George Rogers Clark, ii. 165; raided by General John H. Morgan. ii. 331.
Ojeda, Alonso de, companion of Columbus, captures cacique Caonabo, iii. 19; discovers Venezuela, iii. 22; dies, and buried in Santo Domingo, iii. 22; founds settlement of San Sebastian, South America. iii. 33.
Ojin, Japanese god of war, son of Jingu, the Japanese Amazon. xii. 34.
Okinaga Tarashi Himé, the "Japanese Amazon." See JINGU.
Olaf Dethrones Odin and Dies a Hero. ix. 98.
Olaf, great grandson of Harold Fair-Haired, ix. 89; birth, and flight from enmity of Gunhild, ix. 89; hero of saga writers, ix. 91; sailing for Russia, captured by vikings and sold into slavery, ix. 92; found by Sigurd Eriksson, brother to his mother, and bought out of slavery, ix. 93; viking days under protection of King Vladimir of Esthonia, ix. 94; marriage and valiant deeds in Wendland, ix. 94; turns Christian, ix. 94; wanderings in many lands, ix. 95; marries in England, and does valiant deeds, ix. 95; harries English coast, and bought off by Ethelred, ix. 96; fear and treachery of Earl Haakon, ix. 96; Haakon defeated and Olaf chosen king, ix. 97; overthrows heathen temples, ix. 98; skill with weapons, ix. 101; marries Thyra, sister of Sweyn Forkbeard, ix. 101; gathers force to win Thyra's revenues in Wendland and Denmark, ix. 101; treachery of Sigvalde, ix. 102; defeated by Sweyn, drowns himself. ix. 103.
Olaf the Saint and His Work for Christ. ix. 108.
Olaf the Saint, warlike character, ix. 108; defeats Erik and Sweyn, boy kings of Norway, ix. 109; marries Aastrid, and becomes ruler over all Norway, ix. 110; spreads Christianity through Norway, ix. 112; chiefs bribed by Canute, and Olaf dethroned and flees to Russia, ix. 116; goes to Russia, ix. 116; killed in unsuccessful attempt to regain kingdom. ix. 118.
Olaf the White, founds viking kingdom in Ireland. ix. 65.
Olaf Tryggvason, Christian king of Norway. i. 14.
Old Dominion. See VIRGINIA.
Old Empire and the New—dissolution of German empire of Charlemagne and formation of new empire at Versailles. v. 343.
Old Hickory. See JACKSON, ANDREW.
Old North State. See NORTH CAROLINA.

Oleg the Varangian, viii. 14; rules Russia, viii. 16; legend of death. viii. 19.
Oleg, Varangian prince of Drevlians, killed. viii. 29.
Olga, queen of Igor, Russian king, revenge on Drevlians. viii. 23.
Olympia, plain where the Olympic games were held, x. 316; glories of its temples and buildings, x. 318; war between Arcadia and Elis, temple of Zeus plundered by Arcadians. x. 321.
Olympiad, Greek unit in chronology. x. 318.
Olympic Games, x. 315; glory of, x. 315; Olympia, the plain where the games were held, x. 316; abolished by Theodosius. x. 318.
Ommeyades, dynasty cut off by Abbassides. vii. 68.
On the Road to Lonazep. xiv. 36.
On the Road to the Tournament. xiii. 312.
On the Track of a Traitor. i. 211.
Onomachus, second Phocian leader in sacred war, x. 291; invades Thessaly, and defeated and slain by Philip of Macedon. x. 292.
Ontzlake, oppressed by Damas, his brother, xiii. 97; Accolan becomes his champion. xiii. 101.
Opechancanough, Indian chief, captor of Captain John Smith, ii. 34; succeeds Powhatan as head chief, ii. 41; organizes massacre of 1622, ii. 42; ten years' war with settlers, ii. 44; organizes massacre of 1643, ii. 45; defeated and captured by Sir William Berkeley, ii. 46; assassinated, ii. 47; rebukes Sir William Berkeley. ii. 47.
Opening of Japan—Perry's epoch-making visit. xii. 123.
Opinion introduced into China. xii. 308.
Oran, nest of Moorish pirates, captured and sacked by Cardinal Ximenes. vii. 193.
Orange County, Virginia, explored by Governor Spotswood, ii. 88; Herman Husbands chosen representative for, ii. 127; invaded by Governor Tryon, ii. 129; battle of the Alamance. ii. 131.
Orapakes, Indian village, Captain John Smith at. ii. 33.
Orellana, Francisco de, first white man to sail on Napo and Amazon Rivers, iii. 90; deserts Gonzalo Pizarro, iii. 92; dies. iii. 93.
Orihuela, Spain, surrendered to Moors. vii. 54.
Orinoco River, explored by Raleigh. iii. 145.
Orkney, King of. See Lot.
Orleans, France, early history, vi. 7; besieged by Attila and saved by Aetius. vi. 10.

Orlofs, Russian noble family, aid in seating Catharine the Great on the throne. viii. 188.
Orœtes, Persian governor of Sardis, kills Polycrates of Samos. x. 105.
Orsini, Princess, adviser to Philip V of Spain, and power behind the throne, vii. 275; dismissed by Elizabeth Farnese. vii. 278.
Orthagoras, cook, becomes tyrant of Sicyon. x. 86.
Ortiz, Juan, captivity among Indians, ii. 15; joins De Soto, ii. 15; dies. ii. 20.
Ortygia, city of Sicily, captured from Dionysius and Hicetus by Timoleon, x. 278; citadel torn down and justice instituted. x. 281.
Osman Pacha, Turkish defender of Plevna. viii. 285.
Ostracism. x. 176.
Oswald, champion of Christianity, slain by Penda. iv. 18.
Oswi, defeats Penda and establishes Christianity. iv. 18.
Otho, overthrows Galba and becomes Roman emperor, xi. 280; deposed by Vitellius, and suicide. xi. 280.
Otho II (Otho the Red), succeeds as emperor of Germany, v. 69; Aix-la-Chapelle taken by Lothaire of France, v. 69; invades France, besieges Paris, and recaptures Aix, v. 70; fatal invasion of Italy, v. 72; second invasion, and death, v. 76; legends. v. 76.
Otumba, battle between Cortez and Aztecs. iii. 68.

Pacific Ocean, search for short route to, across America. ii. 65.
Pacific Ocean, discovered by Balboa. iii. 30.
Paez, the Llanero Chief, and the War for Freedom. iii. 236.
Patterson, Commander, defeats Baratarian pirates. ii. 214.
Palace of Kublai Khan. xii. 255.
Paladins, legends of. vi. 40.
Palafox, Joseph, commander in Spanish defence of Saragossa. vii. 302.
Palamedes and the Trojan war. x. 7.
Palamides, Saracen knight, besets Isolde with his love, xiii. 250; overthrown by Tristram and leaves court, xiii. 252; Isolde in power of, xiii. 277; overthrown by Tristram, xiii. 280; adventure with Tristram and Dinadan, xiii. 308; overthrows Persides and Tristram, xiii. 381; overthrown by Lancelot, xiii. 320; twice overthrown by Tristram, xiii. 331; again overthrown by Tristram, xiii. 335; madness of, xiii. 336;

thrown into dungeon by Darras, xiii. 339; shamed by Dinadan, xiii. 343; released by Darras, xiii. 345; saved from Breuse Sans Pitê by Tristram, xiii. 351; overcome by Lancelot in disguise, xiii. 353; overthrown by Lamorak, xiv. 12; adventure and accord with Tristram, xiv. 33; undertakes adventure of the dead knight Hermance, xiv. 40; overthrows the false Helius and Helake at the Red City, and achieves adventure of Hermance, xiv. 46; adventures on the road to Lonazep, xiv. 55; love for Isolde, xiv. 58; prowess at the tournament, xiv. 63; attacked by Lancelot, xiv. 67; victor of the first day, xiv. 68; adventure with Arthur, xiv. 70; prowess on second day of tournament, xiv. 73; opposes Tristram, xiv. 76; rebuked by Tristram and Isolde, xiv. 79; prowess on third day of tournament, xiv. 83; jealousy of Tristram, xiv. 86; adventure of Epinegris and Safere, xiv. 87; adventure at the manor house, xiv. 92; rescued by Lancelot, xiv. 95; welcomed to Joyous Gard, xiv. 96; song of Isolde, and anger of Tristram, xiv. 97; vanquished by Tristram, xiv. 102; accord with Tristram, and christened. xiv. 106.

Palladium stolen from Troy by Achilles. x. 17.

Palmyra, glorious capital of Zenobia, captured and destroyed by Romans under Aurelian. x. 355.

Palnatoke, archer, story like that of William Tell, ix. 121; founds Jomsborg vikings and ravages Christian lands. ix. 122.

Pamunky Indians, defeated by Nathaniel Bacon. ii. 54.

Panama, importance in seventeenth century, iii. 152; taken, sacked, and burned by Henry Morgan. iii. 154, vii. 270.

Panchow, Chinese general, stops incursions of Tartars, conquers Eastern Turkestan, Western Turkestan, reaches the Caspian Sea, and opens commerce with Romans, xii. 197; idol of the people. xii. 201.

Pancratium, Greek athletic contest. x. 318.

Papacy, loses temporal power. vi. 340.

Pappenheim, Count, Catholic general in Thirty Years' War, v. 255; at battle of Lützen, v. 269; put to rout by Gustavus Adolphus at Leipsic. ix. 313.

Paraguay, attains independence under Francia, iii. 269; rule of Francia as dictator, iii. 271; rule of Carlos Lopez and Solano Lopez, iii. 278; assailed by Brazil, Argentina, and Uruguay, and independence regained, iii. 278.

Paris and the Trojan war. x. 7.
Paris, taken by Hasting, a viking, v. 48; besieged by vikings, v. 54; ransomed, v. 55; revolt against Mazarin, vi. 233; besieged by Danes. ix. 45.
Parliament, fallen into evil ways, overturned by Oliver Cromwell. iv. 297.
Parliament of Paris. vi. 233.
Parthenon. x. 187.
Parthenopæus, Argive chief, killed before Thebes. x. 44.
Patrick Henry, the Herald of the Revolution. ii. 113.
Patriots of the Tyrol. v. 328.
Patrise, Sir, poisoned at feast, xiv. 229; peril of Guenever. xiv. 229.
Patroclus and the Trojan war. x. 7.
Paul Revere's Ride. i. 157.
Paulinus, missionary to Northumbria. iv. 15.
Paulinus Suetonius, defeats Britons under Boadicea with great slaughter. xi. 250.
Pausanias, leader of Spartans at Platæa, x. 167; ambition and treason, and death by starvation when hiding in temple. x. 182.
Pavia, Italy, captured by Lombards, v. 22; battle of destroys French power in Italy. vii. 183.
Peasants and the Anabaptists. v. 238.
Pedro II, emperor of Brazil, deposed. iii. 263.
Pekin, China. See KAMBALA.
Peking, penetrated by Europeans, xii. 315; Summer Palace looted by French and British in opium war, xii. 316; Peking surrendered, xii. 320; Summer Palace burned by British. xii. 321.
Pelayo, defeats Moors at Covadonga, and starts reconquest of Spain. vii. 60.
Pelias, king of Iolcus, sends Jason after Golden Fleece, x. 23; death. x. 30.
Pelistes, the Defender of Cordova. vii. 47.
Pellam, King, struck down by Balin with the Dolorous Stroke, xiii. 79; akin to Joseph of Arimathea, xiii. 81; buried beneath Listeneise Castle, xiii. 81; and disabled for many years, xiii. 82; Sangreal at Listengeise, xiv. 117; weds Elaine to Lancelot through enchantment, xiv. 119; healed by Galahad, xiv. 220; becomes a monk. xiv. 220.
Pelleas, Sir, his prowess, xiii. 127; love for Ettard, xiii. 130; Gawaine false in wooing for him, xiii. 131; saved by Nimue, xiii. 134; love turns to Nimue, xiii. 134; marries Nimue, xiii. 135; made knight of the Round Table. xiii. 136.

Pellinore, King, adventure against Arthur, xiii. 40; Tor, his son, knighted by Arthur, xiii. 50; made Round Table knight, xiii. 51; adventure of the knight and Nimue, xiii. 53; kills King Lot. xiii. 70.
Pelopidas, chief actor in rescue of Thebes from Sparta, x. 250; able leader of Thebans, x. 259; heroic death of the Three Hundred at Chæronéa, x. 261; aids in defeat of Spartans at Leuctra, x. 264; invasion of Sparta, x. 267; reëlected to office. x. 270.
Peloponessus, Greek peninsula, x. 60; Achæan League. x. 339.
Peloponnesian Confederacy, league of Sparta and other Peloponnesian states, x. 189; war with Athens for supremacy in Greece. x. 194.
Peloponnesian war, x. 194; plague at Athens, x. 196; Lesbos revolts from Athens and asks aid from Sparta, x. 200; no aid from Sparta, and Lesbos surrenders, x. 201; defence of Platæa—Platæa, Athenian ally, besieged by Spartans, valiantly defended, and escape of garrison, x. 205; fatal blunders of Athens, and defeat by Spartan fleet at Ægospotami, x. 213; humiliating terms of peace accepted. x. 218.
Penda, champion of heathendom, defeated by Christian king Oswi. iv. 18.
Pendragon. See Uther.
Penelope and the suitors, x. 20; return of Ulysses. x. 21.
Pennsylvania, invaded by J. E. B. Stuart. ii. 261.
Penthesileia, queen of the Amazons, and the Trojan war. x. 15.
Peoria, Illinois, site of fort (Crevecœur) built by La Salle. ii. 63.
Pepin, king of Italy, invades and defeats Avars. vi. 56.
Percivale, Sir, son of King Pellinore, knighted, xiv. 15; miracle of the dumb maiden, xiv. 15; delivers Tristram from King Mark, xiv. 20; adventure at the chapel, xiv. 159; King Evelake, xiv. 160; rescued by Galahad, xiv. 161; adventure of the foul fiend, xiv. 163; adventure of the serpent and the lion, xiv. 164; dream of the lion and the serpent, xiv. 165; interpretation of the dream, xiv. 167; tempted by the foul fiend, and saved by the Cross, xiv. 167; sails over sea with Bors, xiv. 194; adventure of the magic ship, xiv. 195; joined by Galahad, xiv. 198; sacrament at Castle of Carbonek, xiv. 218; sails with Galahad and the Grail to the Holy Land, xiv. 221; adventures in the Holy Land, xiv. 222; death of

Galahad and Grail taken to Heaven, xiv. 224; becomes a hermit, and dies. xiv. 224.
Perez del Pulgar, Knight of the Exploits, vii. 132; perilous expedition into Granada. vii. 137.
Periander, son of Cypselus, succeeds as tyrant of Corinth, x. 96; harsh rule, x. 96; kills Melissa, his wife, x. 96; quarrel with Lycophron, his son, and unhappy latter days. x. 97.
Pericles, Athenian law-giver, great-grandson of Megacles and Agaristé, x. 92; Athenian democratic leader, great statesman, makes Athens the greatest city of the day, x. 191; death from plague, x. 199.
Perilous Lake, adventure of. xiii. 341.
Perils of True Love. xiii. 275.
Perils of the Wilderness. i. 98.
Perin de Mountbeliard, slain by Garlon. xiii. 74.
Periœci, citizens of Laconia. x. 54.
Peris de Forest Savage, killed by Lancelot. xiii. 160.
Perovskya, Sophia, Russian nihilist, viii. 294, viii. 297; death. viii. 299.
Perry, Commodore Matthew C., U.S.N., opens Japanese ports to foreign commerce. xii. 123.
Persant, Sir, of India, overthrown by Beaumains, xiii. 203; homage to Beaumains, xiii. 203; with Beaumains at tourney, xiii. 221; made knight of the Round Table. xiii. 236.
Persepolis, sacked and burned by Alexander the Great. x. 303.
Persia, invades Greece, Darius defeated at Marathon, x. 126; Xerxes defeated by Spartans at Thermopylæ, x. 144; defeated at Salamis, x. 154; defeated at Platæa, x. 165; last Persian army to invade Greece, x. 172; Ionians freed from Persian rule at Mycale, x. 173; help to restore Athens after Peloponnesian war, x. 220; captured by Alexander the Great by victories at Issus and Arbela, x. 296; subdued by Genghis Khan. xii. 234.
Persides, overthrown by Palamides. xiii. 318.
Peru, explored by Pizarro, iii. 71; Inca Atahualpa captured, put to ransom, and murdered, iii. 77; insurrection under Tapac-Amaru, iii. 191; Bolivar aids in establishing independence, made life president, iii. 225; Spanish conquered and independence proclaimed by San Martin. iii. 255.
Petchenegans, wild tribe of Russia, wars with Vladimir the Great. viii. 38.

Peter III of Russia, dethroned by Catharine, his wife, viii. 184; murdered. viii. 193.
Peter the Cruel and the Free Companies—Castile invaded by French and English freebooters, vii. 156; atrocious murders, vii. 157; deposed by Henry, his brother, vii. 158; reinstated by the Black Prince, vii. 165; murders, vii. 167; killed by Henry. vii. 168.
Peter the Great, Russian emperor, tastes and pursuits of his boyhood, foundation of future greatness, viii. 114; work in Holland and England in search of knowledge, viii. 123; Fall of the Strelitz, viii. 132; a crusade against beards and cloaks, viii. 142; other reforms, viii. 146; Mazeppa, the Cossack chief, viii. 149; founding of Saint Petersburg, viii. 155; rise of Mentchikof, viii. 165; Catharine becomes wife of Peter, viii. 172; death of Peter, and accession of Catharine, viii. 173; death of Catharine, viii. 173; buffooneries of the Russian Court—gross living of Peter's court. viii. 174.
Peter the Hermit, appearance, vi. 69; life and deeds, vi. 69; preaching the crusades, vi. 69; enthusiasm in Europe, vi. 70; leads an unsuccessful band in the crusades, vi. 73; joins Godfrey de Bouillon, vi. 74; Jerusalem taken, vi. 78; founds monastery in France, vi. 80; dies. vi. 80.
Peterborough, Abbey, sacked and burned by English insurgents. iv. 66.
Pharsalia, Cæsar defeats Pompey. xi. 215.
Phayllus, third Phocian leader in sacred war, x. 293; seizes gifts of Crœsus to temple of Apollo. x. 293.
Phelot, attacks Lancelot and is slain. xiii. 175.
Phelps, Noah, spies on defences of Fort Ticonderoga. i. 174.
Phidias, Greek sculptor, work in decorating Athens. x. 187.
Philadelphia, Franklin's arrival in. i. 90.
Philadelphia, pirate, captured by Barbary pirates, i. 242; recaptured and blown up by Decatur. i. 237.
Philip, soldier of Macedonia, defeats the Phocians in Thessaly, and pushes conquest into all Greece, x. 292; defeats Greek army decisively at Chæronéa, x. 294; assassinated. x. 295.
Philip II of Spain; attempted invasion of England by Invincible Armada defeated with great loss, vii. 235; succeeds to throne of Spain on abdication of Charles V. vii. 206.

Philip V of Spain; marries Elizabeth Farnese, vii. 277; intrigues of Elizabeth and Alberoni, prime minister, vii. 281; disastrous war with Germany, vii. 281; Alberoni dismissed and exiled. vii. 282.

Philippa, queen of Edward III, mercy for surrendered burgesses of Calais. iv. 172.

Philippi, Greece, battle-ground where Cassius and Brutus were killed. xi. 226.

Philippine Islands, battle of Manila. vii. 323.

Philomelus, Phocian leader in sacred war, x. 289; robs temple of Apollo for war expenses, x. 291; death. x. 291.

Philopœmen and the fall of Sparta, x. 334; native of Megalopolis, x. 336; early years, training, and character as a citizen, x. 336; aids in defence of Megalopolis against Spartans, x. 338; organizes cavalry of Crete, x. 339; general of cavalry of Achæan League, x. 339; defeats and kills Machanidas, king of Sparta, at Mantinea, x. 340; defends Messenia from Sparta, x. 341; invades Sparta, razes walls of the city and abolishes laws of Lycurgus, x. 343; captured in war against Messenians, and poisoned in prison. x. 343.

Phineus, blind prophet tormented by harpies, rescued by Argonauts. x. 25.

Phips, William, sheep-boy in Maine, i. 53; early days, i. 53; marries, i. 54; treasure-seeker in the Bahamas, i. 55; aid of English government, i. 55; quells mutiny, i. 56; quells second mutiny, i. 57; returns to England disappointed, i. 60; aided by Duke of Albemarle and others, i. 61; second voyage, i. 61; treasure found, i. 63; welcomed in England, i. 65; persecuted by his enemies, i. 65; knighted by James II, i. 66; appointed high sheriff of New England, i. 66; takes Port Royal in Acadia, i. 67; attempts to wrest Canada from France, i. 67; governor of Massachusetts during witchcraft delusion, i. 68; defeats Indians in Maine, i. 68; dies in England, i. 68; rank of his descendants. i. 68.

Phocis, Greek state, wronged by Amphictyonic Council, seizes temple of Apollo at Delphi, x. 289; robs treasury of the temple for war expenses, x. 291; defeats enemies and invades Thessaly, x. 292; conquered by Philip of Macedonia, and fined to restore treasury of Apollo. x. 293.

Phœbidas, leader of Spartan army in capture of Thebes. x. 247.
Piccolomini, Field-Marshal, treachery to Wallenstein. v. 274.
Pindar, Greek lyric poet. x. 193, x. 362.
Pinel le Savage, poisons Sir Patrise, xiv. 229; peril of Guenever, xiv. 229; detected by Nimue and flees. xiv. 238.
Pinto, Mendez, Portuguese adventurer, visits Japan, xii. 98; introduces firearms, xii. 99; other visits. xii. 99.
Piræus, port of Athens, and the "long walls," x. 190; defences and long walls razed, x. 219; rebuilt with Persian aid. x. 220.
Pirates, of Barataria Bay, Louisiana, ii. 206; defeated by Commander Patterson, ii. 214; of Gulf of Mexico, ii. 216; driven out by United States fleet, ii. 216; of Mediterranean, put down by Cæsar and Pompey. xi. 205.
Pisistratus, Athenian politician, seizes control of the state. x. 76.
Pizarro and the Inca's Golden Ransom. iii. 71.
Pizarro, Francisco, with Balboa in Darien, iii. 40; conquests in Peru, iii. 71; captures Inca Atahualpa, iii. 77; Atahualpa's ransom, iii. 78; murders Atahualpa. iii. 84.
Pizarro, Gonzalo, made governor of Quito, iii. 86; fatal hunt for the "Land of Cinnamon," iii. 86; discovers Napo River, iii. 88; famine, iii. 89; discovers Amazon River, iii. 91; desertion of Orellana, iii. 92; returns to Quito. iii. 95.
Plague. v. 162.
Plague in Athens—inhabitants die by thousands, and death of Pericles. x. 194.
Plantation, typical Christmas Day. ii. 241.
Platæa, sends soldiers to aid Athenians at Marathon, x. 131; ally of Athens in Peloponnesian war, attacked by Spartans, x. 205; valiant defence, and escape of garrison, x. 206; garrison escapes, and Platæa destroyed by besiegers, x. 210.
Platæa's Famous Day—Greeks defeat Persian army under Mardonius with great slaughter. x. 165.
Plato, Greek philosopher. x. 364.
Plevna, taken by Russians. viii. 285.
Pliny, Roman naturalist, dies in eruption of Vesuvius. xi. 302.

Pliny the Younger, describes destruction of Pompeii. xi. 302.
Pnyx, hill of Athens. x. 72.
Pocahontas, daughter of Powhatan, saves Captain John Smith, ii. 37; frustrates Powhatan's attack on Jamestown, ii. 39; marries John Rolfe, ii. 39; baptized at Jamestown, as "Rebecca," ii. 39; in England, ii. 39; attachment for Captain John Smith, ii. 39; dies. ii. 39.
Poema del Cid. vii. 81.
Poisoning of Sir Patrise. xiv. 226.
Poitiers, victory of Edward, the Black Prince, over French. iv. 174.
Pojarski, Prince, drives Poles from Moscow, and saves Russia. viii. 108.
Poland, extends protection to Jews, v. 166; King Sobieski saves Poland from Turkish siege, v. 282; partition of, viii. 226; revolt under Kosciusko, viii. 226; decisive defeats at Maciejowice and Warsaw, viii. 229; Russian oppression, viii. 248; revolt under Radzivil and Chlopicki, viii. 248; victories followed by defeat at Warsaw, viii. 249; Polish nation destroyed by Russia, viii. 257.
Pollux and Castor and the search for the Golden Fleece. x. 23.
Polo, Nicolo and Matteo, first visit to China, xii. 255; second visit, xii. 256; Marco Polo in favor with Kublai Khan, xii. 256; his writings. xii. 256.
Polybius, Greek historian. x. 346.
Polycrates, ruler of Samos, beautifies city, x. 100; good fortune in conquests, x. 101; story of marvelous return of his signet ring, x. 102; killed by Orœtes of Magnesia. x. 105.
Polynikes and Eteocles, sons of Œdipus, cursed by him, x. 43; quarrels bring on wars between Argos and Thebes, x. 43; kill each other. x. 45.
Polyphemus, the giant in the Odyssey. x. 20.
Pompeii, destroyed by eruption of Vesuvius, xi. 301; described by Pliny the Younger, xi. 302; excavations, and description of city. xi. 307.
Pompey, victorious in Sicily, and Africa, and called Pompey the Great, xi. 195; defeats and slaughters part of Spartacus's army, xi. 202; breaks up Mediterranean pirates, xi. 206; member of triumvirate with Cæsar and Crassus, xi. 209; jealousy and plots against Cæsar, xi. 211; flees from Rome with his

party on Cæsar's approach, xi. 214; defeated at Pharsalia, and killed in Africa. xi. 215.
Ponce de Leon and the Fountain of Youth. ii. 7.
Ponce de Leon, Juan, first Spanish discoverer of North America, ii. 7; lands in Florida, ii. 7; with Columbus in Hispaniola, ii. 8; governor of half Hispaniola, ii. 8; conquers Porto Rico, ii. 9; sails from Porto Rico, ii. 9; search for Fountain of Youth, ii. 10; return to Spain, ii. 11; governor of Florida, ii. 11; returns to Florida to plant colony, ii. 11; wounded by Indians, ii. 11; dies in Cuba. ii. 11.
Ponce de Leon, Rodrigo, marquis of Cadiz, captures Alhama, Granada, from Moors. vii. 110.
Pontefract Castle, captured from Cromwell by Royalists, iv. 262; services of Colonel Morrice, iv. 262; capture and death of Rainsborough, Parliamentary leader, iv. 268; Pontefract besieged by Parliamentary soldiers, iv. 270; escape of Morrice and others who killed Rainsborough, iv. 272; surrender of Pontefract. iv. 274.
Pontius, general of the Samnites, humane terms to defeated Roman army at Caudium, xi. 121; bad faith of Romans, xi. 124; captured and beheaded at Rome. xi. 125.
Porsenna. See Lars Porsenna.
Port Arthur, surrendered to Japan by Russia. viii. 331.
Port Royal, Acadia, taken by Sir William Phips. i. 67.
Port Royal, Jamaica, destroyed by earthquake. iii. 198.
Porto Bello, Nicaragua, taken and burned by Henry Morgan. iii. 60, vii. 269.
Portugal, Brazil gains independence, iii. 257; Mendez Pinto visits Japan, xii. 98; traders introduce European goods into Japan. xii. 100.
Posse, Knut, aids in defeating Christian I at Stockholm. ix. 230.
Potemkin, Russian statesman, builds and populates Kherson for Catharine the Great, viii. 220; buried at Kherson. viii. 225.
Powhatan, Indian chief, sentences Captain John Smith, ii. 37; yields to Pocahontas, ii. 37; attack on Jamestown frustrated by Pocahontas, ii. 39; friend of the whites, ii. 40; dies. ii. 40.
Prague, plundered by John Ziska's mob, v. 182; center of conflict between Ziska and Emperor Sigismund. v. 198.

Preble, Commodore, forces Barbary pirates to respect American shipping. v. 242.
Preobrajensky Guards, Russia, origin. viii. 117.
Prescott, Dr. Samuel, carries news of British advance to Concord after Revere's capture. i. 164.
Prester John. xii. 241.
Pridam le Noir, defeated by Sir Bors. xiv. 175.
Proclus, tyrant of Epidaurus, overthrown by Periander of Corinth. x. 97.
Procop (Procop Holy), Hussite leader, v. 205; defeats Sigismund's army. v. 207.
Procop Little, Hussite leader. v. 207.
Prometheus. x. 26.
Propylæa, temple portals. x. 188.
Proscription of Sulla. xi. 191.
Progress of Christianity in Japan. xii. 97.
Progress in Japan and China. xii. 347.
Prussian War and the Paris Commune. vi. 337.
Pskov, Russian free city, brought under autocracy, viii. 72; harried by Ivan the Terrible. viii. 77.
Ptolemy, Greek astronomer and geographer. x. 365.
Publius Decius, devotes himself to death to defeat Latin army. xi. 111.
Pugatchef, Cossack chief, pretender to the Russian throne as murdered Peter III, viii. 195; defeated by Gallitzin and Michelson, captured, tried and executed. viii. 198.
Punic war. See CARTHAGE, ROME.
Putnam, Israel, scout in French and Indian war, i. 111; saves outpost at Fort Edward, i. 111; saves magazine from fire at Fort Edward, i. 115; escapes Indians by running rapids, i. 117; adventure on outpost, i. 118; captured by Indians, saved from torture by French officers, and sent to Montreal, i. 122; exchanged, i. 127; retreat after battle of Long Island, i. 185; Mrs. Murray's service in detaining Clinton. i. 186.
Pythian Games, Greek athletic contests. x. 320.
Pyrrhus and the Romans. x. 324.
Pyrrhus, warlike king of Epirus, birth and early years, x. 324; conquest of Macedonia, x. 325; campaigns to aid Tarentum against Romans, x. 325; disastrous victory at Siris, x. 328; further losses in victory at Asculum, x. 331; campaign in Sicily against Carthaginians, x. 331; returns to Italy, x. 331; plunders temple of Proserpine at Locri, and suffers from

storm, x. 332; defeated by Romans and retreats from Italy, x. 333; killed in attack on Argos. x. 333.

Q. Fabius Rullianus, Roman soldier and consul, disobedience, and controversy with Papirius, xi. 112; appoints Papirius dictator, xi. 114; defeats Samnites, and enters Rome in triumph. xi. 115.
Quakeress Patriot. i. 189.
Quebec, first European settlement in the northern country. i. 35.
Queen Margaret and the Calmar Union. ix. 211.
Querétaro, Mexico, Maximilian I captured and executed. iii. 323.
Quest of the Holy Grail—Book IX. xiv. 117.
Quest of the Ten Knights. xiii. 335.
Quinnepissa Indians, attack La Salle. ii. 71.
Quirinalia, Roman festival. xi. 21.
Quirinus, Roman god. xi. 21.

Radagaisus, Teutonic invader of Italy. xi. 334.
Radetzky, Russian general, captures Shipka pass in campaign against Turkey. viii. 287.
Ragnar Lodbrok and His Wives and Sons. ix. 19.
Ragnar Lodbrok, son of King Sigurd, destroys Tord's snake, ix. 19; strange coat, ix. 20; surnamed Lodbrok, i. 22; weds Tora, ix. 22; birth of Erik and Agnar, their sons, ix. 22; death of Tora, ix. 22; sorrow at death of Tora, ix. 23; finds Kraka, the beggar-child, ix. 24; weds Kraka, ix. 26; Iwar, Ironside, and Ragnwald, their sons, ix. 26; Ragnar infatuated with Ingeborg, ix. 28; secret of Kraka's birth, ix. 29; imprisoned by Ethelred in England and dies, ix. 30; ancestor to Gorm. ix. 42.
Ragnhild, prophetic dream of, ix. 32; birth and exploits of Harold Fair-haired. ix. 32.
Ragnwald, younger son of Ragnar and Aslög, killed fighting at Hvitaby. ix. 28.
Raid of the Goorkhas—invasion of Thibet and subjugation of the Goorkhas by Chinese troops. xii. 299.
Raids of the Sea-Rovers. v. 47.
Railroad in Turkestan—ruthless slaughter of Turkomans by Skobeleff, and building of the Transcaspian Railroad. viii. 311.
Rainsborough, Parliamentary leader, captured and killed by Colonel Morrice. iv. 267.

Raleigh, Sir Walter, expeditions to America, ii. 23; attempts to plant colonies, ii. 24; marvellous tales of gold in the New World, iii. 139; imprisoned by Queen Elizabeth, iii. 141; sends expedition to Guiana, iii. 142; sails up the Orinoco and Caroni Rivers, iii. 145; returns to Plymouth, iii. 149; arrested for treason, iii. 150; second voyage to Orinoco a failure, iii. 150; second arrest for treason, and execution. iii. 150.

"Ransom of the Head," song by Egil the Icelander. ix. 59.

Rattlesnake flag. ii. 137.

Ravaillac, François, assassinates Henry IV of France. vi. 215.

Rebel yell. ii. 257.

Recaldo, Martinez de, vice-admiral of the Invincible Armada. vii. 239.

Red City, Palamides avenges death of Hermance. xiv. 46.

Red Knight, overthrown by Beaumains. xiii. 198.

Red Knight of the Red Lawns, xiii. 201; overthrown by Beaumains, xiii. 207; homage to Dame Lioness, xiii. 212; and to Arthur, xiii. 212; with Beaumains at tourney, xiii. 221; made Knight of the Round Table. xiii. 236.

Regulators of North Carolina, fight against tyranny of Governor Tryon, ii. 124; defeated at battle of the Alamance, ii. 131; fugitives flee to Tennessee, ii. 133; found republic in Tennessee, ii. 133; take first step in impending struggle for American independence. ii. 133.

Regulus. See M. Atilius Regulus.

Reign of a Glutton—Vitellius succeeds Galba and Otho as Roman emperor. xi. 280.

Reign of Otho II. v. 69.

Reign of Taitsong the Great. xii. 217.

Reign of Terror. vi. 306.

Rekord, Captain, Russian officer, rescues Captain Golownin from Japan. xii. 119.

Relief of Londonderry. iv. 305.

"Remember the Alamo." ii. 227.

Remus, born son of Silvia, xi. 8; suckled by she-wolf, xi. 8; becomes shepherd, xi. 9; death of Amulius, xi. 9; site of Rome fixed by divination, xi. 10; ceremonies of founding Rome, xi. 11; killed by Celer. xi. 13.

Remy, St., bishop of Rheims, baptizes Clovis. vi. 27.

Renata, princess of Lotringen, sought in marriage by Erik of Sweden. ix. 300.
Rescue of the Queen. xiv. 288.
Retreat of Napoleon's Grand Army, after defeat at Moscow. viii. 241.
Retreat of the Ten Thousand—dramatic retreat of Greeks from Persia, under Xenophon. x. 231.
Return of Columbus. vii. 151.
Retz, Cardinal de, popular leader in revolt of Paris. vi. 235.
Revenge of Coriolanus. xi. 60.
Revere, Paul, ride to rouse people of Lexington and Concord, i. 157; captured by British. i. 165.
Revolt of the Gladiators—Spartacus heads the gladiators in futile fight for freedom. xi. 198.
Revolt of the People—plebeians against patricians, and creation of tribunes. xi. 54.
Revolutionary War, British troops in New England, i. 157; Gage attempts to seize Colonial ammunition, i. 157; Paul Revere's ride, i. 157; fighting at Lexington and Concord, i. 166; opening of the war, i. 168; Ethan Allen captures Fort Ticonderoga, i. 172; "In the name of the Great Jehovah and the Continental Congress," i. 176; Crown Point captured by Colonel Seth Warner, i. 177; attempt to blow up Admiral Howe's flagship with The American Turtle, i. 180; Putnam's retreat after the battle of Long Island, i. 185; Mrs. Murray's service in detaining Clinton, i. 186; Washington warned by Lydia Darrah of projected attack on Whitemarsh, i. 189; siege and defence of Fort Schuyler, i. 195; abortive attempt to capture Benedict Arnold, i. 211; exploits of Marion and his men, i. 223; heroism of Mrs. Motte, i. 232; Patrick Henry's speech before, ii. 122; "Give me liberty or give me death," ii. 123; Great Bridge, first battle in South, ii. 140; need of ammunition, ii. 145; expedition of Colonel Rogers after ammunition, ii. 145; British incite Indian massacres. ii. 155, ii. 164.
Rhodogast. See Radagaisus.
Richard Cœur de Lion, sought by foes, iv. 107; imprisoned and put to ransom, iv. 113; story of Blondel, iv. 113; reaches England, iv. 117; killed in Normandy. iv. 119.
Richelieu and the Conspirators, vi. 218; services to Louis XIII, vi. 218; dies. vi. 232.

Richmond, Virginia, site of Nathaniel Bacon's plantation. ii. 51.
Rigouthe, daughter of Chilperic, married. vi. 34.
Ring of Polycrates. x. 100.
Rio de Janeiro, captured and sacked by French. iii. 163.
Rio de la Plata, discovered by Sebastian Cabot. iii. 109.
Rise of the Manchus. xii. 272.
Rival Kings of Granada—warfare between Boabdil and Abdallah. vii. 123.
Rival Queens. vi. 29.
Rivalry of Tristram and Palamides. xiv. 92.
Roanoke, Virginia, site of Raleigh's lost colony. ii. 23.
Robert Guiscard, conqueror of Sicily. ix. 68.
Robert the Strong, count of Maine, defender of Germany against vikings, v. 52; ancestor of Capet dynasty. v. 52.
Robertson, James, magistrate in first American republic. ii. 133.
Robespierre, leader of the Reign of Terror, vi. 307; controversy with the Convention, vi. 307; guillotined. vi. 315.
Robin Hood and the Knight of the Rueful Countenance. iv. 121.
Rochedure, Tourney at. xiii. 346.
Rock of Gibraltar. vii. 284.
Rock of Roses—mound of stones over Manfred's body. v. 132.
Roderic, Gothic king of Spain, violates enchanted palace of Toledo, vii. 17; defeated by Moors at the battle of the Guadalete, vii. 23; treachery of Count Julian, vii. 24; disappears. vii. 28.
Roger of Sicily. ix. 68.
Rogers, Colonel David, unsuccessful expedition to New Orleans after ammunition, ii. 145; reaches New Orleans, ii. 149; receives ammunition, ii. 149; falls into Indian ambush, defeated, and killed. ii. 151.
Rogneda, wife of Vladimir the Great. viii. 30.
Rohan, Cardinal de, and the Diamond Necklace, vi. 271; acquitted. vi. 279.
Rojestvensky, Russian admiral, sails for Japanese waters, defeated and captured by Japanese under Togo. viii. 332.
Roland at Roncesvalles, vi. 40; legends of Roland, vi. 40; magic horn of. vi. 43.
Rolf, king of Gothland, woos Torborg of Ulleraker, ix. 10; scorn of Erik and Torborg, ix. 12; repulsed by

Torborg, ix. 13; comes second time, takes Torborg prisoner, and weds her. ix. 15.
Rolf the Walker, ix. 40; goes to France, and made ruler of Normandy, ix. 40; rules Normandy justly, ix. 41; ancestor of William the Conqueror. ix. 41.
Rolfe, John, Virginia planter, marries Pocahontas. ii. 39.
Rollo. See ROLF THE WALKER.
Rollo, viking, besieges Paris. v. 55.
Romanof, Michael, comes to Russian throne, and founds present dynasty. viii. 109.
Romantic Story of the Prince of Tezcuco. iii. 44.
Rome, entered by Italian army, vi. 340; capital of new kingdom of Italy, vi. 340; sacked by Constable Bourbon, vii. 188; first foreign war fought successfully against Pyrrhus, Greek champion of Tarentum, x. 324; conquest of Greece, destruction of Corinth, and capture of Athens, x. 345; How Rome was Founded, xi. 7; Sabine Virgins—ruse to obtain wives for the Romans, xi. 14; peace between Romans and Sabines, xi. 19; Horatii and Curatii, xi. 22; Numa Pompilius, wise reign, xi. 22; Sabines subjugated by Tullus Hostilius, xi. 22; dynasty of the Tarquins, xi. 26; Books of the Sibyl, xi. 32; story of Lucretia—shameful treatment of Lucretia, and exile of the Tarquins, xi. 36; consuls established, xi. 41; how brave Horatius kept the bridge—Tarquin and Porsenna repulsed, and peace made, xi. 43; battle of Lake Regillus—third incursion of Tarquin defeated, with miraculous aid of Castor and Pollux, retirement and death of Tarquin, xi. 50; revolt of the people—plebeians vs. patricians, and creation of tribunes, xi. 54; revenge of Coriolanus—incursion of Coriolanus and the Volscians stopped by pleadings of Volumnia, xi. 60; Cincinnatus and the Æquians, xi. 68; sacrifice of Virginia—contest between the plebeians and the patricians, rise and fall of the decemvirs, xi. 75; Camillus at the siege of Veii, xi. 87; Gauls at Rome—invasion by Gauls under Brennus, capital saved by quacking of sacred geese, victory of Romans under Camillus, xi. 94; rebuilding of Rome, xi. 102; Curtian Gulf—Curtius devotes himself to death to save Rome, xi. 105; origin of the families Torquatus and Corvus, xi. 107; anecdotes of the Latin and Samnite wars—defeat of Latins and Samnites; prowess and execution of T. Manlius; self-sacrifice of Publius Decius; exploits of L. Papirius

Cursor and Q. Fabius Rullianus, xi. 108; Caudine Forks—the Samnite wars, disastrous defeat of Roman army in the pass of Caudium, bad faith of the Romans, xi. 116; fate of Regulus—episodes in the first Punic war, xi. 126; Rome comes into conflict with Carthage, xi. 126; Roman navy instituted, xi. 128; wins great sea-fights, and invades Carthage under Regulus, xi. 128; early victories and defeated by Xanthippus, xi. 131; Regulus patriotically advises against peace, and dies in Carthage, xi. 133; Hannibal crosses the Alps, xi. 135; Sicily, Sardinia, and Corsica wrested from Carthage, xi. 135; how Hannibal fought and died—campaigns in Italy, worn out by Fabius, recalled to Carthage, defeated by Scipio at Zama, forced by Roman power to wander from place to place, and suicide at Libyssa, xi. 145; extension of Roman power in the East, xi. 149; Archimedes at the siege of Syracuse, xi. 152; fate of Carthage, xi. 158; Gracchi and their fall—Tiberius and Caius Gracchus expouse the cause of oppressed commons against the patricians, enactment of the Sempronian laws, the Gracchi killed by their enemies, xi. 165; first civil war in Rome, xi. 169; Jugurtha, the purchaser of Rome—buys the support of Rome in his usurpation of the Numidian throne, xi. 173; loses favor, defeated by Metellus, Marius, and Sulla, and dies in Roman prison, xi. 175; exile and revenge of Marius—jealousy between Marius and Sulla, flight of Marius, and outrages of his followers on his return, xi. 180; servile war, xi. 180; social war, xi. 181; death of Marius, xi. 190; proscription of Sulla—return of Sulla and slaughter of partisans of Marius, xi. 191; revolt of the gladiators—Spartacus heads the gladiators in futile fight for freedom, xi. 198; Cæsar and the pirates, xi. 204; pirates put down by Cæsar and Pompey, xi. 206; Cæsar and Pompey—rise of Cæsar in power, and defeat and death of Pompey, xi. 208; assassination of Cæsar—reforms instituted by Cæsar, his moderation, desire for a royal crown, jealousy of rivals, and assassination, xi. 218; subsequent events to accession of Octavius as first emperor, xi. 224; an imperial monster—crimes and death of Caligula, xi. 236; murder of an empress—Agrippina killed by Nero, her son, xi. 243; Boadicea, the heroine of Britain—revolt of Iceuians and other Britons against cruelty and

arrogance of Romans, defeated with great slaughter by Suetonius, xi. 250; Rome swept by flames—Nero harps over burning Rome, xi. 255; Rome rebuilt, xi. 259; persecution of the Christians, xi. 260; doom of Nero, xi. 262; sports of the amphitheatre, xi. 272; Colosseum, xi. 273; reign of a glutton—Vitellius succeeds Galba and Otho as Roman emperor, xi. 280; faithful Eponina—revolt of the Ligones under Sabinus, and wanderings, capture, and execution of Sabinus and Eponina, his wife, xi. 289; destruction of Pompeii, xi. 301; an imperial savage—violent career and death of Maximin, xi. 309; steady decline in Roman power, xi. 309; deeds of Constantine—embraces Christianity, and founds Constantinople as capital of empire, xi. 319; Goths cross the Danube—permitted to cross Danube, Goths spread all over Thrace and defeat Emperor Valens, xi. 325; downfall of Rome—falls before invasion of Goths and other barbarians, xi. 331; Augustulus, last emperor, dethroned, and Odoacer, barbarian chief, becomes king, xi. 340.

Romilda, grand duchess, treacherously yields Friuli to besieging Avars, v. 28; marries Cacan, Avar chief, and impaled alive. v. 28.

Romulus, born son of Silvia, xi. 8; suckled by she-wolf, xi. 8; becomes shepherd, xi. 9; death of Amulius, xi. 9; site of Rome fixed by divination, xi. 10; ceremonies of founding Rome, xi. 11; killing of Remus, xi. 13; capture of the Sabine virgins, xi. 14; Sabines become citizens of Rome, xi. 19; rules forty years, and mysterious disappearance, xi. 20; deified as Quirinus, xi. 21.

Roncesvalles. vi. 40.

Rooke, Colonel James, commander of British legion with Bolivar. iii. 222.

Rosamond, princess of the Gepidæ, captured and married by Alboin, Lombard king, v. 21; murders him in revenge for her father's death, v. 24; poisoned by second husband. v. 27.

Rossbach, battle of. v. 317.

Round Table given to Arthur by Leodegrance, with one hundred knights, xiii. 48; twenty-eight added by Merlin, xiii. 48; the Seat Perilous, xiii. 49; oath of knights of. xiii. 54.

Rowan, Captain, escape from Libby Prison. i. 305.

Royal and Diamond Jubilees of Queen Victoria. iv. 358.

Royal Oak. iv. 283.
Rubruquis, Friar, visits Tartars. viii. 241.
Rüdiger, Count, defends Vienna against Turkish siege. v. 277.
Rurik, Varangian chief, founder of Russian empire. viii. 15, ix. 67.
Russia, Ancient Scythians, viii. 5; Oleg the Varangian, viii. 14; early history, viii. 14; Novgorod a commercial center, viii. 14; Rurik and the Varangian dynasty found the Russian empire, viii. 15, ix. 67; revenge of Queen Olga—slaughter of Drevlians for death of King Igor, viii. 21; Vladimir the Great, viii. 29; Lawgiver of Russia—Emperor Yaroslaf the Wise, viii. 41; different forms of government in Russia, viii. 41; government of the mir, or communal village, viii. 42; laws promulgated by Yaroslaf, viii. 44; yoke of the Tartars, viii. 49; anarchy in Russia, viii. 50; invasion by Tartars under Genghis Khan, viii. 50, xii. 234; feats of Alexander Nevsky, viii. 53; Victory of the Don—Tartar power broken by Dmitri Donskoi, viii. 55; Ivan, the First of the Czars—overthrow of the Tartars, viii. 60; fall of Novgorod the Great—Novgorod and other free cities crushed by autocracy under Ivan III, viii. 64; czar the only autocrat of Europe, viii. 64; meaning of autocracy, viii. 64; causes of the autocracy, viii. 65; Ivan the Terrible, viii. 74; conquest of Siberia, viii. 80; Macbeth of Russia—Boris Godunof, murderer and usurper, viii. 85; Era of the Impostors—civil war in Russia, leading to accession of the Romanof dynasty, viii. 101; anarchy in Russia, viii. 108; Books of Ancestry—Theodore settles strife over precedence, viii. 110; boyhood of Peter the Great, viii. 114; a crusade against beards and cloaks—incidents in the reign of Peter the Great, viii. 142; other reforms, viii. 146; Mazeppa, the Cossack chief, viii. 149; a window open to Europe—founding of Saint Petersburg by Peter the Great, viii. 155; from the hovel to the throne—rise of Mentchikof, viii. 165; Catharine becomes wife of Peter, viii. 172; death of Peter, accession and death of Catharine, viii. 173; buffooneries of the Russian court—gross living in days of Peter the Great, viii. 174; how a woman dethroned a man—career of Catharine the Great, viii. 184; a struggle for a throne—Pugatchef, Cossack chief, pretender to the Russian throne, viii. 195; flight of the Kalmucks—migration

from Russia, viii. 202; Kosciusko and the fall of Poland, viii. 226; Suwarrow the Unconquerable, viii. 231; retreat of Napoleon's grand army—burning of Moscow, vi. 316, viii. 241; death-struggle of Poland, viii. 248; Schamyl the Hero of Circassia, viii. 258; charge of the Light Brigade, viii. 267; fall of Sebastopol, viii. 276; at the gates of Constantinople —campaign against Turkey in behalf of Balkan states, viii. 284; Nihilists and their work—death of Alexander II and Russian officials, viii. 293; advance of Russia in Asia, viii. 300; railroad in Turkestan—slaughter of Turkomans by Skobeleff, and building of Transcaspian Railroad, viii. 311; an escape from the mines of Siberia, viii. 319; the fight in the Sea of Japan—Russian fleet destroyed by Japanese, viii. 329; war with Japan, xii. 351; first war with Sweden, ix. 196; forts at Kexholm and Landscrona, ix. 196; prowess of Matts Kettilmundson, ix. 199; Swedes defeated, ix. 201; wars with Charles XII of Sweden. ix. 336.

Ruy Diaz, the Cid Campeador. vii. 81.

Ryons, King, defiance to Arthur, xiii. 45; harries Arthur's domains, xiii. 55; captured and delivered to Arthur by Balin and Balan. xiii. 66.

Sabine Virgins. xi. 14.

Sabines, become citizens of Rome, xi. 19; origin of the Samnites. xi. 116.

Sabinus. See JULIUS SABINUS.

Sachem, ruler of Northern Indians. ii. 77.

Sacred Band, warlike band of three hundred Theban youths, x. 261; at Leuctra. x. 265.

Sacred War—acts of the Amphictyonic Council lead to war with Phocis, to rifling the temple of Apollo at Delphi, and to the subjugation of Greece by Philip of Macedonia. x. 288.

Sacrifice of Virginia. xi. 75.

Sadok, preserves life of Alexander, xiv. 107; escapes King Mark's vengeance. xiv. 116.

Safere, adventure with Palamides, his brother, xiv. 90; adventure at the manor house. xiv. 92.

Sagramore, overthrown by Tristram. xiii. 311.

Saguntum, captured by Hannibal. xi. 137.

Saint Augustine, Florida, first landing of white men, ii. 10; only Spanish settlement on North American mainland, ii. 95; besieged by Oglethorpe, ii. 96; sacked by Davies, the buccaneer. vii. 268.

Saint Bartholomew's Day, vi. 188; death of Coligny. vi. 192.
Saint Leger, Lieutenant Colonel, failure of expedition against Fort Schuyler. i. 195.
Saint Petersburg, Russia, founded by Peter the Great. viii. 155.
Saint Pierre, M. de, French commander at Fort le Boeuf, reply to Dinwiddie's demand, i. 103; French and Indian war follows. i. 110.
Saint Simon's harbor, Georgia, invaded by Spanish fleet, ii. 95; abandoned by Oglethorpe. ii. 96.
Saint Vladimir. See VLADIMIR THE GREAT.
Sainte Ampoule, vial of heaven-sent ointment used in crowning the kings of France. vi. 287.
Salamis, captured by Solon, x. 69; glorious Grecian victory over Persians. x. 154.
Samarcand, Russians in, viii. 305; conquered by Genghis Khan. xii. 234.
Samnites, defeated by Romans, xi. 111; legend of their origin, xi. 116; their dominion, xi. 117; wars with Romans, xi. 118; defeat of Romans, and their bad faith, xi. 121; defeated by Sulla with great slaughter. xi. 192.
Samos, Greek island and city, birthplace of Pythagoras, x. 100; improved and beautified by Polycrates, x. 100; good fortune of Polycrates in conquests, x. 101; death of Polycrates and accession of Syloson with Persian aid, x. 108; massacre of men by Persians. x. 108.
Sampson, Admiral, at battle of Santiago. vii. 327.
Samurai, Japanese feudal vassals. xii. 95.
San Antonio, Mexico, taken by General Scott. iii. 299.
San Antonio de Bexar, Texas, site of the Alamo. ii. 218.
San Domingo, captured by Haytians under Toussaint L'Ouverture, iii. 211; taken by French. iii. 212.
San Jacinto, Texas, Houston defeats Santa Anna and frees Texas. ii. 226.
San Martin, José de, Chilian patriot, at battle of San Lorenzo, Argentina, iii. 247; crosses Andes and defeats Spanish at Santiago, iii. 248; disaster of Talca, iii. 250; with O'Higgins, defeats Spanish decisively at Maypo, iii. 252; conquers Peru from Spain. iii. 255.
San Salvador, discovery of by Columbus. iii. 7.
San Sebastian, Spanish settlement in South America. iii. 33.
Sancho, king of Castile, knights the Cid. vii. 84.

Sandoval, Gonzalo de, lieutenant of Cortez. iii. 63.
Sangreal, Quest of the Holy Grail—Book IX, xiv. 117; adventure of Lancelot at Listengeise, xiv. 118; adventures of Sir Bors at Listengeise, xiv. 119; heals Lancelot of madness, xiv. 127; Galahad and the Seat Perilous, xiv. 135; appears to Knights of the Round Table, xiv. 139; knights vow the quest of the Grail, xiv. 140; knights depart on the Quest, xiv. 141; Galahad wins the Perilous Shield, xiv. 145; temptation of Sir Percivale, xiv. 155; strange adventures of Sir Bors, xiv. 173; adventure of the magic ship, xiv. 195; Galahad achieves the sword with the strange girdle, xiv. 206; how Lancelot saw the Sangreal, xiv. 207; adventure of the sick lady, and death of Percivale's sister, xiv. 207; deeds of the Three Chosen Knights, xiv. 217; sacrament at the castle of Carbonek, xiv. 218; taken to Holy Land by Galahad, xiv. 221; heals cripple, xiv. 222; adventures of Galahad, Bors, and Percivale in Holy Land, xiv. 222; Galahad dies, and Sangreal taken to heaven. xiv. 224.
Santa Anna, president of Mexico, moves against Texas revolt, ii. 219; besieges and takes the Alamo, ii. 221; slaughters the garrison, ii. 223; slaughters garrison at Goliad, ii. 225; advances through Texas, ii. 226; defeated by Houston at San Jacinto, ii. 226; captured. ii. 229.
Santa Fé, New Mexico, occupied by Kearney's expedition. iii. 295.
Santander, General, with Bolivar in New Granada. iii. 218.
Santiago, Chili, founded by Valdivia, iii. 118; Spanish defeated by San Martin. iii. 248.
Santiago, Cuba, *Merrimac* sunk in harbor by Hobson. iii. 336.
Santo Domingo, Ojeda buried. iii. 22.
Sappho, Greek lyric poet. x. 362.
Saragossa, heroic defence by Spanish against French invaders, vii. 302; Joseph Palafox, commanding defence, vii. 303; Countess Burita, deeds of mercy and daring, vii. 305; surrender with honors. vii. 311.
Sardinia, Carthaginian colony, taken by Rome. xi. 135.
Sardis, capital of Lydia, greatness and splendor under Crœsus, x. 79; taken by Cyrus, Persian king, x. 82; taken and burned by Ionians. x. 124.
Sassacus, Federal ironclad, repulses *Albemarle*. i. 315.
Saxman, Lieutenant, Russian officer, enters Japan. xii. 114.

Saxo Grammaticus. ix. 174.
Scævola. See Caius Mucius.
Scandinavia, raids of the sea-rovers, v. 47; incursions of Hasting, a viking, in France and Italy, v. 48; fortunes of Wallenstein, v. 252; end of two great soldiers—death of Wallenstein and the Catholic cause, and of Gustavus Adolphus, v. 265; how King Rolf won his bride, ix. 9; Ragnar Lodbrok and his wives and sons, ix. 19; Harold Fair-Haired founds the kingdom of Norway, ix. 31; discontented nobles leave Norway for Iceland, Hebrides, Orkneys, etc., ix. 39; Gorm the Old, Denmark's first king, ix. 42; Rolf the Norseman, settles in Normandy, ix. 40; Danes plunder France, ix. 44; Germans harry Denmark, ix. 46; Erik Blood-Axe and Egil the Icelander, ix. 49; sea-kings and their daring feats, ix. 60; Haakon the Good and the sons of Gunhild, ix. 69; Earl Haakon and the Jomsvikings, ix. 78; how Olaf, the slave-boy, won the throne, ix. 89; Olaf dethrones Odin and dies a hero, ix. 98; Olaf the Saint and his work for Christ, ix. 108; Canute the Great, King of Six Nations, ix. 121; Magnus the Good and Harold Hard-ruler, ix. 132; Sverre, the cook's son, and the Birch-legs, ix. 145; friends and foes of a boy prince, ix. 160; Haakon, grandson of Sverre, ix. 160; King Valdemar I and Bishop Absolon, ix. 169; fortunes and misfortunes of Valdemar II, ix. 176; Dannebrog, tradition of, ix. 178; Birger Jarl and the conquest of Finland, ix. 186; first war between Sweden and Russia, ix. 196; crime and punishment of King Birger, ix. 202; Queen Margaret and the Calmar Union, ix. 211; Scandinavia united under Margaret, ix. 211; Norway held kingless by Denmark and Sweden under Calmar Union, ix. 216; how Sir Tord fought for Charles of Sweden, ix. 217; troublous times before accession of Charles VIII, ix. 217; Sweden frees herself from Denmark's rule, ix. 217; Sten Sture's great victory over the Danes, ix. 226; how the Ditmarshers kept their freedom, ix. 236; Sweden freed of Danish yoke, ix. 239; blood-bath of Stockholm, ix. 241; adventures of Gustavus Vasa, ix. 252; fall of Christian II, the tyrant, ix. 271; West Gothland insurrection, ix. 283; insurrection due to introduction of Lutheran religion, ix. 283; love affairs of King Erik, ix. 296; Gustavus Adolphus on the field of Leipsic, ix. 310; victory of Gustavus Adolphus at Leipsic

saves Protestantism, ix. 311; Charles X and the invasion of Sweden, ix. 319; Charles XII, the Firebrand of Sweden, ix. 326; reign of Charles XII loses Sweden her conquests and breaks absolute rule of kings, ix. 342; English invaders and the Danish fleet, ix. 343; Denmark loses Norway and Heligoland, ix. 348; a French soldier becomes King of Sweden and Norway, ix. 349; career of Bernadotte, ix. 349; Norway wrested from Denmark, ix. 356; Norway and Sweden united as independent kingdoms under one ruler, ix. 357; dismemberment of Denmark, ix. 358; breaking the bond between Norway and Sweden. ix. 362.

Schamyl, the hero of Circassia—leader of the Circassian tribes defies Russian troops for twenty-five years, viii. 258; defeated, pensioned by Russia, dies in Nicæa. viii. 266.

Schley, Commodore, at battle of Santiago. vii. 328.

Scipio, surnamed Africanus, conquers Spain from Carthage, and invades Africa, xi. 148; defeats Hannibal at Zama, xi. 148; dies. xi. 151.

Scotland, Wallace, the Hero of Scotland, iv. 136; Bruce at Bannockburn—Scotland freed from English rule, iv. 149; Hunting of Braemar, iv. 315; flight of Prince Charles, iv. 324; king of, defeated by Arthur. xiii. 28.

Scott, Lewis, buccaneer, sacks Campeachy. vii. 268.

Scott, Michael, astrologer, translates Aristotle's History of Animals. v. 126.

Scythia, unsuccessfully invaded by Darius. x. 117.

Scythians, invade Europe, vi. 7; sacrifices of, vi. 9; repulse Darius, Persian king, viii. 7; Herodotus, quoted, viii. 7; savage customs, viii. 7; relics of civilization, viii. 9; legends told by Herodotus. viii. 10.

Sea Fight in the Waters of Japan—destruction of Russian fleet by Japanese. viii. 329.

Sea Kings and Their Daring Feats. ix. 60. See Viking.

Seat Perilous. xiii. 47.

Sebastopol, captured by British and French and destroyed. viii. 276.

Secession, attitude of the Southern States. ii. 260.

Second Conquest of the Capital of Mexico. iii. 299.

Second Day of the Tournament. xiv. 70.

Segestus, traitorous German chief. v. 9.

Segwarides, Sir, adventure with Tristram and companions. xiv. 43.

Se-ling-she, Chinese queen, first makes use of silk. xii. 145.
Sempach and Arnold Winkelried—annihilation of Austrian army by Swiss, and heroism of Arnold Winkelried. v. 187.
Sempronian Laws. xi. 170.
Senlac, battle of. iv. 51.
Servile war, insurrection of Roman slaves. xi. 181.
Servius Tullius, legend of boyhood, xi. 27; succeeds Lucius Tarquinius (the elder), as king of Rome, xi. 28; dethroned and murdered. xi. 29.
Sesia, Italy, battle of, Bayard killed. vii. 183.
Sesuald, noble Lombard soldier, death. v. 33.
Seven against Thebes—stories of Œdipus and Antigone, and of the two sieges of Thebes. x. 41.
Seven Wise Men of Greece. x. 68.
Seven Years' War, scenes from. v. 315.
Sevier, John, at battle of King's Mountain. ii. 169.
Seward's Folly—purchase of Alaska. i. 327.
Sextus Tarquin, shameful treatment of Lucretia, xi. 38; slain. xi. 41.
Seymour, William, marries Lady Arabella Stuart, iv. 231; parted from her by James I and imprisoned, iv. 232; their flight, and Seymour's escape. iv. 234.
Shame-pole. ix. 55.
She King. See Book of Odes.
Shelby, Isaac, at battle of King's Mountain. ii. 169.
Shenandoah River, discovered by Governor Spotswood. ii. 93.
Sheppard, Colonel, commands defence of Fort Henry. i. 129.
Sherwood Forest. iv. 121.
Shibata, Japanese noble, insurrection against Hideyoshi, xii. 81; defeat and suicide. xii. 82.
Shipka Pass, taken by Radetzky in campaign against Turkey. viii. 287.
Shiraki. See Corea.
Shiuski, Vassili, leader in insurrection against Dmitri, viii. 97; ascends throne, harried by insurrections, and murdered. viii. 101.
Shoguns, military governors in Japan, instituted by Sujin, xii. 16; the Tai Kun (Tycoon), xii. 17; overshadow the mikados, xii. 36; quarrels of noble families, xii. 38; great power, xii. 59; Yoritomo, *the* Shogun, xii. 59; Iyeyasu fastens power of Tokugawa family on Japan, xii. 86; feudal system,

xii. 94; signing of treaty by Tai Kun arouses mikado and leads to fall of shoguns, xii. 134; forced to do homage to mikado, xii. 135; daimios released from residence at Yedo, xii. 135; office abolished. xii. 139.
Shoo King. See Book of History.
Shun, Chinese emperor, peaceful and prosperous rule. xii. 145.
Siaho, minister of Lieou Pang, Chinese emperor. xii. 174.
Sianyang, China, heroic defence against Kublai Khan, xii. 242; surrenders, xii. 248.
Siberia, early history, viii. 80; trading expeditions of the Stroganof family, viii. 80; Turkish kingdom in, viii. 81; conquests of Yermak and his Cossacks, viii. 81; subsequent explorations, viii. 83; present state, viii. 84; characteristics, viii. 301; Transsiberian Railway, viii. 317; an escape from the mines. ix. 319.
Sicilian Vespers. v. 137.
Sicily, defeats Greek invasion, x. 214; freed from oppression by Timoleon, x. 271; campaigns of Pyrrhus against Carthaginians, x. 331; Carthaginian colony, taken by Rome, xi. 135; siege of Syracuse by Romans, and services of Archimedes. xi. 152.
Sicyon, country of the Peloponnesus, dynasty of Orthagoras, x. 86; Cleisthenes, last of the dynasty, marries his daughter Agaristé to Megacles of Athens. x. 87.
Sidonia, plain of, site of Moorish victory over Spanish. vii. 26.
Siege of Belgrade. v. 210.
Siege of Calais. iv. 162.
Siege of Fort Schuyler. i. 195.
Siege of Jerusalem—Jerusalem captured from the Jews by the Romans under Titus, and destroyed. xi. 293.
Siege of Saragossa. vii. 302.
Siege of Sianyang—heroic defence against Kublai Khan. xii. 242.
Siege of Sinching—heroic defence by Changte. xii. 202.
Siege of Vienna. v. 277.
Sigismund, emperor of Germany, v. 181; burns John Huss, v. 182; repeatedly defeated by Hussites under John Ziska, v. 198; reinstates Catholicism after death of Ziska, v. 209; dies. v. 209.
Sigrid the Fair, wife of Bengt. ix. 192.
Sigvalde, Earl, chief of Jomsvikings, ix. 80; cowardice of, ix. 82; treachery to Olaf. ix. 102.

Silesia, gained for Prussia by Frederick the Great. v. 322.
Silk, culture introduced into Japan from Corea. xii. 35.
Silvia, mother of Romulus and Remus. xi. 8.
Simnel, Lambert, poses as the earl of Warwick, Plantagenet heir. iv. 196.
Simoda, Japan, opened to foreign commerce, xii. 131; superseded by Yokohama. xii. 131.
Simonides, Greek lyric poet. x. 362.
Sinking of the *Albemarle*. i. 314.
Sinon and the Trojan war. x. 7.
Sir Walter Raleigh and the Quest for El Dorado. iii. 139.
Sir William Phips and the Silver Ships. i. 53.
Siris, river of Italy, site of Pyrrhus's first victory over Romans. x. 328.
Sixty-Mile Creek, Alaska, gold find. i. 328.
Skagway, Alaska. i. 331.
Skobeleff, Russian general, leader of campaign against Turkey, viii. 285; breaks Turkoman power, viii. 311; nicknamed "Bloody Eyes." viii. 312.
Skrœlings, battle with vikings, i. 20; description. i. 24.
Skrzynecki, leader of Polish revolution, brilliant victories, viii. 251; inaction leads to defeat at Warsaw. viii. 255.
Slaghök, Didrik. ix. 273.
Slave-trade, ended by Congress. ii. 208.
Smith, Captain John, soldier of fortune, exploring Virginia, ii. 29; captured by Chickahominy Indians, ii. 32; adventures in wars with Turks, ii. 32; taken to chief Opechancanough, at Orapakes, ii. 33; taken to Powhatan, at Wesowocomoca, ii. 35; sentenced to die, ii. 37; saved by Pocahontas, ii. 38; doubt and evidence of story, ii. 38; attachment of Pocahontas. ii. 39.
Snorri Sturlasson, recorder of old Scandinavian myths. ix. 311.
Snorri Thorfinnson, first white child born in America, i. 23; ancestor of Thorwaldsen. i. 24.
Sobieski, king of Poland, saves Vienna from Turks. v. 282.
Social war, revolt of Italian allies of Rome. xi. 181.
Socialists make first international opposition to war. ix. 367.
Socrates and Alcibiades. x. 221.
Socrates, Greek philosopher, character and appearance, x. 222; friendship with Alcibiades, x. 223; methods

of teaching, x. 225; endurance of fatigue and privation, x. 226; Xanthippe, his shrewish wife, x. 226; daily life, x. 227; conversational powers, x. 227; teachings, x. 228; accused of impiety and sentenced to drink hemlock, x. 229; calm death, x. 230; place in Greek literature. x. 364.

Solon, the law-giver of Athens, x. 67; conquers at Salamis, x. 69; interview with Crœsus. x. 74.

Solyman the Magnificent at Guntz—defeated by Jurisitz, v. 229; dies in invading Hungary. v. 237.

Some Adventures of Major Putnam. i. 111.

"Song of Marion's Men" (Bryant). i. 235.

Sonnet, said to have been invented by Peter de Vincis. v. 127.

Sons of Liberty. ii. 333.

Sophia, sister and regent of Peter the Great, viii. 114; retires to convent. viii. 122.

Sophocles, Greek tragic poet. x. 363.

Sorata, Peru, captured and sacked by insurgent natives. iii. 193.

Sotof, Russian drunkard, made "Kniaz Papa" by Peter the Great. viii. 174.

South Carolina, threatened by British, ii. 166; harried by Cornwallis, ii. 166; cotton-gin invented by Eli Whitney, ii. 185; legislature grants Whitney $50,000. ii. 192.

South Sea. See Pacific Ocean.

Southern States, fiery enthusiasm on outbreak of Civil War, ii. 252, ii. 258; home-coming of Confederate veterans. ii. 345.

Spain's Greatest Victory at Sea—defeat Turks at Lepanto. vii. 224.

Spain, ceded land west of Mississippi River by France, ii. 149; cedes Florida to England, ii. 149; Charles I of England seeks hand of infanta Maria, iv. 248; good King Wamba, vii. 7; Greek king's daughter, vii. 13; enchanted palace, vii. 17; battle of the Guadalete—Moorish rule fixed on Spain, vii. 23; table of Solomon, vii. 30; story of Queen Exilona, vii. 40; Pelistes, the defender of Cordova, vii. 47; stratagem of Theodomir—Murcia becomes subject to Moorish rule, vii. 54; Cave of Covadonga—victory of Spanish under Pelayo starts reconquest of Spain, xii. 60; adventures of a fugitive prince—Abdurrahman, last scion of Ommeyades, flees from Abbassides, vii. 68; Abdurrahman lands in Spain, gains adherents, and makes

Spain an independent kingdom, vii. 72; Bernardo del Carpio—hero of Spanish cycle of legends, vii. 75; Ruy Diaz, the Cid Campeador, vii. 81; Las Navas de Tolosa—decisive defeat of Moors, vii. 96; Key of Granada—conquest of Alhama by Spanish, vii. 106; King Abul Hassan and the Alcaide of Gibraltar, vii. 115; rival kings of Granada—warfare between Boabdil and Abdallah, vii. 123; Knight of the Exploits—feats of Perez del Pulgar, vii. 132; last sigh of the Moor—surrender of Granada to Ferdinand, vii. 143; Moorish civilization in Spain, vii. 148; return of Columbus, vii. 151; Peter the Cruel and the Free Companies—invasion of Castile by French and English freebooters, vii. 156; Great Captain—Gonsalvo de Cordova, vii. 172; a king in captivity—Francis I of France captured by Spanish at Pavia, vii. 183; invasion of Africa—capture of Oran by Cardinal Ximenes, vii. 192; an emperor retired from business—abdication and retirement of Charles V, vii. 202; fate of a reckless prince—Carlos, son of Philip II, vii. 213; Spain's greatest victory at sea—defeat of Turks at Lepanto, vii. 224; Invincible Armada—Spanish invasion of England defeated and fleet destroyed, vii. 235; causes of Spain's decadence—dominions of Spain in "golden age," bad colonial policy, treatment of Jews and Moriscos, inquisition, vii. 246; last of a royal race—Aben-Aboo, last Ommeyade Moorish king, vii. 257; Morisco insurrection quelled, vii. 257; slaughter of Moorish hostages, vii. 260; death of Aben-Aboo, vii. 264; Henry Morgan and the buccaneers, vii. 266; Elizabeth Farnese and Alberoni, vii. 275; rock of Gibraltar, vii. 281; fall of a favorite—Emanuel Godoy, favorite of Charles IV, vii. 292; degradation of Spain in time of Napoleon, vii. 292; Spanish forts filled with French soldiers, vii. 294; attempted flight of king and queen, vii. 296; popular uprising and fall of Godoy, vii. 297; siege of Saragossa, vii. 302; hero of the Carlists—Tomas Zumalacarregui, vii. 313; Manila and Santiago—destruction of Spanish fleets and end of colonial power, vii. 322; cruel colonial policy. vii. 322.

Spanish invade Georgia, ii. 95; claims in North America, ii. 95; Saint Augustine only settlement of, ii. 95; attack Charleston, ii. 95; driven out of Georgia by Oglethorpe, ii. 97; lose Florida. ii. 103.

Spanish-America, "Isles of Beauty beyond the Seas"—discoveries of Columbus, iii. 7; Alonso de Ojeda and the Carib cacique, iii. 17; early days of a famous cavalier—Hernando Cortez, iii. 23; Balboa and the discovery of the Pacific, iii. 33; romantic story of the Prince of Tezcuco, iii. 44; famous retreat of Cortez and the Spaniards, iii. 58; Pizarro and the Inca's golden ransom, iii. 71; Gonzalo Pizarro and the Land of Cinnamon, iii. 86; Coronado and the Seven Cities of Cibola, iii. 97; faithful Miranda and the lovers of Argentina, iii. 109; Lantaro, the boy hero of the Araucanians, iii. 116; Drake, the sea-king, and the Spanish treasure-ships, iii. 127; Sir Walter Raleigh and the quest for El Dorado, iii. 139; Morgan, the freebooter, and the raid on Panama, iii. 151; a drama of plunder, murder, and revenge—Rio de Janeiro captured and sacked by French, iii. 163; wonderful march of the freebooters, iii. 173; cruelty of the Spaniards to the Indians, iii. 186; Cudjoe, the negro chief, and the maroons of Jamaica, iii. 195; Toussaint L'Ouverture and the revolution in Hayti, iii. 205; Bolivar the Liberator, and the conquest of New Granada, iii. 217; Hildalgo the patriot, and the Grito de Dolores, iii. 226; Paez, the Llanero chief, and the war for freedom, iii. 236; colony, empire, republic; revolution in Brazil, iii. 257; Francia the dictator, the Louis XI of Paraguay, iii. 269; Governor Tacon and Marti the smuggler, iii. 280; Kearney's daring expedition and the conquest of New Mexico, iii. 288; second conquest of the capital of Mexico, iii. 299; Maximilian of Austria and his empire in Mexico, iii. 316; Maceo and the struggle for Cuban independence, iii. 325; Lieutenant Hobson and the sinking of the *Merrimac*. iii. 336.

Sparta, city and state of ancient Greece, military régime instituted by Lycurgus, x. 50; contrasted with Athens, x. 50; Sparta of Lycurgus, x. 58; war with Messenia, and ultimate victory, x. 60; songs and advice of Tyrtæus, lame schoolmaster of Athens, bring victory, x. 66; leads Peloponnesian Confederacy, and makes war on Athens, x. 189; fails to take Platæa, x. 205; victory at Ægospotami, and imposes humiliating peace on Athens, x. 213; captures and holds Thebes through treachery, x. 247; defeated by seven exiled patriots, x. 249; defeated by Thebans

under Pelopidas and Epaminondas at Leuctra, invaded by Theban army, and deposed forever of military preëminence, x. 259; ravaged by Philip of Macedonia, but keeps independence, x. 295; repulses attack of Pyrrhus, x. 333; attack on Megalopolis repulsed, x. 337; at war with Achæan League, and defeated by Philopœmen, x. 340; driven from Messenia by Philopœmen, x. 341; joins Achæan League, x. 342; power broken, walls razed, and laws of Lycurgus abolished by Philopœmen. x. 342.

Spartacus, gladiator, heads gladiators in futile fight for freedom, xi. 198; defeated with great slaughter by Crassus, and killed. xi. 202.

Spartans, too late to aid Athenians at Marathon, x. 131; gallant defence of the pass of Thermopylæ against Xerxes's army. x. 144.

Speckbacher, Joseph, Tyrolese patriot, exploits against Bavarians, v. 330; flight after disbandment of patriot forces. v. 340.

Sphinx, riddle guessed by Œdipus, commits suicide. x. 42.

Sports of the Amphitheatre. xi. 272.

Spotswood, Alexander, governor of Virginia, early adventures, ii. 89; builds Williamsburg powder magazine, ii. 90; opens William and Mary College to Virginia Indians, ii. 90; builds iron furnaces, ii. 90; Tubal Cain of Virginia, ii. 90; explores country west of Blue Ridge Mountains, ii. 90; founds "Knights of the Golden Horseshoe," ii. 93; knighted. ii. 94.

"Spring and Autumn Annals," by Confucius. xii. 153.

Spurius Lartius, with Horatius in defence of bridge. xi. 45.

Stadion, Greek athletic theatre. x. 316.

Stamp Act, ii. 120; speech of Patrick Henry against, ii. 120; "If this be treason make the most of it." ii. 122.

Stauffacker, Werner, Swiss patriot. v. 149.

Stealing a Locomotive. i. 285.

Steele, Mrs., type of patriot women of South in the Revolution. ii. 178.

Sten Sture's Great Victory over the Danes. ix. 226.

Stephen, contest with Maud for crown of England, iv. 93; Maud defeated and fugitive. iv. 103.

Stilicho, Roman general, repulses Gothic invaders, xi. 332; slain by treachery. xi. 335.

Sting of the Viper. xiv. 323.

Stirling, Scotland, victory of William Wallace. iv. 143.

Stockholm, founded by Birger Jarl, ix. 195; surrendered by Albrecht to Queen Margaret, ix. 215; wholesale murder of Swedish patriots by Christian II of Denmark. xi. 241.
Story of Arabella Stuart. iv. 228.
Story of Queen Exilona. vii. 40.
Story of the Regicides. i. 69.
Story of the Sainte Ampoule. vi. 287.
Stralsund, Hanseatic city, successfully resists siege of Wallenstein. v. 259.
Stratagem of Theodomir. vii. 54.
Straw, Jack, heads insurrection in Kent. iv. 188.
Streight, Colonel Abel D., Federal cavalry leader, leads expedition to cut railroads, ii. 277; mounts force on mules, ii. 278; opposed by Forrest, ii. 279; presence betrayed by mules, ii. 280; attacked by Forrest, ii. 281; running fight with Forrest, ii. 282; surrender to Forrest, ii. 289; imprisoned in Libby, and escapes. ii. 290.
Strelitz, Russian militia formed by Ivan the Terrible, viii. 132; first insurrection, viii. 132; second insurrection put down with bloody severity by Peter the Great, viii. 135; abolished. viii. 147.
Stroganof, merchant family first carry commerce to Siberia. viii. 80.
Stuart's Famous Chambersburg Raid. iii. 261.
Stuart, General J. E. B., most famous Confederate cavalry leader, ii. 261; famous Chambersburg raid, ii. 261; invades Pennsylvania, captures horses and destroys munitions, ii. 262; A. K. McClure quoted on, ii. 266; recrosses Potomac. ii. 270.
Stuart, Lady Arabella, enmity of Queen Elizabeth and James I, iv. 228; marries William Seymour, iv. 231; husband and wife parted and imprisoned by the king, iv. 232; their flight, escape of Seymour, and recapture of Arabella, iv. 234; her death. iv. 239.
Sture, Nils, aids in defeating Christian I at Stockholm. ix. 229.
Sture, Sten, appointed administrator of Sweden, ix. 225; ability and noble qualities, ix. 226; acclaimed administrator and captain-general, ix. 227; Sweden invaded by Christian I of Denmark, ix. 227; defeats Christian at Stockholm, ix. 229; frees Sweden from rule of King Hans of Denmark. ix. 239.
Suetonius. See PAULINUS SUETONIUS.

Sugawara, Japanese noble family, rivalry against the Fujiwara, xii. 39; Sugawara Michizané, courtier and scholar, banished to Kiushiu by agency of Fujiwara, and starves, xii. 39; worshiped as patron deity of literature. xii. 39.
Suitors of Agaristé. x. 86.
Sujin, mikado of Japan, pestilence stayed by piety of, xii. 13; sacred mirror, sword, and ball removed to shrine of Uji, in Isé, xii. 13; reforms and civilization introduced, xii. 15; institution of shoguns, xii. 16; kingdom divided between sons by divination. xii. 17.
Sulla, with Marius, defeats invasion of Germans, xi. 180; jealousy of Marius, xi. 181; open break and Marius forced to flee, xi. 183; opposed by Cinna, sails to war against Mithridates, xi. 188; conquers, pillages Athens, and exacts enormous ransom from Asiatic cities, xi. 191; returns to Rome, defeats the Samnites with great slaughter, and proscribes all adherents of Marius, xi. 194; Julius Cæsar and Cicero saved from slaughter, xi. 196; organizes new senate and makes new code of laws, and retires from power, xi. 196; death and gorgeous funeral, xi. 197. See L. Cornelius Sulla.
Sumter, General, defeated by British, ii. 166; harries Cornwallis. ii. 167.
Sun, ruler of Natchez Indians. ii. 78.
Sund Fo, Chinese general, reduces Goorkhas to vassalage. xii. 302.
Susa, Persian capital, plundered by Alexander the Great. x. 303.
Suta, able Chinese general. xii. 265.
Suwarrow, Russian general, takes Warsaw from Kosciusko, viii. 229; early years and ambitions, viii. 231; loses favor with Emperor Paul, and dies, viii. 232; wars against the Turks, viii. 234; campaigns against French in Italy. viii. 238.
Suy-jin She, Chinese king, discovers fire. xii. 144.
Svanteveit, idol of the Baltic pagans. ix. 172.
Sverre, the Cook's Son, and the Birchlegs. ix. 145.
Sverre, son of King Sigurd Mouth and Gunhild, a cook, ix. 145; early days, ix. 145; claimant to throne of Norway, ix. 148; joined by malcontents, called "Birchlegs," ix. 149; six years of warfare for the throne, ix. 149; death of Magnus and accession of Sverre, ix. 158; reign, and death. ix. 158.
Sviatoslaf, Russian king. viii. 29.

Swamp-Fox. See MARION.
Sweden. See SCANDINAVIA.
Sweyn, son of Harold Bluetooth, ix. 121; story similar to that of William Tell, ix. 121; said to have killed his father, ix. 122; invades England, and dies, ix. 122; succeeded by Knud, or Canute, ix. 122; warfare with Magnus and Harold Hardruler over crown of Denmark, ix. 134; wins Denmark. ix. 141.
Sweyn, earl of Norway, defeated by Olaf. ix. 109.
Sweyn Forkbeard, king of Denmark, defeats Olaf. ix. 102.
Swiss at Morgarten. v. 170.
Switzerland, William Tell and the Swiss patriots, v. 148; gathering of patriots to overthrow Austrian power, v. 149; Austrians driven out, and Austrian emperor slain by conspirators, v. 159; government established, v. 161; Swiss at Morgarten—Austrians defeated, v. 170; annihilation of Austrian army under Duke Leopold, v. 187; heroism of Arnold Winkelried, v. 193; Tyrolean insurrection against Bavaria, v. 328; French invasion repulsed, v. 333; treaty of Vienna restores Tyrol to Bavaria, v. 338; dispersal of patriots, and death of Hofer, v. 339; defeats invasion of Charles the Bold. vi. 158.
Syloson, brother of Polycrates, exiled from Samos, but eventually becomes ruler. x. 100.
Symplegades, dangerous rocks in voyage of the Argonauts. x. 25.
Syracuse, resists attack of Greeks, x. 214; freed from oppression by Timoleon, x. 271; sieges, xi. 152; siege by Romans hampered through the genius of Archimedes. xi. 152.

T. Manlius, disobedience and execution. xi. 109.
Table of Solomon—legends and history. vii. 30.
Tachibana, wife of Yamato-Daké of Japan, appeases sea-god by suicide. xii. 22.
Tacon, Miguel, governor of Cuba, war against smugglers. iii. 280.
Tai Kun (Tycoon), Iyeyasu first bearer of title. xii. 96. See SHOGUNS.
Taillefer, Norman minstrel, at Senlac. iv. 55.
Tai-Ping rebellion, xii. 325; starts as native Christian movement, xii. 325; takes on political character, xii. 325; success of Tai-Ping armies, xii. 327; put down by Chinese with foreign aid, xii. 328; Chinese Gordon. xii. 328.

Taira, noble Japanese family, xii. 40; rivalry of the Minamoto family, xii. 40; Kiyomori, great leader, feats of boyhood, xii. 41; deposes Fujiwara family and gains control of state, xii. 42; exterminates Minamoto family except Yoritomo and Yoshitsunê, xii. 44; insurrection against Kiyomori, xii. 47; death of Kiyomori, and ascendancy of Yoritomo, xii. 50; slaughtered and power finally broken in battle in Shimonoseki Straits, xii. 55; survivors in Kiushiu. xii. 57.

Taitsong, Chinese emperor, founder of Tang dynasty, xii. 217; Lichimin, personal name, xii. 218; conquers foes of China, xii. 218; triumph, xii. 219; ascends throne, xii. 220; organizes army, xii. 220; subdues Tartars and Thibet, xii. 221; unsuccessful invasion of Corea, xii. 222; founds imperial library and college, xii. 222; writes "Golden Mirror," work on art of government, xii. 222; dies. xii. 222.

Takenouchi, prime minister of Japan. xii. 12.

Taking of Pontefract Castle. iv. 262.

Talos, brazen sentinel of Crete, destroyed by Medea. x. 29.

Tamerlane, conquests in Asia, xii. 268; dies. xii. 269.

Tametomo, legendary archer of Japan. xii. 43.

Tampa Bay, Florida, De Soto lands. ii. 14.

Tanacharison. See HALF KING.

Tancred, crusade leader. vi. 75.

Tannaquil, queen of Lucius Tarquinius (the elder). xi. 26.

Tapac-Amaru, chief of insurgent Peruvian natives, iii. 191; executed by Spanish. iii. 192.

Tarentum, attacked by Romans, and aided by Pyrrhus, x. 325; frivolity and supineness. x. 327.

Tarfe, daring Moorish knight, slain in single combat by Garcilasso de la Vega. vii. 140.

Tarik el Tuerto, leader of Moorish invaders in Spain, vii. 25; conquers Toledo and spreads power through Spain, vii. 31; jealousy of Musa, vii. 32; proof of the Table of Solomon. vii. 36.

Tarleton, British partisan leader, defeated by Marion, i. 229; defeated by Morgan at Cowpens, ii. 179; wounded. ii. 179.

Tarpeia and the Tarpeian Rock. xi. 17.

Tarquin the Proud. See LUCIUS TARQUINIUS (the younger).

Tarquins, Roman dynasty, origin, xi. 26; last kings of Rome. xi. 31.

Tartars, origin and character, viii. 49; conquests in Asia under Genghis Khan, viii. 50; invade and conquer Russia, viii. 50; stopped by German knights, viii. 51; stern hand over Russia, viii. 52; disintegration of the Tartars, viii. 52; defeated by Dmitri Donskoi, viii. 55; overthrown by allies of Russia, viii. 60; Tartar invasion of Japan, xii. 67; defeated by Hoangti, first emperor of China, xii. 157; invade China and wrest shameful peace from Kaotsou, xii. 177; invaded by Vouti, Chinese emperor, xii. 186; incursions stopped by Panchow, xii. 198; Genghis Khan, xii. 228; early history of the Tartars, xii. 228; invasion of China, xii. 229; conquests throughout the civilized world, xii. 230; birth of Temujin, afterward Genghis Khan, xii. 231; career of Genghis Khan, xii. 232; cruel wars, xii. 233; death, xii. 235; visits of Christian missionaries, xii. 236; investment of a khan, xii. 239; driven out of China by Choo Yuen Yang, xii. 264; rise of the Manchus. xii. 272. See also MANCHUS.

Tatara, wife of Jimmu, first mikado of Japan. xii. 10.

Tatius, Sabine king of Rome, killed. xi. 19.

Taulard, giant, slain by Marhaus. xiii. 135.

Tauleas, killed by Tristram. xiii. 297.

Tecumseh, Indian chief, incites Indians to side with British. ii. 194.

Telegraph, electric, invention by Samuel F. B. Morse, i. 259; difficulty in interesting capital, i. 263; Congress votes money for experimental line, i. 265; Cornell's pipe-laying machine, i. 268; failure of underground wires, i. 270; Cornell's insulator, and success of overhead line, i. 271; transmits news of Henry Clay's nomination, i. 273; "What hath God wrought!" i. 273.

Telemachus, son of Ulysses. x. 20.

Telemachus, monk, stops gladiatorial combats. xi. 333.

Temple of the Jews, burned in destruction of Jerusalem by Romans. xi. 299.

Temptation of Sir Percivale. xiv. 155.

Temujin. See GENGHIS KHAN.

Tennessee, first American republic founded in, ii. 133; patriots of at King's Mountain. ii. 166.

Terrail, Pierre du, Chevalier de Bayard. See BAYARD.

Tetbold. See THIBAUD.

Tetzel, seller of indulgences. v. 221.

Teutgaud, kills Gaudri, bishop of Laon. vi. 90.

Texas, revolt against Mexico, ii. 218; invaded by Santa Anna, ii. 219; battle of the Alamo, ii. 221; garrison at Goliad slaughtered by Mexicans, ii. 225; freed from Mexican rule by Houston's victory at San Jacinto, ii. 226; becomes republic. ii. 230.
Thambarkskelver, great bowman. ix. 102.
Thebes, twice besieged by Argive chieftains, and finally defeated; saved from the Sphinx by Œdipus, x. 41; three times besieged by Athens, and finally defeated, x. 43; defeated by Theseus, x. 48; Thebans flee to Illyria, x. 49; cowardice at Thermopylæ, x. 151; friendly to Persians at Platæa, x. 167; punished by victorious Greeks, x. 173; ally of Sparta in Peloponnesian war, x. 205; early history, x. 245; ally of Athens, x. 247; captured and held by Sparta, x. 247; freed by seven exiled patriots, x. 250; defeats Sparta at Leuctra, x. 259; with Arcadian allies, invades Sparta, x. 267; builds Megalopolis, x. 269; restores Messenia, x. 269; revolt against Alexander the Great, punished with total destruction. x. 295.
Themistocles, general of Greek army at Marathon, x. 130; Greek leader against invasion of Persians under Xerxes, x. 144; voted the preserver of Greece at Salamis, x. 166; ambition and studious habits, x. 181; services in putting Greece into condition to withstand Persia, x. 181; ruined by ambition and forced to flee to Persia, x. 182; dies in Magnesia. x. 183.
Theocritus, Sicilian lyric poet. x. 365.
Theodomir, Gothic king of Murcia, defeated at Lorca, vii. 54; stratagem to force favorable terms of surrender, vii. 56; Murcia flourishes under mild tribute. vii. 59.
Theodoric, Visigoth king, battle with Attila, vi. 11; slain at Châlons. vii. 16.
Theodosius, Roman emperor. xi. 331.
Theophrastus, Greek philosopher. x. 365.
Thermopylæ, Grecian pass, gallantly defended by Leonidas and the Spartans against Xerxes's army. x. 144.
Thersander, king of Thebes. x. 49.
Theseus and the search for the Golden Fleece. x. 23.
Theseus and Ariadne. x. 33.
Theseus, Greek hero, exploits, x. 34; helped by Ariadne, kills the Minotaur and escapes from Cretan labyrinth, x. 35; false to Ariadne, x. 37; political history, x. 39; sacred ship of, x. 39; defeats Thebans. x. 48.

Thesium, Athenian monument over reputed bones of Theseus, and sanctuary. x. 40.
Thespians, services at Thermopylæ. x. 152.
Thetis, mother of Achilles. x. 9.
Thibaud, buys countship from Hasting, and ancestor of counts of Chartres. v. 56.
Thibet, subdued by Chinese emperor Taitsong the Great, xii. 222; conquered for Chinese empire by Keen Lung, xii. 299; unsuccessful invasion by Goorkhas. xii. 300.
Thirty Years' War—fortunes of Wallenstein, v. 252; end of two great soldiers, v. 265; treaty at Lübeck, v. 260; battle of Leipsic. ix. 316.
Thorfinn, marries Gudrid, widow of Thorstein, i. 23; stays in Vineland, i. 23; birth of Snorri Thorfinnson, i. 23; ancestor of Thorwaldsen, i. 24; returns to Greenland. i. 24.
Thorgisl, viking exploits in Ireland. ix. 64.
Thorold, foster-father of Aastrid, protects her and Olaf, ix. 89; killed by vikings. ix. 92.
Thorolf Rafnista, joins Harold Fair-haired, ix. 36; jealousy of Harold, ix. 37; attacked by Harold and dies. ix. 38.
Thorolf, son of Bald Grim, friend of Erik Blood-Axe, ix. 52; slain in England. ix. 55.
Thorstein, voyage of discovery, and death. i. 23.
Thorvald, winters at Vineland, and explores south, i. 19; stranded at Kial-ar-ness, i. 20; slaughter of the Skrœlings, i. 21; attacked by Skrœlings, and Thorvald killed, i. 22; death of Thorvald, and burial at Krossanes. i. 22.
Thorwaldsen, descendant of Snorri Thorfinnson. i. 24.
Three Notable Women—Mongchi, defender of Chanyang; Houchi, queen of Wei; and Lieouchi, defender of Tsetong, xii. 212.
Thrilling Adventure of Captain John Smith. ii. 29.
Thucydides, Greek historian. x. 364.
Thuringia, Anabaptist revolt. v. 244.
Thusnelda, daughter of Segestus, marries Hermann, v. 9; captured by Romans, v. 14; folk stories about her. v. 15.
Thyra, wise queen of Lejre, rules in Gorm's absence, ix. 46; builds Dannevirke, wall against German attack, ix. 46; favors the Christians, ix. 46; reveals death of Knud. ix. 48.

Thyra, wife of Olaf, ix. 101; death of Olaf and Thyra. ix. 107.
Tiberius Gracchus. See GRACCHI AND THEIR FALL.
Tigellinus, instigates revolt against Nero. xi. 263.
Tilly, Catholic general in Thirty Years' War, defeated by Count Mansfeld, v. 255; routs Protestant army of Christian IV of Denmark, v. 256; storms and sacks Magdeburg, v. 266, ix. 311; defeated by Gustavus Adolphus at Leipsic, ix. 311; defeated and wounded on the Lech, ix. 318; and dies. v. 267.
Timoleon, the favorite of fortune, x. 271; kills Timophanes, his brother, for treason, x. 271; grief, x. 273; leads expedition in aid of Sicilian Greeks, and by a series of marvelous victories drives out Carthaginians, x. 275; lays down power and resides in Syracuse as private citizen, x. 286; affection and trust of the people, x. 286; mourning at his death. x. 287.
Timophanes, brother of Timoleon, usurps power at Corinth, and slain by Timoleon. x. 271.
Timour. See TAMERLANE.
Titus Herminius, with Horatius in defence of bridge, xi. 45; at battle of Lake Regillus. xi. 51.
Tlascalans, Mexican tribe, enemies of the Aztecs and allies of Spaniards. iii. 58.
Togo, Japanese admiral, defeats and destroys Russian fleet in Sea of Japan. viii. 329.
Tokimasa, first Hojo of Japan. xii. 60.
Tokio, new name of Yedo. xii. 141.
Tokiwa, wife of Yoshitomo and mother of Yoshitsuné, the Japanèse Bayard, xii. 51; hardships in flight after death of Yoshitomo, xii. 51; wins mercy from Kiyomori. xii. 52.
Tokugawa, Japanese noble family, hereditary Tai Kuns (Tycoons), descended from Iyeyasu, xii. 86; downfall. xii. 135.
Toledo, Spain, beautified by Gothic king Wamba, vii. 10; legend of enchanted palace. vii. 17.
Tor, son of Pellinore, knighted by Arthur, xiii. 50; adventure of the knight and the brachet. xiii. 53.
Tora, daughter of Jarl Herröd, beauty and virtue, ix. 19; magic snake, ix. 19; Tora's hand and dower offered to the destroyer of the snake, ix. 20; Ragnar kills the snake, and weds Tora, ix. 20; dies, ix. 22; Eric and Agnar, their sons, ix. 22; sorrow of Ragnar. ix. 23.

Torborg, daughter of King Erik of Sweden, ix. 9; excels in warlike deeds, ix. 9; rules a province as King Torborg, ix. 9; King Rolf of Gothland comes wooing, ix. 11; scorn of Erik and Torborg, ix. 12; Rolf repulsed, ix. 14; prepares for attack, ix. 14; Rolf again attacks and takes Torborg prisoner, and weds her. ix. 15.
Torfrida, wife of Hereward the Wake. iv. 63.
Torismond, son of Theodoric, valor at Châlons. vi. 15.
Torpedo, the American Turtle. i. 181.
Torquatus, Roman family, origin. xi. 107.
Torriano, watchmaker to Charles V. vii. 211.
Tostig, invades England, and killed at Stamford Bridge. ix. 141.
Toula, Russian city, heroic resistance against siege by Shiuski, viii. 103; drowned out. viii. 103.
Tournament at Lonazep. xiv. 55.
Tours, France, taken by Hasting, a viking, v. 48; miraculously saved. ix. 64.
Toussaint L'Ouverture and the Revolution in Hayti. iii. 205.
Trafalgar and the Death of Nelson. iv. 339.
Transcaspian Railroad, built by Russians. viii. 313.
Transsiberian Railway. viii. 317.
Trapping of the Lion. xiv. 280.
Traveller, General Lee's horse. ii. 345.
Travis, Colonel W. B., commander in the Alamo, ii. 219; letter asking aid, ii. 219; letter before battle of the Alamo, ii. 221; killed in the Alamo. ii. 223.
Treachery of King Mark. xiv. 9.
Treason of Morgan le Fay. Book III, xiii. 94.
Treasury notes, first issued by New England. i. 67.
Treves, Germany, taken by vikings. v. 52.
Tribunal of the Holy Vehm. v. 138.
Tribunes, first appointed in Rome. xi. 54.
Trinidad, settled by Spanish. iii. 140.
Tristram, the sorrow of his birth, xiii. 238; escapes poisoning by his stepmother, xii. 238; saves her from punishment, xiii. 240; education and accomplishments, xiii. 240; champion of King Mark of Cornwall, xiii. 243; defeats Marhaus, champion of King Anguish of Ireland, xiii. 246; sails for Ireland for cure of his desperate wound, xiii. 248; in love with Isolde, daughter of Anguish, xiii. 250; Palamides, his rival, xiii. 250; defeats Palamides in tourney, xiii. 252; loved by Isolde, xiii. 254; parted by anger of

the queen at death of Marhaus, xiii. 255; troth-plight with Isolde, xiii. 257; wager of battle, xiii. 258; returns to court of Cornwall, xiii. 258; jealousy and envy of King Mark, xiii. 259; sent to Ireland, xiii. 259; lands at Camelot, xiii. 260; adventure with Morganor and Hector de Maris, xiii. 260; champions King Anguish against Blamor de Ganis, xiii. 261; defeats Blamor, xiii. 264; peace between Tristram and kin of Lancelot, xiii. 267; sails for Ireland with King Anguish, xiii. 267; welcomed by queen and Isolde, xiii. 267; draught of love, xiii. 267; takes Isolde to marry King Mark, xiii. 267; they drink the love-draught intended for King Mark, xiii. 269; their passionate love, xiii. 270; adventure at the castle of Pleure, xiii. 271; death of Breunor, lord of the castle, xiii. 272; attacked by Sir Galahad, son of Breunor, xiii. 272; pledged to go to Lancelot, xiii. 273; Isolde wedded to King Mark, xiii. 274; perils of true love, xiii. 275; rescues Isolde from Palamides, xiii. 280; beset by secret enemies, xiii. 281; jealousy of King Mark, xiii. 281; adventure with Sir Lamorak de Galis, xiii. 283; the magic drinking horn, xiii. 284; beset in ambush, xiii. 286; leap from the cliff, xiii. 288; sails to Brittany, xiii. 289; cured of his wounds by Isolde la Blanche Mains, xiii. 289; fights in the wars of King Howell of Brittany, xiii. 289; madness of Sir Tristram, xiii. 289; letters from Isolde, xiii. 289; returns to Cornwall, xiii. 290; meeting with Isolde, xiii. 290; jealousy of Kehydius, xiii. 291; leaves Tintagil, xiii. 293; overthrows Gingalen, xiii. 293; falls into madness, xiii. 294; adventure with Dagonet the jester, xiii. 296; treachery of Andred, xiii. 297; rescues Sir Dinant from Taulleas, the giant, xiii. 298; found by King Mark, xiii. 300; banished from Cornwall, xiii. 302; goes to Camelot with Sir Dinadan, xiii. 302; how Tristram came to Camelot—Book VII, xiii. 304; Tristram and Dinadan, xiii. 304; adventure with Hector, Bors, Bleoberis, and Dinant, xiii. 304; rescue Lancelot, xiii. 305; adventure at the castle, xiii. 307; adventure with Palamides and Gaheris, xiii. 308; adventure with Pellinore, xiii. 310; bidden to tourney on part of king of Northgalis, xiii. 311; overthrows Kay and Sagramore, xiii. 311; on the road to the tournament, xiii. 312; trickery of Morgan le Fay, xiii. 312;

adventure with Breuse Sans Pité, xiii. 314; letters from Isolde, xiii. 315; overthrown by trickery of Palamides, xiii. 318; at the Castle of Maidens, xiii. 322; overthrows many knights at the tournament, xiii. 323; overthrows Palamides, xiii. 331; overthrows Arthur, xiii. 331; unhorsed by Arthur and beset by Palamides, xiii. 331; wounded by Lancelot, xiii. 333; adjudged hero of the lists, xiii. 334; quest of the Ten Knights, xiii. 335; again overthrows Palamides, xiii. 335; quested by Lancelot and nine knights, xiii. 337; overthrows Lucan and Uwaine, questing knights, xiii. 338; thrown with Dinadan and Palamides into dungeon by Darras, xiii. 339; sick to death, xiii. 339; released with Dinadan and Palamides by Darras, xiii. 345; knight with the covered shield, xiii. 345; parts from Dinadan and Palamides, xiii. 345; bears shield of Morgan le Fay at the tournament of Roche-dure, xiii. 346; overthrows Sir Hemison, xiii. 347; prowess at Roche-dure, xiii. 348; overthrows Arthur and Uwaine, xiii. 350; quest of Lancelot, xiii. 350; saves Palamides from Breuse Sans Pité, xiii. 351; overthrown by Lancelot, xiii. 353; equal combat with Lancelot, xiii. 356; they swear brotherhood and ride to Camelot, xiii. 357; welcomed in Camelot, xiii. 358; made Knight of the Round Table, xiii. 360; Tristram and Isolde at Joyous Gard—Book VIII, xiv. 9; treachery of King Mark, xiv. 9; jealousy of King Mark and love of Isolde, xiv. 9; accord with King Mark, xiv. 11; back to Cornwall with King Mark, xiv. 16; repulses Mark's enemies, xiv. 18; wounded, prisoner, and rescued by Sir Percivale, xiv. 19; flees with Isolde, xiv. 21; together at Joyous Gard, xiv. 22; how Tristram befooled Dinadan, xiv. 23; founder of hunting calls, xiv. 23; adventure with Sir Dinadan, xiv. 24; adventure with Agravaine and Gaheris, xiv. 28; second adventure with Dinadan, xiv. 32; adventure and accord with Palamides, xiv. 33; on the road to Lonazep, xiv. 36; adventure of the dead knight Hermance, xiv. 39; overthrows Berrant le Apres and Sir Segwarides, xiv. 43; how Palamides fared at the Red City, xiv. 46; tournament at Lonazep, xiv. 55; prowess at tournament of Lonazep, xiv. 63; unhorsed by Lancelot, xiv. 64; unhorses King Arthur, xiv. 65; second day of the tournament, xiv. 70; adventure with

Arthur, xiv. 71; prowess in tournament, xiv. 74; opposed by Palamides and Lancelot, xiv. 76; victor of the day, xiv. 78; rebuke to Palamides, xiv. 79; woes of two lovers, xiv. 83; prowess on third day of tournament, xiv. 83; jealousy of Palamides, xiv. 86; entertainment at Joyous Gard, xiv. 86; rivalry of Tristram and Palamides, xiv. 92; anger at Palamides's love for Isolde, xiv. 97; vanquishes Palamides, xiv. 102; accord with Palamides, xiv. 105; peace made with King Mark, xiv. 115; murdered by Mark, xiv. 115; Isolde dies of love for Tristram. xiv. 116.

Triumph, first, xi. 24; description. xi. 278.

Triumvirate. xi. 209, xi. 225.

Trocha, Spanish fortification in Cuba. iii. 331.

Trojan horse. x. 17.

Trojan war, summary of first nine years, x. 7; last year and taking of Troy. x. 12.

Troy, besieged and taken by the Greeks. x. 7.

Trucksess, George, of Waldburg, stamps out Anabaptist revolt in Southern Germany. v. 242.

Tryon, governor of North Carolina, ii. 124; Great Wolf, ii. 124; extortion by, ii. 124; rebellion against, ii. 125; regulators organized, ii. 125; persecution of Herman Husbands, ii. 125; riot act of, ii. 127; invades Orange County, ii. 129; wins battle of the Alamance, ii. 131; vengeance on rebels, ii. 131; appointed governor of New York. ii. 132.

Tsin, first Chinese dynasty, xii. 156; death of Hoangti and extinction of dynasty, xii. 171; dynasty founded. xii. 202.

Tubal Cain of Virginia. ii. 90.

Tullia, daughter of Servius Tullius, murders her husband, and marries Lucius Tarquinius (the younger), xi. 29; exiled from Rome. xi. 31.

Tullus Hostilius, warlike king of Roma, subjugates Albans. xi. 22.

Turkestan, comes under Russian rule, viii. 304; ruthless slaughter of Turkomans by Skobeleff, and building of the Transcaspian Railroad, viii. 311; conquered for China by Panchow. xii. 199.

Turkey, conquests in Europe, v. 229; stopped at Guntz, v. 232; savage repression of Balkan states, viii. 284; invaded by Russia and Constantinople taken. viii. 285.

Turkomans, power broken by Skobeleff. viii. 311.

Turks, besiege Belgrade, repulsed by Hunyades and Capistrano, v. 210; besiege Vienna, repulsed by Sobieski, v. 282; defeated at Mohacz and driven from Hungary, and at Belgrade and Zeuta, v. 287; decisively defeated by fleet of Spain and allies at Lepanto, vii. 224; kingdom in Siberia. viii. 80.
Turquine, Sir, overthrows Lionel and Hector, xiii. 139; slain by Lancelot. xiii. 153.
Tver, Russia, harried by Ivan the Terrible. viii. 77.
Tycoon. See Shoguns.
Tyler, Wat, heads Kentish insurrectionists, iv. 188; march on London, iv. 189; charters of reform promised by King Edward, iv. 192; Tyler killed by William Walworth, lord mayor, iv. 193; insurrection suppressed. iv. 194.
Tyrant, Greek ruler. x. 86.
Tyrants of Corinth. x. 93.
Tyrol, in revolt against Bavarians. v. 328.
Tyrker, follower of Leif, discovers grapes in Vineland. vi. 118.
Tyrrel, Sir Walter, and the death of William Rufus, iv. 79; pilgrimage to Palestine, and peaceful death. iv. 83.
Tyrtæus, lame schoolmaster of Athens, by his songs inspires Sparta to victory over Messenians. x. 66, x. 362.

Ubbo, Danish chief, invades Wales, iv. 28; defeated and slain by Odun. iv. 29.
Uji, in Isé, Japan, resting place of the sacred mirror, sword, and ball. xii. 14.
Ulf, killed by Canute. ix. 128.
Ulleraker, King Torborg of. ix. 9.
Ulrich, count of Linzgau, legend. v. 63.
Uluch Ali, dey of Algiers, Turkish commander at battle of Lepanto. vii. 227.
Ulysses and the Trojan war, x. 7; wanderings chronicled in the Odyssey. x. 20.
Upsala, King Erik of. ix. 9.
Urban II, pope, preaches crusades. vi. 71.
Uriens, husband of Morgan le Fay, xiii. 94; on the enchanted ship, xiii. 94; Morgan le Fay tries to kill, xiii. 110; saved by Uwaine. xiii. 113.
Usbek, Tartar khan. ix. 54.
Uther Pendragon, xiii. 9; reign and death, xiii. 19; father of Arthur. xiii. 36.

Uwaine, banished from Arthur's court, xiii. 119; country of strange adventures, xiii. 120; adventure with Sir Marhaus, xiii. 122; chooses eldest damsel and parts from Gawaine and Marhaus, xiii. 125; champions the Lady of the Rock, overthrows Sir Edward and Sir Hue of the Red Castle, xiii. 135; returns to Camelot, xiii. 136; overthrows Andred and Dinus, xiii. 340; ambushed by King Mark, and saved by Kay, xiii. 341; overthrown by Tristram, xiii. 350; slain by Gawaine. xiv. 156.

Vagn Aakesson, Jomsviking, heroic fight against Haakon, and kills Thorkill. ix. 82.

Valdemar I, king of Denmark, ix. 169; wretched state of kingdom, ix. 169; conquers Baltic pagans, ix. 170; dies, ix. 173; succeeded by Knud, his son. ix. 173.

Valdemar II, victory and prosperity of early years, ix. 176; Margrete, first wife, ix. 176; Berengaria, second wife, ix. 176; victory over Knights of the Sword, and over the Esthonians, ix. 177; tradition of the Dannebrog, ix. 178; captured and imprisoned by Black Henry and other German princes, ix. 179; released, ix. 183; defeated in Ditmarsh, ix. 184; peace of later years, ix. 185; good laws of Valdemar, ix. 185; warfare with Birger, his brother, king of Sweden, ix. 202.

Valdivia, Pedro de, expeditions against the Araucanians, iii. 117; killed. iii. 121.

Valencia, Spain, captured from Moors by the Cid. vii. 89.

Valens, Roman emperor, permits Goths to cross Danube, xi. 325; they spread over Italy, xi. 327; they defeat and kill Valens. xi. 329.

Valeria, Roman matron, wit saves Rome from Coriolanus and Volscians, xi. 65; first priestess of temple to "Woman's Fortune." xi. 67.

Vandals, sack Rome. xi. 339.

Vane, Sir Harry, and the Parliament. iv. 299.

Varangian Guard, ix. 67; conquer Sicily. ix. 68.

Varangians, dynasty extinct with Feodor, son of Ivan the Terrible. See OLEG THE VARANGIAN, RUSSIA.

Vargas, Pedro de, governor of Gibraltar, attacks Muley Abul Hassan. vii. 116.

Varro, Roman popular leader, made consul, leads army against Hannibal, and crushingly defeated. xi. 146.

Varus, fatal invasion of Germany, v. 7; "Varus, give me back my legions." v. 13.

Vatel, cook of the Prince of Condé, suicide. vi. 251.
Vega, Garcilasso de la, Spanish knight, slays Tarfe the Moslem in single combat. vii. 140.
Vehmgericht. v. 138.
Veii, taken by Romans under Camillus, xi. 87; dismantled to give material for rebuilding Rome. xi. 103.
Velasquez, Diego, governor of Cuba, quarrels with Cortez, iii. 25; sends Cortez to explore Yucatan. iii. 29.
Venezuela, unsuccessful war of Bolivar against Spanish, iii. 217; Paez, the Llanero chief, and the war for freedom, iii. 236; Carthagena, Maracaibo, and Porto Cabello surrendered by Spanish. iii. 246.
Vengeance of Queen Olga—for murder of Igor, Russian king. viii. 21.
Veniero, commander of Venetian ships at battle of Lepanto. vii. 226.
Venus, favored by Paris, promises him Helen of Troy for wife. x. 8.
Vera Cruz, Mexico, General Scott's expedition lands. iii. 299.
Vermont, Green Mountain Boys, i. 172; drives out settlers from New York, i. 173; declares independence of New York, i. 179; admitted as separate state. i. 179.
Vespasian, defeats Vitellius and becomes Roman emperor, xi. 285; besieges Jerusalem. xi. 294.
Vespucci, Amerigo, first voyage to America. iii. 22.
Vicksburg, invested by General Grant, ii. 302; Federal lines penetrated by Lamar Fontain, scout, ii. 302; scene in during bombardment. ii. 307.
Victim of a Traitor. i. 249.
Victoria, queen of Great Britain, royal and diamond jubilees, iv. 358; founding of the Imperial Institute, iv. 365; only English monarch to reign sixty years. iv. 365.
Victory of the Don—Tartar power broken by Dmitri Donskoi. viii. 55.
Vienna, besieged by Turks, v. 277; saved by Sobieski. v. 282.
Vikings, discover and explore North America, i. 9; ship of, i. 11; dress of, i. 16; raids of the sea-rovers, v. 47; meaning of the word, ix. 60; terror of civilized Europe, ix. 60; Varangian Guard, ix. 67; kingdoms in various parts of Europe. ix. 68.
Villagrau, Spanish explorer, wars with Araucanians. iii. 122.

Vincennes, taken by George Rogers Clark, ii. 157; retaken by British, ii. 158; again taken by Clark. ii. 163.

Vineland and the Vikings. i. 9.

Vineland, landing of Leif, i. 15; Tyrker discovers grapes, i. 18; landing of Thorvald, i. 19; landing of Thorfinn, and birth of Snorri Thorfinnson, i. 23; uncertainty as to location. i. 25.

Virginia, Roman maiden, seized by Appius Claudius, xi. 78; killed by her father to save her, xi. 82; avenged by death of Appius Claudius and expulsion of decemvirs. xi. 84.

Virginia, Raleigh's colony at Roanoke, ii. 23; named by Queen Elizabeth, ii. 24; first colony in, ii. 24; failure of, ii. 26; second colony in, ii. 26; failure of, ii. 27; fate of colonists unknown, ii. 28; early settlements in, ii. 237, ii. 61; massacre of 1622, ii. 40; 347 settlers killed, ii. 42; Jamestown saved, ii. 43; settlers organized for defence, ii. 44; ten years' war with Indians, ii. 44; massacre of 1643, ii. 45; put down by Sir William Berkeley, ii. 46; Opechancanough captured, ii. 47; assassinated, ii. 47; great rebellion in the Old Dominion, ii. 49; scene of first rebellion against England, ii. 49; Sir William Berkeley, governor of, ii. 47, ii. 49; Indian massacres of 1676, ii. 50; put down by Nathaniel Bacon, ii. 50; Tubal Cain of, ii. 90; first iron furnaces in, ii. 90; Lord Dunmore and the Williamsburg powder, ii. 135; Great Bridge, first battle in Revolution in the South, ii. 140; Norfolk burned by Dunmore, ii. 142; Dunmore flees, ii. 144; Patrick Henry chosen governor, ii. 144; backwoodsmen of, at battle of King's Mountain. ii. 169.

Visigoths, battle with Huns. vi. 11.

Vitellius, overthrows Otho and becomes Roman emperor, xi. 280; gluttony and profligacy, xi. 281; defeat by Vespasian, and death. xi. 284.

Vladimir the Great, viii. 29; by civil war becomes lord of all Russia, viii. 30; his wives, viii. 32; turns Christian, viii. 35; captures Kherson and baptized, viii. 36; marries Anna of Constantinople, viii. 37; wars with the Petchenegans, viii. 38; dies, viii. 40; services in developing Russia. viii. 40.

Volscians, city of Corioli taken by Coriolanus, xi. 60; led by Coriolanus against Rome, xi. 62; Volumnia turns Coriolanus from his purpose. xi. 65.

Voltaire and Frederick the Great, v. 305; controversy with Maupertuis, v. 308; Voltaire's last visit to Paris, vi. 264; exiled, returns to Paris, vi. 264; enthusiasm of Parisians, vi. 265; meeting with Benjamin Franklin, vi. 267; death and burial, vi. 269; body stolen. vi. 270.

Volumnia, mother of Coriolanus. xi. 60.

Vouti, Chinese emperor, wars against Tartars, xii. 186; death, xii. 189; adds to Chinese dominions, xii. 189; searches for the Yuchi tribe. xii. 190.

Voyage of the Argonauts—search for the Golden Fleece. x. 23.

Wadsworth, Captain Joseph, saves charter of Connecticut, i. 84; prevents Governor Fletcher from taking command of Connecticut militia. i. 88.

Wager of Battle. xiii. 258.

Waiblingers. v. 92.

Walker the Filibuster, and the invasion of Nicaragua. iii. 309.

Walker, William, filibustering expedition against Mexico, iii. 309; conquers in Nicaragua, iii. 310; war with Costa Rica, iii. 311; president of Nicaragua, iii. 311; rebellion against him and flees, iii. 313; expedition against Honduras, iii. 315; captured and shot. iii. 315.

Wallace, the Hero of Scotland. iv. 136.

Wallace, William, boyhood, iv. 136; hatred of English, iv. 137; harries the English, iv. 137; fugitive, iv. 138; gathers partisan band, iv. 139; Barns of Ayr, iv. 140; Friar of Ayr's blessing, iv. 141; victorious at Stirling, iv. 143; defeated by Edward I at Falkirk, iv. 145; captured and executed. iv. 147.

Wallenstein, Albert von, Bohemian soldier, v. 252; description, v. 252; wealthy, and duke of Friedland, v. 253; Thirty Years' War—Catholic against Protestant, v. 254; leads Catholic forces, and defeats Mansfeld, v. 256; conquests in Scandinavia, v. 258; defeated by burghers of Stralsund, v. 259; disbands army, and lives in regal luxury, v. 261; again in command after defeat of Tilly at Leipsic, v. 264; end of two great soldiers, v. 265; face to face with Gustavus Adolphus, v. 265; fall and massacre of Magdeburg, v. 266; Tilly defeated by Gustavus at Leipsic, v. 267; Wallenstein defeated at Lützen, v. 268; deprived of command, v. 274; murdered. v. 276.

Walter the Penniless, unsuccessful crusader. vi. 73.
Walworth, William, lord mayor of London, kills Wat Tyler. iv. 193.
Wamba, Gothic king of Spain, vii. 7; just and wise rule, vii. 10; beautifies Toledo, vii. 10; dethroned by treachery of Ervigio. vii. 11.
Wang Mang, Chinese usurper, poisons heir of the Han dynasty, xii. 192; war and Tartar invasion, xii. 193; killed. xii. 194.
Wani, Corean schoolmaster, said to have introduced writing into Japan. xii. 35.
War for Independence. See Revolutionary War.
Warbeck, Perkin, poses as the murdered duke of York, iv. 200; befriended by Flanders, France, and Scotland, iv. 200; marries Lady Catharine Gordon in Scotland, iv. 204; captured and brought to London, iv. 208; imprisoned in the Tower, plots escape, and hung at Tyburn. iv. 210.
War Horse of the West. See Andrew Jackson.
Warner, Seth, captures Crown Point. i. 177.
Wars of the Roses. iv. 196.
Warsaw, Poland, Kosciusko defeated by Suwarrow, viii. 229; falls to Prussia in partition of country. viii. 330.
Washington, George, sent to warn French off ground claimed by England, i. 98; hardships of journey, i. 98; Virginia adjutant-general, i. 99; subsequent events to opening of French and Indian war, i. 110; warned by Lydia Darrah of projected attack on Whitemarsh, i. 189; attracts attention of Lord Fairfax, ii. 106; surveys Fairfax's Virginia estate. ii. 106.
Washington, Colonel, at battle of Cowpens, ii. 179; wounds Tarleton. ii. 179.
Wat Tyler and the Men of Kent. iv. 185.
Weathersford, leader of Creek Indians. ii. 195, ii. 204.
Wedmore, treaty of, frees England from Danish attack. iv. 34.
Wei, division of China, xii. 202; kings of Wei gain control over all China and found dynasty of Tsin. xii. 202.
Weinsberg, Germany, saved by devotion of the women. v. 92.
Welfs and Waiblingers. v. 92.

Wenceslas, emperor of Germany and king of Bohemia, v. 176; depravity and savagery, v. 176; murder of the Bohemian nobles, v. 177; outrage against Jews, v. 178; murder of John Nepomuk, v. 178; seized and imprisoned by his brother Sigismund, v. 180; deposed as emperor, but rules as king of Bohemia, v. 181; connection with the reformation, and John Huss and John Ziska, v. 182; death. v. 184.
Wendelgarde, Lady, legend. v. 63.
Werner of Kyburg, rebellion against Conrad II, v. 65; besieged and escapes, v. 66; becomes robber, and killed. v. 67.
West Gothland Insurrection. ix. 283.
Western Turkestan. See TURKESTAN.
Weyler, Spanish governor-general of Cuba. iii. 331.
Whalley, General, signer of death warrant of Charles I, flees to New England on Restoration, i. 73; settles in Cambridge, i. 73; pursued by king's proclamation, i. 73; goes to New Haven, i. 74; in hiding, i. 75; narrow escapes from capture, i. 77; hidden for years in Hadley, i. 77; dies. i. 78.
"What does Hippoclides care?" x. 91.
"What hath God wrought!" i. 273.
White Rose of England. iv. 196.
Whitney, Eli, early days, ii. 187; teacher in Georgia, ii. 187; befriended by Mrs. Greene, ii. 188; mechanical genius, ii. 188; invents cotton-gin, ii. 188; principle of cotton-gin, ii. 191; idea pirated, ii. 191; perfected patents, ii. 192; patent lapses, ii. 192; granted $50,000 by South Carolina Legislature, ii. 192; makes firearms with interchangeable parts, ii. 192; founder of cotton industry. ii. 192.
"Whoso pulleth this sword out of this stone is of right born king of all England." xiii. 21.
Wilderness, battle of the. ii. 319.
Wilford, Ralph, pretender to English throne. iv. 210.
Willett, Colonel, sally from Fort Schuyler on British camp, and capture of stores, i. 203; goes with Stockwell to summon aid. i. 205.
William of Normandy, "the Conqueror," defeats Harold and conquers England at Senlac, iv. 52; defeats Hereward at Ely, iv. 65; surrender of Hereward, iv. 74; planting of "New Forest," iv. 77; descended from Rolf the Walker. ix. 41.

William Rufus, king of England, quarrel with Sir Walter Tyrrell, iv. 79; death by Tyrrell's arrow. iv. 81.
William Tell and the Swiss Patriots. v. 148.
Williams, Colonel James, pursues Colonel Ferguson, ii. 170; at battle of King's Mountain, ii. 170; killed. ii. 172.
Williamsburg, capital of Virginia, ii. 135; Governor Spotswood's powder magazine, ii. 135; Lord Dunmore attempts seizure of powder. ii. 135.
Winkelried, Arnold, Swiss patriot, heroic death at Sempach. v. 193.
Wittekind, the Saxon patriot—defends Germany against invasion of Charlemagne, v. 37; defeated by Charlemagne, surrenders, and embraces Christianity, v. 43; legends. v. 45.
Wives of Weinsberg—anecdote of Mediæval Germany. v. 92.
Wocokon, island, Raleigh's ships land. ii. 23.
Woes of Two Lovers. xiv. 83.
Wonderful March of the Freebooters—across Nicaragua and Honduras. iii. 173.
Wooden Walls of Athens—glorious Grecian victory at Salamis. x. 154.
Wooing of Clotilde. vi. 18.
Wooing of Elfrida. iv. 35.
Worden, Lieutenant, commander of the *Monitor*, wounded. i. 283.
World's Greatest Orator—story of Demosthenes. x. 305.
Wou, Chinese princess, becomes wife of emperor Kaotsong, and rules China, xii. 223; able rule, xii. 224; abdicates. xii. 227.
Wou Sankwei, Chinese general, defeats and kills Li Tseching, rebel chief, xii. 283; Manchu conquest of China, completed, xii. 287; dies, xii. 289; only Chinese general feared by Manchus. xii. 289.

Xanthippe, wife of Socrates. x. 226.
Xanthippus, Spartan soldier, heads Carthaginian army and defeats Romans under Regulus. xi. 131.
Xavier, Francis, chief of Jesuits in India, makes missionary journey to Japan, xii. 100; lands at Kagoshima, xii. 101; varying degrees of success. xii. 101.
Xenophon, Greek soldier, leader in the retreat of the ten thousand. x. 231, x. 364.

Xerxes and his army, x. 135; invasion of Greece, and defeat at Thermopylæ. x. 144.
Ximenes, Cardinal, burns Arabian manuscripts in Granada, vii. 192; prepares a polyglot Bible, vii. 192; captures Mazalquivir, pirate den on Barbary coast, vii. 193; captures Oran, Moorish pirate city. vii. 193.

Yamato-Daké, a hero of romance—chief hero of Japanese legend, xii. 19; conquers in Kiushiu, xii. 19; conquers Ainos in Eastern Japan by aid of magic sword, xii. 20; storm on Bay of Yedo appeased by suicide of Tachibana, his wife, xii. 22; subdues Ainos of the North, xii. 22; assailed by demons and aided by gods in journey across tablelands, xii. 23; dies. xii. 26.
Yangti, Chinese emperor, glorious reign. xii. 217.
Yao, Chinese emperor, peaceful and prosperous rule. xii. 145.
Yaropolk, Varangian ruler of Kief, war with Vladimir, and death. viii. 29.
Yaroslaf, king of Novgorod, rebellion of brother, viii. 43; establishes laws of Novgorod, viii. 44; founds Russian national church, viii. 44; abstract of his code. viii. 46.
Yedo (Tokio), founded by Iyeyasu, xii. 90; name changed to Tokio. xii. 141.
Yermak, Cossack brigand, invades Siberia, viii. 82; presents kingdom to Ivan IV, viii. 82; drowned, viii. 83; canonized. viii. 83.
Yoke of the Tartars—capture and rule Russia. viii. 49.
Yokohama, Japan, opened to foreign commerce. xii. 131.
Yon, Dominique, Baratarian pirate, imprisoned in New Orleans, ii. 210; politician in New Orleans. ii. 216.
Yoritomo, boy of the Japanese Minamoto family, saved from slaughter by Kiyomori, xii. 45; banished, xii. 45; romantic story of courtship and marriage, xii. 46; heads insurrection against Kiyomori, xii. 47; builds city of Kamakura, xii. 48; defeat Taira, puts down family insurrection, and becomes lord of Japan, xii. 55; base ingratitude to Yoshitsuné, xii. 57; power of, xii. 59; line extinct. xii. 60.
Yorktown, Virginia, Cornwallis defeated, ii. 184; end of Revolution. ii. 184.
Yoshitomo, head of the Japanese Minamoto family, slain by Kiyomori, Taira chief. xii. 43.

Yoshitsuné, Japanese warrior, son of Yoshitomo and Tokiwa, xii. 51; escapes from monastery, xii. 53; warlike exploits, xii. 54; fights with Yoritomo, his brother, against the Taira, xii. 54; takes fortified palace of Fukuwara, and defeats Taira fleet in Shimonoseki Straits, xii. 55; ingratitude of Yoritomo, and Yoshitsuné forced to flee, xii. 57; legends of his escape. xii. 58.

Youth of Frederick the Great. v. 288.

Yturbide, Augustin de, royalist, becomes revolutionary leader in Mexico, wins independence, iii. 235; emperor as Augustin I, iii. 235; shot as traitor. iii. 235.

Yu, Chinese emperor, drains off flood. xii. 145.

Yucatan, discovered by Cordova, and explored by Orijalva, iii. 29; Cortez sails to conquest. iii. 29.

Yuchi, Chinese tribe, scattered by Tartars, xii. 190; sought by Emperor Vouti, xii. 190; later history. xii. 191.

Yukon River, gold discoveries. i. 329.

Yuste, monastery of Jeronymite monks, retiring place of Charles V of Spain. vii. 205.

Zama, Scipio Africanus defeats Hannibal. xi. 148.

Zane, Elizabeth, heroism at Fort Henry. i. 133.

Zebek-Dorchi, Kalmuck Tartar, aspires to khanate, viii. 202; induces Kalmucks to flee from Russia, viii. 203; assassinated. viii. 218.

Zenobia, and Longinus, x. 351; succeeds Odenathus, her husband, on throne of the East, x. 351; beauty and accomplishments, x. 351; conquests in Asia, x. 352; Longinus, scholar, and her secretary, x. 352; defeats Roman army and left in peace by Claudius, x. 353; defeated at Antioch and Emesa by Aurelian, flees, and captured, x. 354; Palmyra besieged and taken, x. 355; betrays Longinus to Aurelian, and Longinus executed, x. 356; revolt and destruction of Palmyra, x. 357; led in Aurelian's triumph, and lives in retirement near Rome. x. 357.

Zetes, Argonaut, rescues Phineus from Harpies. x. 25.

Zeuta, Turks defeated. v. 287.

Zeuxis, Greek painter, work in decorating Athens. x. 187.

Zipangu, Marco Polo's name for Japan. xii. 97.

Ziska, the Blind Warrior. v. 198.

Ziska, John, leads outbreak of reformers, and plunders Prague, v. 182; leads Hussites against Catholics under Emperor Sigismund, v. 198; defeats Sigismund in several battles and puts down internal dissensions, v. 198; blinded in battle, v. 202; puts an end to invasions of Bohemia, v. 204; faction of Procop, v. 205; dies, v. 206; subsequent invasion by Sigismund defeated by Procop, v. 207; Bohemia finally subjugated by Sigismund. v. 209.

Zumalacarregui, Tomas, Basque chieftain and chief hope of Carlists, vii. 314; Uncle Tomas, vii. 314; modern Cid, vii. 315; captures Villafranca, Tolosa, Burgera, but killed at Bilboa. vii. 317.